



# Chinese Discovery

## Student Manual



121 Photocopiable  
Student Lessons



Ashley Hood



# Welcome!

Welcome to Chinese Discovery. We hope that these lessons will help your students learn practical English as well as share more about culture and history including encouraging stories from the Bible. Each lesson covers language that is practical for many different situations. We hope you will enjoy sharing about English, culture and stories from the Bible.

*Ashley and Kim Hood June 2014*

Thanks to God and thanks to everybody

# 121 Lessons To Go



**Your English Corner 2014**

*This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Non-commercial-Share Alike 3.0 Australia License. To view a copy of this license, visit*

*<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/au/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, 171 Second Street, Suite 300, San Francisco, California, 94105, USA.*

*Please feel free to photocopy the lesson material for classroom use only, not for re-sale.*

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Your English Corner for information only. Your English Corner disclaims any responsibility for the content.

## **To contact Your English Corner:**

e-mail: [ozenglishcorner@gmail.com](mailto:ozenglishcorner@gmail.com)

Web page: [www.youenglishcorner.net](http://www.youenglishcorner.net)

Photos used are no copyright photos from Wikipedia or purchased or free from [www.dreamstime.com/](http://www.dreamstime.com/)

---

# Introduction

## How it all Began...

On my way to teach at a language school one morning I was praying to God about the day, when I felt God prompting me to explain the Bible in seven stories. This is not a normal occurrence on my way to work. I mentioned this prompting to some Wycliffe friends, who went home and discussed it. Within a day they sent me an e-mail with seven Bible stories they thought would be useful to teach an overview of the Bible.

Around that same time a good friend of mine, out of the blue, said he had paid for me to attend a Wycliffe storytelling workshop, the purpose being to communicate the Bible in stories. I was inspired! At that time I was involved in teaching English through the Bible for a Taiwanese education agency. I was using various stories from the Bible but felt something was lacking. The students who were attending my classes were mainly from China, Taiwan, Korea and Japan. They were coming because they wanted to learn English that was practical and meaningful and also learn about the Bible.

The inspiration from God on that morning walk to work, the seven stories given to me, and the Wycliffe storytelling workshop all helped me to create lessons based on communication, culture and Christ.

I pray that through these studies, God will use and bless your ministry amongst the people from all cultures.

*Ashley Hood*

# Chapter 1

## Principles Behind Cultural Discovery Studies

### 1. Teach English for communication that is meaningful and useful

In my years of teaching English as a second language, I have found that students are very interested in English for communication – communication for a purpose – not just vocabulary and grammar (although that is very important). So each lesson begins with a situation that students may encounter and the language they need to use in that situation, for example, English for giving compliments, asking forgiveness, accepting or rejecting an invitation, for negotiating, etc.

### 2. Start where the students are at – their culture

Learning English is always difficult. Start where the student is at – their culture. Like Phillip and the Ethiopian, Phillip started from what the Ethiopian was reading.

*Then Phillip began with that very passage of scripture (the Ethiopian was reading) and told him the good news of Jesus. Acts 8:35 NIV*

### 3. Connect the first two areas (communication and culture) to the final story

The communication topic and the cultural story are designed to lead into the story of encouragement from the Bible. The Bible is God's communication book to us. The Bible is the most read book in the world and is filled with stories that are about hope, love, forgiveness, revenge, redemption, reconciliation, peace, eternal life and suffering. These stories are universal to all of humanity. Every culture has a story that the Bible can connect with in some way. It is just a matter of becoming a student of that culture and asking God to reveal those Bible stories that can be contextualised for that culture. **The name of the bible story is hinted in the last section of each lesson and its reference in the bible can be found in the index of lessons on page 14-22.**

### 4. Each story can be taught as a one-off, or as part of a series

The students that I am involved with are a mixed bunch! Some are migrants or permanent residents and can easily attend a series of studies, other students are short-term and/or working holiday visa tourists who may only be able to attend a few of the studies. Flexibility is needed in presenting the studies. A 'seed' view of ministry is important here:

*What, after all, is Apollos? And what is Paul? Only servants, through whom you came to believe – as the Lord has assigned to each task. I planted the seed, Apollo's watered it, but God made it grow. 1 Corinthians 3:5-9 CEV.*

### 5. The teacher is a facilitator, storyteller, interviewer, listener and learner

The studies are designed to have as much student interaction as possible. Pair and small group work are encouraged, with the students presenting their answers and cultural knowledge to the class as well as role-playing and acting out stories. This is when the teacher becomes the learner/listener!

### 6. Know your story well before the lesson

It is a good idea to know your story and lesson well enough that you could do the lesson without using the sheet. Three people taught a lesson one person had prepared well in advance the other two just read the worksheet before the lesson. It was obvious who had prepared beforehand. The person who had prepared well was able to be creative and flexible. In preparing well for a lesson God can teach you many things which can be used in the presentation and direction of the lesson. Make sure that you know the cultural stories and the Bible stories, its form and deeper meanings.

### 7. Empowering the learner

Each Lesson should be understandable, memorable, and transferable. Encourage your participants to share what they have learnt from each lesson with other people.

### 8. Have wisdom to skip parts

Each lesson contains learning to cover all levels of English and some different cultures. Please have the wisdom to skip sections that are that are too difficult for your students or irrelevant to what they need to learn. You don't have to cover everything but it is important to have enough time to do the final story.

# Chapter 2

## The Lessons

### Welcome to Cultural Stories

I hope these lessons can assist you in your teaching.

#### 1. Communication

- **Warm Up.** This is an introductory activity that introduces the students to each other and the teacher as well as to the topic for today.
- A situation is presented where language can be practiced. The teacher helps with pronunciation, error correction and feedback on the students' usage through role-plays and dialogues.
- Don't hand out the worksheet too early. It is good to ask questions first.
- Each section has a written dialogue for the students to follow. Try to do a demonstration of each dialogue before you let the students try. Emphasise speech and delivery.

#### 2. Culture

One aspect of culture/history is in focus. The students read, discuss and present information to the class. Here the teacher's role is to take a back seat and let the students teach and remind each other of the cultural topic e.g. Silk Road, etc. The teacher must also come to class having already researched and read about the topic to show the students they are interested and has some knowledge of the topic.

- The students do most of the talking in this section.
- The teacher must research the topic before each lesson (e.g. on the internet, ask somebody) and add information where possible during the lesson.

#### 3. Storytelling

The teacher then links the first two parts of the lesson to the final Bible story **The name of the bible story is hinted in the last section of each lesson and its reference in the bible can be found in the index of lessons on page 14-22.** The teacher can tell the passage as a story (see storytelling in chapter 3). This can be a good listening activity for the students. The teacher may want to tell the story and then get students to draw parts of the story, then retell the story. Students may be asked to discuss and draw what they already know about this story before you begin. There are many ways to do the story e.g. the teacher or student might pre- draw what the story may be about, or the teacher brings along pictures of the story and have the students put them in order as they listen to the story.

- Sometimes there is an emphasis on the teacher storytelling in a short time. The story should be practiced at least five times beforehand.
- Sometimes the student will read, draw and retell the story.
- Pre-story work must involve prayer, going over the teacher sheet, relevant vocabulary, internet resources, drawing pictures, collecting realia (real objects/resources) etc.
- After the teacher tells the story, they have a couple of options before they ask some questions.

(a) Quickly review the story as a whole class with the teacher giving some lead-in hints of what happened next. For

example, in the beginning of the story there was... The man went...

(b) Review the story by asking *Who* was in the story, *where... what happened... why... how...*

(c) Ask students to tell each other the story in English or in their own language.

(d) Illustrate the story together as a whole class on the board.

#### Lesson Conclusion

Each lesson concludes with a challenge or response. This is not to put the students on the spot or to force them into any decisions. It is a gentle question that leaves the students time to think and reflect on what they have just discussed and learnt. It also allows students whom the Holy Spirit has touched to have a chance to stop and reflect on their learning experience. For example: Are you lost? Are you looking for the road to heaven?

#### Remember

- Students need to practice telling every story.
- Students need to think of who can they share the story with before the next lesson.
- Students need to be asked at the beginning of every lesson. Who shared last week's story?
- Always try to end with a challenge.
- Use the concluding comment to link to the themes in section one and two.
- Get the students talking as much as possible by using pair and group work and individual and group presentations.
- Refer students to the location of the Bible passage in their own language available on the internet or other sources.
- Let the students know in advance what the next weeks culture story and Bible story is.
- Where appropriate pray at the end.

# Chapter 3: Options for Storytelling

## Storytelling A

Everyone loves a story – especially a well-told story. Here are some principles behind effective storytelling.

**1. Know your story.** Read the story a couple of times using different versions. Try reading the story out aloud.

**2. Do a picture story chart.** Illustrate the story with a number of drawings. This helps to break the story down and choose the main parts of the story. It also helps in remembering the story. For second language learners it also provides visual cues if you want to use those pictures in your storytelling – stick figure drawings are fine!

**3. Practice** This is the hard work part of the preparation. Winston Churchill the great orator used to practice his speeches 7 times (to cows!) before he gave his speeches. It is suggested to practice at least 4 — 7 times to tell the story in 3 minutes (no longer). If your story is longer than 3 minutes it is too much for second language learners to take in (even for first language learners!) If you are like me, you won't want to practice, but I know from experience that practice is SO important. You can maintain eye contact, pause, emphasise, use non verbals more effectively and tell the story more naturally when you know it.

**4. Give the story a beginning heading and a final heading.** For example, Beginning heading: "Today I want to tell you a story about a great journey." Ending... "This is a story about great change."

**5. Use repetition and patterns.** For example, "Go. Go to the desert road," said the angel of the Lord to Phillip. Phillip **heard** what the angel of the Lord said and he **went**. The Spirit of God told Phillip to do **two** things. **Go** to that chariot and **stay** near it. So Phillip **went to the chariot and stayed near it**.

The Ethiopian asked Phillip to do **two** things: To **get into his chariot** and **explain** what he is reading. So Phillip **got into the chariot** and **explained** the good news.

**6. Think of what** simple props, maps, drawings and/or use of whiteboards that you might use to help you to tell the story.

**7. Think of what** concepts need to be pre taught before you tell the story. For example, Samaritans, Pharisees, Jewish laws. what it meant to have leprosy etc.

**8. Think of prediction questions** you might ask the class before you begin the story. For example. Students look at a map of Lake Galilee, the fisherman cleaning their nets, and the teacher Jesus teaching the crowd of people. The students are asked, Can you guess what is going to happen in this story?

**9. Statements and questions** to ask when you finish telling the story:

- Get into groups of three and in your own language explain/retell the story to each other.
- Try in your small group retelling the story in English
- As a whole group, retell the story to me, the teacher... "At the beginning of the story there is... (Who, what, where, why, how come)?"

**10. Questions** to ask the whole group—choose questions suitable for each story and try to elicit at least four answers from the group for each question. If students are silent, you put them in pairs to answer each question.

1. What did you learn about God? (Jesus, the Holy Spirit, forgiveness, etc) in this story?
2. What did you learn about people in this story?
3. What did you like about this story?
4. There might be some things some people don't like about this story. What might these things be?
5. How does this story apply to your life?
6. Who are you most like in this story? Or Who do you want to be like in this story?
7. What surprised you in this story?
8. What did God teach you in this story?
9. Who are you going to share this story with?
10. Ask the students who would like a copy of this story.

## Story Telling B (see next page)

- Put your students into groups
- Choose one person to be the leader from each group
- Have the leader come out to the front to you
- Give each leader copies of the written Bible story - enough for each member of the group
- Tell the leader to go through the following steps in their group
  1. Read the story
  2. Draw a story map of the story
  3. Practice telling the story in pairs
  4. Dramatise the story if you wish
  5. Answer the **questions** that are listed in point 10 in the **Storytelling A** section

## Story Telling C

- Draw a picture or have students draw the scene of the story
- Guess what is going to happen or happened in this story
- Finish the lesson by the following the pattern of **Storytelling B**

## Story Telling D

**Preparation:** Student can be told what the next week's cultural story and Bible story is going to be. This enables the student to plan their own research and be called upon to share information from their culture and also share the Bible story more adequately.

## Story Telling E

Present the Bible story as a drama. Read the drama and act out the story. You can alter the Bible story so it can read as a drama or you can use the following reference books that have excellent role plays.

Perry, M (Ed) (1969). *The Dramatised Bible*. London: Marshall Pickering. Bible Society

English Corner: *Teaching English Through Parable and Discussion*. Fifth Edition. 2013 ozenglishcorner@gmail.com

# Example lesson of Storytelling B

(Can be an English lesson in its own right)

This can be done as part three of a normal lesson or independently as a lesson in itself.  
If you have a group of 15 students.

## 1. Beginning of the Bible Story Session

1. As a group enquire who shared last lesson's story.
2. Share any background or helpful information on this lesson's story (Date, place, culture etc..) *This weeks story is a story about being lost and found. Have you ever lost or found something?*
3. Form three groups of 5 students.
4. Each group must have a leader (the leader is one of the students).
5. The leaders come to you and you give them this lesson's story and instructions. The leader returns to their group and gives the following instructions

## 2. Instructions to the leaders of a small group

1. Read the story (one person reads or read altogether or take turns, aloud or silently)
2. Draw a story map of the story
3. Practice retelling the story in pairs
4. Dramatise the story if you wish
5. Discuss the questions about the story (See below)
6. Pray

## 3. Copy of the bible story given to each member of the small group

**Bible Story example with own language versions**

### Luke 15:8-10 One Coin

<sup>8</sup> Jesus told the people another story: What will a woman do if she has ten silver coins and loses one of them? Won't she light a lamp, sweep the floor, and look carefully until she finds it? <sup>9</sup> Then she will call in her friends and neighbors and say, "Let's celebrate! I've found the coin I lost." <sup>10</sup> Jesus said, "In the same way God's angels are happy when even one person turns to him." Contemporary English Version (CEV)

### ลูกา 15:8-10

คำอุปมาเรื่องเหรียญหาย  
<sup>8</sup> "หรือสมมุติว่าหญิงคนหนึ่งมีเหรียญเงินสิบเหรียญและหายไปเหรียญหนึ่ง เหรียญนั้นจะไม่จุดตะเกียงกวาดเรือนและค้นหาอย่างถี่ถ้วนจนกว่าจะพบหรือ? <sup>9</sup> และเมื่อพบแล้ว นางก็เรียกมิตรสหายและเพื่อนบ้านมาพร้อมหน้ากันและกล่าวว่า 'มาร่วมยินดีกับเราเถิด เราได้พบเหรียญที่หายไปนั้นแล้ว' <sup>10</sup> เราบอกท่านว่าในทำนองเดียวกัน จะมีความชื่นชมยินดีท่ามกลางเหล่าทูตสวรรค์ของพระเจ้าในคนบาปคนเดียวซึ่งกลับใจใหม่"  
**Thai New Contemporary Bible (TNCV)**

### 路加福音 15:8-10

<sup>8</sup> "假如一个女子有十个银币，如果她丢了一个，那么她会不会点起灯来，扫遍房子，仔细地寻找，直到找到那个银币为止呢？ <sup>9</sup> 她找到时，就会叫来她的邻居和朋友们，对他们说：'和我一起高兴吧，我找到了那块丢失的银币了！' <sup>10</sup> 我告诉你们，同样，上帝的天使也会为一个悔改的罪人而高兴的。"

**Chinese New Testament: Easy-to-Read Version (ERV-ZH)**

Source: <http://www.Biblegateway.com/>

## 4. Possible Discussion Questions in small group and then reform back into the big group

- a. Who is in this story?
- b. What surprised you in this story?
- c. What did you learn about God? (Jesus, the Holy Spirit, forgiveness, etc) in this story?) or What did God teach you in this story?
- d. What did you learn about people in this story? (Who are you like or want to be like in this story?)
- e. How does this story apply to your life?
- f. Who are you going to share this story with? Pray
- g. Choose one person from each group to share with the whole group what they learnt from this story.
- h. Come back as a whole group and have one person from each group share. As a group celebrate what God has taught us in this lesson.

# Chapter 4

## Cultural Discovery Lesson Series

### How to arrange the lessons

There are 121 lessons in the International Cultural Discovery series. These lessons can be taught in a variety of ways. To assist you in your planning, the lessons have been grouped in different ways.

### Know, choose, adapt, skip, insert and modify.

You can treat the lesson strip just like a list. **Pick, choose, skip and adapt** which parts you want to cover as you do the lesson. You can skip sections, It will depend on your students' level and how much time you have. You might just do one cultural story. You don't have to do all of them.

These lessons are catered for students from all language levels. Some parts of one lesson will be aimed at elementary level students while some sections and vocabulary are aimed at a more advanced level. You have to choose which parts of the lesson are suitable for you group.

It is important to pre-read the lesson, know the lesson well and have a copy of the Bible story printed in English and in the first language for the student for them to take home if desired (See next page). You may even do a Bible story drama to finish off the lesson.

If you know the lesson well, you can use the lesson as a guideline for ideas and not just as a set lesson to follow from top to bottom. You can use a blank piece of paper for your lesson and tell your group of students that today you are going to cover these topics. Then you can brainstorm and illustrate with the group relevant vocabulary, dialogue and information about each topic for each part of the lesson, referring only to the lesson sheet when necessary. The main point of the lesson sheet is to give you an overview for your own lesson.

### An Example Lesson

An example of a lesson is given on the following page. For an introductory student from China you may choose to do only some sections of a lesson. For example, you might choose, for illustration purposes only, the **bolded** parts of the lesson and adapt or skip the other parts of the lesson. Time allowed, language level and culture may determined which parts of a lesson you might do.

Don't be surprised if students from certain cultures have some knowledge of other cultures because of media, movies, dramas, history, relationships and travel

#### Cultural story

If you choose a cultural story– Google and use an A4 photo or or image of the cultural story. Get the students to explain what they know about the story behind the photo. The teachers job is not to teach the cultural story but to be a facilitator

### Example: 82. What's the Problem

#### Counselling

- (a) Give a brief description of yourself to your partner
1. I am ..... cm (s) tall
  2. I have fair skin/ complexion
  3. I have ... hair
  - 4 I am medium height
- (b) Do you look similar to your father?
1. We are similar height
  2. We have the same eyes.
- (c) Do you have similar personalities or the same hobbies as your father? **SKIP**
- Kind and generous      Quick tempered
- (d) How do you celebrate father's day in your country?
- (e) Role play showing appreciation to your father/someone else.
- Child:**      *Excuse me dad, can I say something to you*  
**Father:**      *What is it?*  
**Child:**      *I just want to say thank you for being my father.*
- (f) Practice being an observant father
- Father:**      *Hi.....(name), you look a little sad, is everything ok, you can tell me, I am your father.*  
**Child:**      *I'm ok dad, thanks for noticing*
- (g) Our fathers are not perfect. Sometimes brave families need to visit a counselor to work through issues. Choose the best response from the counselor. **SKIP**
1. **Client:**      *I am having a problem with my dad*  
**Counselor: a.**      *You are having problems with your dad... (Parrotting)*  
**b.**      *You and your father don't have the best relationship. (Paraphrasing)*  
**Client:**      *I'm having problems at home.*  
**Counselor: a.**      *Tell me more? (Keep the client talking)*  
**b.**      *You are having problems at home. (Parrotting)*
  3. **Client:**      *My dad keeps bothering me.*  
**Counselor: a.**      *Sounds like a terrible father! (Judgemental)*  
**b.**      *In what way? (make the client be specific)*
  4. **Client:**      *My dad always eats my lunch.*  
**Counselor: a.**      *Always? (check absolutes. Don't give opinions)*  
**b.**      *What a pig! (judgemental)*
  5. **Client:**      *I don't get along with my dad.*  
**Counselor: a.**      *N obody would like your father. (opinion)*  
**b.**      *At home your father does some things that really annoy you. He sometimes accuses you of something you didn't do, he sometimes never says hello and he eats your lunch (Summarise)*
  6. **Client:**      *What should I do counsellor?*  
**Counselor: a.**      *You should leave home! (provide solution)*  
**b.**      *Let's look at what options you can take. (Empower the client to solve the problem).*
- (h) Complete: A good counsellor shouldn't/should ...(..)
- (i) Do you know any stories that illustrate different ways people dealt (positive or negative) with problems. For example:
- China:**      **Wang Yang Bu Lao** It's not too late to fix a problem  
**World:**      **The Prodigal (lost) Son**

# Adapting for Introductory Students

# 62. Admiration and Shame

## Guide

Perhaps one of the goals of the lesson is the students will learn the basic words typed in **bold** (for example, see lesson opposite).

### Vocabulary

- hospital**
- Nurse**
- Patient**
- Sick**
- Good**
- Better**
- Put your arm out**
- Lie down**
- You need to**
- You have to**
- You must**

**YOU COULD PRE TEACH OR TEACH THESE WORDS AS YOU GO ALONG**

**USE PICTURES**

Match  
Draw  
Memory games

**ROLE PLAY (DRAMA)**

Simon says  
**You choose!**

Words for the final story

**doctor, money, cure, who, daughter, well**

## Nursing and dealing with gossip

(a) Complete this sentence.

When you go to **hospital** you need to take ... ( ) For e.g. your **pajamas**, **toiletries** and a change of clothes

(b) In pairs, role play being a **nurse** and **patient** in a hospital

- Nurse:** Good morning, how are you today?  
**Patient:** I am feeling (**sick, good**) a lot **better**  
**Nurse:** Is this your **pillow, shirt, medicine** etc?  
**Patient:** Yes it is / No it isn't  
**Nurse:** Are these your (**pajamas, tablets, belongings**)?  
**Patient:** Yes they are / No they aren't  
**Nurse:** Ok, I will just check your blood pressure.  
**Nurse:** Can you **put your arm out** and clench your fist, now relax. Good job. Well done. Do you feel ok?  
**Patient:** I feel a little bit dizzy  
**Nurse:** You can **lie down**. Now **turn** onto your side  
**Patient:** Can I roll over to the other side?  
**Nurse:** Sure, just let me help you.  
**Patient:** Thank you  
**Nurse:** Remember: You **need to/have to/ must** take these pills before eating  
**Patient:** I will take these tablets as soon as my meal arrives  
**Nurse:** Great, just press this button if you need any help

(c) Role play a nurse and patient chatting about themselves, other patients, doctors and nurses who are in the same room.

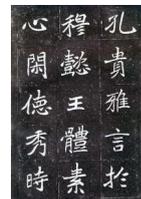
1. Do you...? (Yes I do / No I don't)
2. Does he/she..? (Yes he/she does No he/she doesn't)
3. Do they/the doctors..? (Yes they do / No they don't)

(d) Sometimes people gossip about other people even if they are not sure it's 100% true. Role play this response to gossip.

- Nurse 1:** Did you hear Jesse is telling everybody that Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and he should retire.  
**Nurse 2:** Are you sure he said that? You should go and ask Jesse and check what you are saying is true.  
**Nurse 1:** Jesse, I heard you told a patient Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and should retire.  
**Jesse:** That's not true! I said he is very wise and should never retire

(e) Gossip can lead to shame for many people. Rate what things are shameful in your country. (2/10 - ok 9/10 - very shameful)

1. Blowing your nose loudly or slurping in public
2. Not paying for/shouting/treating overseas guests
3. Sending your parents to an old age home
4. Marrying someone from a different culture
5. Leaving your community
6. Not getting married
7. To be classified as unclean
8. Not holding down a job
9. Have a medical condition



(f) In Chinese history, it was a public shame to have poor calligraphy. Demonstrate your handwriting/calligraphy

(g) Sun Zhongshan said of calligraphy 'Everything for the public'.

Have you ever done anything that was shameful in public?

(h) Another historic Chinese quote says *Knowing what is shame, then you will become brave*. Are you very brave?

(i) Do you any other stories of somebody who was brave to overcome shame? For example:

**World:** A woman with great shame (bleeding problem 30AD) reached out to touch a teacher passing by. (**doctor, money, cure, who, daughter, well**)

# Lesson Themes

## Stories for Special Days

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
<b>Christmas Festival</b>		
68	Elizabeth and Zechariah	Luke 1
48	The Prophecies and birth	Matt 1 Luke 2
69	The Shepherds	Luke 2
49	The Kings	Matthew 2
50	King Herod	Matthew 2
70	Simeon and Anna	Luke 2
<b>Easter Festival</b>		
104	The Announcement	John 14
89	The Garden of Gethsemane	Luke 22, Mark 14
90	Peter's Denial	Luke 22
91	The Crucifixion	Matt 27, Luke 24
92	The Road to Emmaus	Luke 24
57	The Resurrection	Matt 27 Luke 24
105	The Ascension	Acts 1:3-11
107	Pentecost	Acts 2
<b>Chinese New Year</b>		
61	Evil Sprits (Legion)	Mark 5
11	The Passover	Exodus 12
<b>Valentines Day</b>		
117	Unconditional Love	1 Corinthians 13
<b>Labor Day</b>		
86	Confucius: (Rich Young Ruler)	Luke 18
47	Success and Prosperity	Zech 8: 20-23
<b>Father's Day</b>		
82	The Prodigal Son	Luke 15
<b>Mother's day</b>		
21	Ruth and Naomi	Ruth 1-4
7	Life as journey	Psalms 139
<b>National Days</b>		
97	Woman at the well	John 4
<b>Harvest and reunion (hometown) festivals</b>		
106	Future harvest	Acts 1:11 Matt 25
121	My new home town	Hebrew 11
<b>Ancestor Worship</b>		
83	Ancestral Worship (Lazarus and Rich Man)	Luke 16
<b>Temple worship</b>		
29	Elijah God is alive/active	1 Kings 18
38	God is not hand made	Isaiah 44
<b>Lantern Festivals</b>		
84	10 Lepers	Luke 17:11-19

## Stories of Hope

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
60	Calming the Storm	Mark 4
61	Evil Sprits (Legion)	Mark 5
82	Lost Son.	Luke 15
62	Woman with bleeding	Mark 5
76	Anointed by the woman	Luke 7
81	The Lost coin	Luke 15

## Kingdom of God Stories

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
85	Peter and Cornelius	Acts 10-11
76	The call of David's "heart"	1 Samuel 16
99	The stoning of the woman	John 8
85	Two men at the temple	Luke 18

## Sacrifice Stories

Lesson #	Theme:	Bible Verses
2	In the garden	Genesis 3
3	Cain and Able	Genesis 4
4	Noah	Genesis 6-9
8	Abraham and Isaac	Genesis 22
11	Moses - the Passover	Exodus 12
58	John the Baptist lamb of God	Mark 1

## Overview of the Bible

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
1	Creation (Self esteem):	Genesis 1
2	Sin and promise:	Genesis 2 and 3
4	Sin, promise flood	Genesis 6
36	King foretold	Isaiah 7 9 52 53
48	Birth of Christ	Matt 1 Luke 2
72	Healing through the roof	Luke 5 Mark 2
78	The Good Samaritan	Luke 10
102	Lazarus	John 11
97	Woman at the well	John 4
91	Crucifixion	Mat 27 Luke 23
57	Resurrection	Matt 27 Luke 24
105	Ascension	Acts 1:3-11
111	Phillip and the Ethiopian	Acts 8
106:	Future harvest	Acts 1:11 Matt 25:1-13

## Overview of the Bible

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
39	Four Gardens	Gen1 Ezekiel 33 (Dry Bones).Matt 23 Rev 22
101	Sheep	John 10 Luke 15 Matt 18 Isaiah 53

## Discipleship

Lesson #	Theme:	Verses:
101	Salvation: No sheep will be lost	John 10 Luke 15:4 Matt 18 Isaiah 53
111	Baptism: Phillip Ethiopian	Acts 8
42	Prayer and Devotions:	Daniel 6
51/52	Kingdom of God (Lords Prayer: Now and Not Yet) Remember	Acts 14 Matthew 6
92	Communion: Emmaus	Luke 24
56	Humiliation; Tenants	Matt 21
40:	Culture/religions Shadrach	Daniel 3
116/120	Scripture is God breathed	Acts 27
120	Correction and teaching	2 Tim 3:1-8,16-17
71	Call to God: Peter and fishing: Not good enough/not ready	Luke 5
94	Temple in your heart	John 2:13-23
108	Community (Apostils)	Acts 4: 32-36 and 6
109	People power over evil spirits	Acts 5
110	Individuality (Paul)	Acts 7 and 9

## Stories About Relationships

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
34	Marriage partner (faith)	Proverbs 31
54	Forgiveness (Official)	Matthew 18
79	Relationship (Mary and M)	Luke 10
117	Love Unconditional	1 Corinthians 13
119	Contentment	Philippians 4

## Stories of Dealing with People

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
4	Talking about problems	Gen 6
21	Improve relationships	Ruth 1
31	Borrowing and lending	2 Kings 6
42	Falsely accused	Daniel 6
46	Not acceptable	Zechariah 3
48	Comforting somebody	Mat1
60	Friend looks sad	Mark 4
62	Responding to gossip	Mark 5
64	Misunderstandings	Mark 8
80	Dealing with worry	Luke 12
89	Reaction/sadness	Luke 22
98	Reaction/Stress	John 5
106	Danger of absolutes	Matt 25
110	Reaction Bad behaviour	Acts 7 & 9
6	Reasons for leaving home	Genesis 12
10	Using names (I am)	Exodus 3
13	First day rules	Exodus 20
29	BBQ invitation	1 Kings 18
32	Everyday greetings/goodbyes	Psalms 23
33	Get some fresh air	Amazing Grace
51	Buying New Things	Matt 6
85	Skin colour/ contentment	Luke 18
86	Encouragement	Luke 18
109	Gadgets	Acts 5
115	Asking for a favour	Acts 20

## Stories for Medical People

14	Bronze Snake	Numbers 21 John 3
30	General Naaman's healing	2 Kings 5
62	Woman with bleeding	Mark 5

## Stories for Sport/Art/Music

113	Encouragement (Prison)	Acts 16
15	The Fight for Life (marital arts)	Num 22- 24
16	New Body (aerobics)	Deu 1:26-33
35	The Game of life	Ecc 7
97	National flag	John 4
33	Living Water and Hope	Psalms 23
105	Ascension (Dance and mask).	Acts 1:3-11
11	Dragon Cover (Lion Dance)	Ex 12:1-13, 29-31
61	Evil Sprits (Dragon dance)	Mark 5
19	Traditional instruments	Joshua 5
51& 52	National anthems	The Lord's Prayer
62	Shame (calligraphy)	Mark 5:23-34
33	Just what I need	Amazing grace
16	Footprints poem	Deu 1:26-33
78	Giving singers feedback	Luke 10: 25-37
59	Farming poetry	Mark 4:1-20
20	Hairdressing barber poetry	Judges 16
98	Healing at the Pool (spa)	John 5
92	The Road to Emmaus (Tea)	Luke 24
47	The breath of life (kites)	Zechariah 3:1-4
71	Any luck (fishing)	Luke 5:1-11
34	Photography	Proverbs 31
35	Relax, sleep and revitalize	Amazing Grace

## World View Stories (All)

Lesson #	Bible Theme:	Bible Verses
40	Job Security: (Shadrach)	Daniel 3
47	Success and Prosperity	Zechariah 8: 20-23
89	Buddhism: Garden of Gethsemane (Reaction to Sin)	Luke 22 Mark 14
83	Ancestral Worship (Lazarus and Rich Man)	Luke 16
61	Evil Sprits (Legion)	Mark 5
86	Confucius: (Rich Young Ruler)	Luke 18
82	Cultural Rules (The Lost Second Son).	Luke 15
62	Shame (Woman with Bleeding Problem)	Mark 5
108	Communism (Sharing)	Acts 4 and 6
64	Communism:	Mark 8: 27-33
6	Shamanism	Gen 12 and 15
43	Racism	Jonah 1 and 2
44	Shinto	Jonah 3 and 4
46	Taoism (Sin is like Adultery)	Zech 3:1-4
38	Temples	Isaiah 44
35	Busyness	Ecclesiastes 7
17	Muslim: God is everywhere	Deuteronomy 4:7-8; 9: 2-10
18/19	Security Marriage Shame (Ruth and Naomi)	Ruth 1-4
65	Good work: (Pharisee/Tax C)	Luke 18 Mark 10
15	Many Gods (Balaam-Star)	Numbers 22-24

# Grammar

Lesson #	Theme:	Bible Verses
3	Present Perfect Continuous (Cain and Abel)	Gen 4
8	Going to/will (Abraham/Isaac)	Gen 22
12	Prepositions of place ( in at on). Mt Sinai	Ex19
19	2nd conditional (if) and explanation (music)	Josh 5
23	Adjectives/Adverbs (Samuel listening)	1 Ssm 3
37, 9	Comparatives	Isaiah 25
39	Instructional adverbs (Gardens)	Ezekiel 37
43	Adverbs too much, a lot	Jonah 1 2
47	Future hopes and plans	Zech 3
71	Nouns, verbs, adverbs, adjectives (fishing)	Luke 5
100	Past Continuous/simple past (blind man)	John 9
105	Ascension (compare tenses)	Acts 1
106	Most, almost all, some (10 young ladies)	Mat 25
112	Paraphrase	Acts 10
118	Past Continuous/Single Past	Eph 6

# Lessons for Communication

Lesson #	Theme:
11	Positive talk,
15	Networking
17	Explaining location
32	Everyday greetings
40	Job interview
48	Welcoming guest
35 & 57	Agree/disagree
58	Debriefing
61	Delegating
52	Thanking a guest
72	Introduction and conversation
76	Welcome new workers and special visitors
78	Giving Feedback
72	Negotiation
80	Intonation
101	Persuasion
102	Public speaking
104	Announcement
105	Short talks
108	Brainstorming
5, 88, 119	Voice Projection
113	Positive in negative situations
121	Positive talking about people

# Special Interest Topics

22	Personal Values (Boaz)	Ruth 2.3.4
25	Case Study Analysis (Goliath)	1 Sam 17
27	Report Writing (Solomon)	1 Kings 3
40	Job Interview (Shadrach)	Daniel 3
45	Grief Cycle	Hag1 Jer 3
82	Counseling (Father 2 sons)	Luke 15
83	Performance Appraisal (Laz)	Luke 16
92	Perfect Paragraph (Peter's 3)	Luke 22

# General Lessons

Lesson #	Theme:
36,1,17	Tour guide
5, 29, 31	Builders
7	Flight Attendant
20	Hairdressers
29, 55, 80	Gardeners
55 & 59	Farmers/Food
81	Coffee shop
94	Markets
63	Restaurants
66	Taxi driver
67	Meetings
77	Hotels
93	Daily schedule
96, 84, 75	Telephone calls
103	Job responsibilities
59	Line graphs
74	Location of furniture
109	Selling items
13	Teacher rules
99	Cars and laws
28	Giving directions
24,44,50,88	Idioms

## Possible Yearly Planner: 50 lessons

### Important information

You can use this yearly planner as a guide to what lesson to do each week or you can use a small group of lessons, as given in the topic areas on the previous pages, a number of times over and over again. If using the weekly planner, you may wish to have another lesson during the week to cater for those participants who wish to learn more about God's story or those who wish to be disciple quickly. These lessons could come from those listed on this page or come from other lessons listed on the previous pages.

Note: Appendix stories were not created at the time of the writing of this plan

### Yearly Plan

Lesson #	Theme:	Verses:
----------	--------	---------

#### January

##### What was Jesus like?: Stories of hope: Jesus

62	Shame (Woman with Bleeding Problem)	Mark 5
98	Healing at the Pool	John 5
72	Healing through the roof	Luke 5 Mark 2
78	The Good Samaritan	Luke 10
102	Lazarus	John 11

#### February

##### Chinese New Year

61	Evil Sprits (Legion)	Mark 5
11	The Passover	Exodus 12

##### Valentines Day

117	Unconditional Love	1 Corinthians 13
-----	--------------------	------------------

#### Late February- Mid April

##### Lead up to Easter

89	The Garden of Gethsemane	Luke 22, Mark 14
91	The Crucifixion	Matt 27, Luke 24
92	The Road to Emmaus	Luke 24
57	The Resurrection	Matt 27 Luke 24
105	The Ascension	Acts 1:3-11
107	Pentecost	Acts 2

#### Late April - Early May

##### Labor Day

86	Confucius: (Rich Young Ruler)	Luke 18
47	Success and Prosperity	Zech 8: 20-23

##### Mothers day

21	Security Marriage Shame (Ruth and Naomi)	Ruth 1-4
7	The Three visitors	Psalm 139

#### Late May– August

##### The spread of the gospel. (The book of Acts)

108	The change in the disciples	Acts 4
109	People power over evil spirits	Acts 5
110	The change in Paul	Acts 7&9
111	The Ethiopian Eunuch	Acts 8
112	Peter and Cornelius	Acts 10&11
114	Paul in Athens	Acts 17
113	The boy at the window	Acts 20

## August

### Festivals:

#### Harvest and reunion festivals

106	Future harvest	Acts 1:11 Matt 25
121	My new home town	Hebrew 11

#### Ancestor Worship

83	Ancestral Worship (Lazarus and Rich Man)	Luke 16
----	--	---------

### Late August– Early October

#### Special days:

##### Father's Day

82	The Prodigal Son	Luke 15
----	------------------	---------

##### Show day

109	Sheep	John 10 Luke 15 Matt 18 Isaiah 53
-----	-------	--------------------------------------

#### Spring

71	Call to God: Peter and fishing:	Luke 5
----	---------------------------------	--------

#### National Days

97	Woman at the well	John 4
----	-------------------	--------

#### Sports finals

35	The Game of life	Ecc 7
113	Paul and Silas in prison	Acts 16

### Early October– November

#### Old Testament Stories

40	Job Security: (Shadrach)	Daniel 3
42	Daniel and the lions	Daniel 6
47	Success and Prosperity	Zechariah 8: 20-23
25	David and Goliath	1 Samuel 17
27	Solomon's (2 mothers)	1 Kings 3
30	General Naaman's healing	2 Kings 5

### Late October- Early November

#### Creation to Christmas

#### Stories that lead up to the birth of Jesus

1	Creation (Self esteem):	Genesis 1
2	Sin and promise:	Genesis 2 and 3
4	Sin, promise flood	Genesis 6
36	King Foretold	Isaiah 7 9 52 53

### November –December

#### Christmas Story (5 weeks)

48	The Prophecies and birth	Matt 1 Luke 2
69	The Shepherds	Luke 2
49/50	The Kings	Matthew 2
70	Simeon and Anna	Luke 2

#### Stories of hope

99	The woman caught in adultery	Mark 8: 27-33
84	Light (10 Lepers) Lantern	Luke 17
87	Zaccheaus	Luke 19
	Not good enough and not ready	
60	Calming the Storm	Mark 4

or 73 other stories you can choose from the index.

# Syllabus: Genesis to Revelation

## Old Testament

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
1	An Amazing Creation	Talking about travel places	Beautiful places and creation stories. Guilin and Pan Gu and Nu Wa	Genesis 1 & 2 Creation (Genesis 2:15-17 are not necessary). The beginning of time
2	Independence Day	Disappointment with somebody (Expressing Anger)	Stories of honour, dishonour and tragedy Qu Yuan and King Hui	Genesis 2:15-17 & Genesis 3. The Fall: The Garden of Eden.
3	Please Me (Recent Events)	Evidence of something you have been doing lately (Present Perfect Continuous)	How people try to please God including going to places, methods of worship and sacrifice: Mogao caves	Genesis 4:1-20: Cain and Able Just after Creation
4	Shocking but Amazing. Making a Difficult Request.	Talking about your own problems	Flood stories and stories where people have changed and become corrupt. Da Yu	Genesis 6: 5–12. 7: 6-12, 20-24, 8:1-22, 9:7--24. Noah: A few generations after creation.
5	Number One Building Sites	Voice projection. Building vocabulary	Symbolic structures. Taipei 101	Genesis 11-1-9 The Tower of Babel
6	I'm Leaving. Reasons for Leaving	Reasons for leaving home	Stories of places that are very divine or where the Gods reside. Stories of insanity Hang shān (Yellow mountain).	Genesis 12:1-6, 15:1-6.. Hebrews 11:8-19. Psalms 65:6, 90 and 98 Abraham's call: Travelling from Ur to Haran. 2100BC
7	In His Hands	Flight attendant	Five significant moments in your country's history.	Genesis 18: The Three visitors and unexpected pregnancy. 2100 BC. Near the great trees of Mamre Psalm 139 Mothers womb. (Very significant: Marvellously made at the beginning of our journey)
8	Well Done Changing Plans for a BBQ	Plans: going to have, having and will have	The use of sacrifice. Ximen Bao and Zhang River	Genesis 22: Abraham and Isaac. 2100BC
9	Oh Brother	Comparisons and using the word impressed	Famous families that have influenced a country. The Soong sisters	Genesis 43: Joseph and his brothers. Land of Canaan and Egypt. 1915-1805BC. Can use genealogy Matthew 1: One family
10	What's in a Name	Using names in communication	History of names. The meaning behind names. Zhūgě Liàng	Exodus 3 and John 20:10-20 (Mary). Near Egypt 1440BC
11	The Year of the Dragon	Talking positively	Dragons. The story of the carp. Red banner across doorframes Chinese New Year	Exodus 12:1-13, 29-31 The Passover, 1440BC. Matthew 26:18, 26-30. Luke 18:31-34 The God Beyond Egyptian Gods
12	Ash Cloud (Meeting Someone)	Prepositions (in at on) especially when meeting someone	Location of volcanoes and fire dragon stories	Exodus 19 Arriving at Mt Sinai Mount Sinai 1440BC

# Old Testament continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
13	Rule Number One	How to give first day guidelines to a new group	Golden and silver rules in your country	Exodus 20 The ten commandments. 1440BC
14	This is an Emergency	First aid and what to say when you arrive at a hospital	Snake stories and use of the "Rod of Asclepius" and "Nehushtan" The tale of the white snake	Numbers 21:4-9 The snake in the desert and John 3:9-15. 1440-1406BC
15	The Fight for Life	Networking	Martial Arts: Kung Fu The Shaolin monks	Numbers 22:1-38, Numbers 24:15-25 The sword wielding angel. Matthew 2:1-2 Micah 5:2 (Balaam) Near the river Jordan 1440-1406BC
16	New Body	Aerobic words. Use of the word <i>to be honest</i> and <i>frank</i>	Mass games. Group games and activities like Tai Chi and marathons	Deuteronomy 1: 26-33 and the Footprints poem
17	East to West Directions N.S.E.W	Explaining the location of major attractions and landmarks in your country.	Deserts, forests and location of large idol sculptures Gobi Desert	Deuteronomy 4:7-8 (God is near!) Moses addressing the people in the wilderness. Gobi Desert
18	That's History Party Invitation	Inviting someone you don't know	Good luck Remembrance Day Hong Bao Chinese New Year	Joshua 1:7-8. 2:1-24 Rahab (God of history). Isaiah43:15-21. Jeremiah 29:11-14 (God of Plans) 1400BC Crossing Jordan River.
19	Sweet Sweet Music	Second conditional (if you were) and explaining new things. A something is something ....	Traditional musical instruments and lucky numbers, Erhu. Number 7 and 8	Joshua 5:13- 6-13. Part 2 of Joshua at Jericho.1400BC
20	Snip Snip	Haircuts and barber shops. Giving Advice	Famous hairstyles and stories about barbers.	Judges 16:2-31 Samson and Delilah. Babylonian exile.1300-1050BC
21	Here Comes Trouble	How to improve difficult relationships	Amazing woman Wu Zetian	Ruth 1:1-21: Namoi and Ruth returning to Bethlehem from Moab 1280BC
22	One Perfect Day:	Personal Values Saying no	Judges desiring fairness Bao Zheng	Ruth 2 (Mainly 2), 3 and 4 : Ruth and Boaz. Returned to Bethlehem 1280BC
23	Do You Hear What I Hear: Introductions	Verbs adjective and adverbs. Music and Getting used to accents.	Accents Which is best English? Types of English Your cultures English	1 Samuel 3:1-11 Samuel listening to God. Israel 1000BC.
24	Face Value	Idioms; <i>It has slipped my mine. It is on the tip of my tongue. He wears his heart on his sleeve</i>	Knight like characters Extreme Sports. Youxia:	1 Samuel 16: Samuel Anoints David.
25	Invasion or Invitation	Doing a Case Study Analysis	David and Goliath type stories. Battle of Red Cliff Chibi	1 Samuel 17 David and Goliath 15 miles west of Jerusalem.

# Old Testament continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
26	Don't Label Me Welcoming New Person at Work	Being in a new environment and not being able to use something	Stories where people were or were not categorized. Deng Xiaoping. Minority groups	2 Samuel 9: Jonathon's paraplegic son. Jerusalem and a faraway place in the Transjordan. 1000BC
27	Smart Thinking	Structure a Report	Stories of amazing wisdom. Cao Cao son	1 Kings 3:16-28 Solomon (baby) 950BC Jerusalem.
28	Straight Ahead	Giving directions	Places-adjectives Urban, rural, isolated	1 Kings 17:1:6 Elijah fed by the ravens. Kerith Ravine 950BC.
29	BBQ's Galore Invitation to a BBQ	Offering to bring something. BBQ language	BBQs and big objects	1 Kings 18 Elijah at Mt Carmel 950BC. God is not sleeping
30	Fit as a Fiddle Medical Visit	Language used before and when you visit a doctor	Famous medical stories . Physician Hua Tuo	2 Kings 5:1-19: Healing of Naaman Israel. The Jordan River and Aram. 852-841BC
31	Give Me the Chop (Tools and banks)	Borrowing and lending	Banks	2 Kings 6:1-7 The Lost axe head. Banks of the Jordan River. 852- 841BC
32	Just Another Positive Work Environment	Everyday Greetings and Goodbyes	Commonality and breaking the stereotypes Poem: <i>The Common Sight to the Sikong</i> .	Psalms 23: Restore my soul.
33	Just What I Needed Gifts	How to use your time wisely in terms of exercise, getting some fresh air and having enough sleep.	Appropriate and Inappropriate gifts	Amazing Grace. (Knowing the choice of an underived gift) Proverbs 1:7. Wisdom is fearing God: Wisdom is a gift. John 3:16 Acts 4:33 and Acts 3 The Gift given to a man born lame by Peter and John
34	Mr/Mrs Right Wedding Photographer	Taking photos and asking somebody to take a photo for you	Wedding Photos and Wedding halls	Proverbs 31:1-31 (10-31) especially 31:30: An Acceptable Wife. King Lemuel's mother speaking to him. 1000BC-800BC .
35	The Game of Life	How to Agree and Disagree	Traditional games from your country. Mah-jong	Ecclesiastes 7:1-2,10,12,18,20-22. (The meaningless of life without God). 950BC. Reality-Death. 2 Timothy 1:10, Matthew 10:29-31. Good Coach
36	Fit for a King Tour Guide: Royalty	Tour Guide Language	Famous temples and castles. The Temple of Heaven	Isaiah 7:13-14, 9:6-7. 52:13-15 53:1-13 A King is coming 760-673BC (God is great, God will save) Exile
37	Closure	Comparatives	Pipedream projects	Isaiah 25:6-8. No more tears. 760- 673BC
38	Any More? Welcoming a Guest: Use of Leftovers	Terms for leftover food and how to help people to eat the leftover food table	Use of leftovers and recycling. Min Nong's ( <b>Chinese</b> ) poem	Isaiah 44: God is not hand made Exile 760-673BC

# Old Testament/New Testament ...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
39	Just Like Heaven	Giving Instructions Instructional Adverbs. (First...)	Famous Gardens and their history. Suzhou and Ji Ching	Genesis 1. Ezekiel 37:1-4, 10-14 Matthew 23:27-28. Revelation 22:1-3 Isaiah 11:6-9. Four gardens that explain the whole Bible The garden of our hearts.
40	What's Cooking?	Difficult Job interview questions and answers Cooking	Hot Pots and spicy pot dishes	Daniel 3. Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. Babylon. 620-540BC
41	Sci-Fi	First conditional Contents of food Selling Healthy Market Food	Future predictions for your country	Daniel 5: The writing is on the wall. Babylon 620-540BC
42	Who Me?	Borrowing/ Accusations Responding to being falsely accused	Stories where somehow was falsely accused. Fengmeng	Daniel 6. The Lions Den 620-Babylon. 540BC
43	Now is the Time	Countable/ Uncountable Adverbs too much, a lot, almost etc.. Time words deferring and procrastinating	Stories on use of time for study work etc Xuan Liang Ci Gu.	Jonah 1 and 2: Jonah flees and then returns to Nineveh. City of Nineveh on the Tigris River. 800-750BC.
44	A Whale of a Time	Common Idioms Animals	Protected Species: Chinese Alligator	Jonah 3 and 4: Jonah under the vine. City of Nineveh 800-750BC.
45	Tragic	Dealing with Grief Grief Cycle	Stories of national tragedy. Old Summer Palace, Yuan Ming Yuan	Haggai 1:3-11. Idolatry (God's will and work is Priority) 520BC Jerusalem. Jeremiah 3:1-10 Idolatry and our Adultery against God. (People need to change)
46	Well Balanced	Misbehaving Employee When Something is not Acceptable.	Yin Yang. Traditional clothes	Zechariah 3:1-4 Joshua rescued/ undressed and dressed in forgiveness and new life. (Get rid of anti kingdom activity) Jerusalem after the exile. 522-509BC
47	The Breath of Life	Future Hopes and Plans	Kites and stories about the use of kites " <i>Chu songs all around</i> "	Zechariah 8:20-23 God's presence and present. Jerusalem after the exile. 522-509BC
48	Problem or Prediction	Helping Somebody Comforting somebody who has a problem	Stories of expanding world view, making things better and also a discussion on concubines. "The frog in the well" A New Perspective (A looking down at a sky in a well).	Matthew 1:18:25, Luke 2:1-7 Mary and Joseph (dream) Nazareth. Bethlehem. 4-0BC. 1. Isaiah (760-673) He will come and save you. (Jesus: means the Lord saves) <i>Jesus</i> : Is the Greek form of the Hebrew word Joshua. It means the Lord saves. (Messiah: means anointed Deliverer) 2. Isaiah: (760-673) He will be born to a virgin. He will be God's Son. (Immanuel: God is with us) 3. Micah: (738-698BC) (A Messianic deliverer is coming) He will be born in Bethlehem. (Son of David's ancestral line will come through a man called Judah). 4. Jeremiah: (650-582BC). (God is great and God will save) He will be a descendent of King David. Promise to King David: Your Kingship will be everlasting)

# New Testament Continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
49	You're a Star!	Introducing (Welcoming) a Special Guest	Origin of Chinese Zodiac (Jade Emperor). Constellations	Matthew 2:1-2 and Micah 5:2 :The Kings and the Star. Persia to Bethlehem. 4-0BC
50	Better	Late for Work / Idioms Common Phrases "better safe and sorry" and "better late than never".	S.A.R.S Emperors and kings who killed potential threats	Matthew 2:1-8 and 13-23: King Herod 4-0BC. Micah 5:2 Haggai 11:1 Jeremiah 31:15 Jerusalem 4-0BC
51	What's New?	Buying New Things Bargaining in Department Stores / Inventions	Famous inventions. Silk, gunpowder etc	Matthew 6 Lord's Prayer: Now and not yet (make into a story). .On a mountainside near Lake Galilee. 30-33AD Matthew 12:22-23, 28. Colossians 2:15-33 (Kingdom now) Acts 14:18-20. (Difficult now)
52	Talk to Me	Finding a Seat How to address different people and how support a team	National anthems	Matthew 6: 9-13 The Lord's Prayer
53	Help!	Routine and simple past Voice Projection Worries	Supportive countries Buffalos	Matthew 11: 28-30: Come to me all who are heavy laden
54	I Will Waive it!	How to say sorry to someone. To express forgiveness	Stories of forgiveness. Zhu-ge Liang and Meng Huo	Matthew 18:21-35. An Official who Refused to Forgive. Capernaum.30AD
55	Fresh is Best	Gardening: Growing fruit and plants. Home grown items	Areas of fruit and flower production and wildflowers	Matthew 21:18-21: Jesus cursing the fig tree. Faith, not merit making works or looks. Jesus on his way back to Jerusalem 30AD.
56	Humiliated	Danger of Triangles How to Respond to Building Triangles	Stories of humiliation and perseverance and revenge. Gou Jian, King of Yue	Matthew 21:33-44 Tenants story Acts; 8:33. The Greatest Humiliation ever. Acts 2:36-38.Reaction of the people. Acts 7:54, 57-58. Compare to Saul's response Temple Court in Jerusalem.30AD
57	Kingdom Victory	Describing adjectives Agreement and disagreement	The Great Wall of China, tombs and stories of great empires. Moon cakes	Matthew 27:57-- 28:1-10. Luke 24: 1-12, 36--49. The Resurrection John 20:10-20 (Mary), John 20:24-29 (Thomas.). Jerusalem 33AD
58	Just in Time	Debriefing Coaching	Stories of waiting for something special. Yang Guifei (lychees)	Mark 1:1-11: John the Baptist. In the Jordan River in the desert. 30AD
59	That's Life	Graph fluctuations Farming	Agriculture and poetry	Mark 4:1-20: A farmer sows some seeds in four fields
60	A Storm is Brewing!	Travel: Culture Shock A good friend looks sad or angry but doesn't share his/her feelings!	Stories of divine travel over water. Qin Shi Huang and Han Wu Di <i>The Eight Immortals Cross the Sea</i> .	Mark 4:35-41: Jesus Calms the Storm (Disciples lack of foresight). Sea of Galilee 30AD. Also Matthew 14: 22-36 Jesus walks on water.
61	Clean Sweep	Delegating Cleaning Jobs	Chinese New Year. Story of Nian. How to clean out evil spirits.	Mark 5:1-20 Legion. Delivered from evil spirits and became an evangelist to many. (Hebrews 10:11-12): East side of the Sea of Galilee. 30AD
62	Admiration or Shame	Responding to Gossip Nurse and patient interaction.	Calligraphy and stories of shame. Sun Zhongshan	Mark 5:23-34 Hebrews 12:2. The Woman with a Bleeding Problem. Jesus on his way from Jericho to Jerusalem. 30AD .

# New Testament Continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
63	Food for Thought	Restaurants	Natural disaster and welfare organisations	Mark 6:30-44. Feeding the 5000
64	National Makeover!	Listening to Misunderstandings	Sun Yet-Sen, creating a revolution. People or situations that have changed a country	Mark 8:27- 33 9:2-10. Pre transfiguration and then transfiguration. Caesarea and then on a mountain.30AD
65	Are You Blind?	Leaving a job	Hua Mulan and other stories where people were not recognised for their true character	Mark 10:46-52 Luke 18: 35-42, The blind man Jesus is leaving Jericho. 30 AD Luke 23:39-41 (The robbers on the cross) 33AD.
66	Hail	Hailing a taxi or motorcycle. Breakdown language	Motor racing, taxis, motor transport	Mark 11:1-11 Palm Sunday Jesus entering on a donkey
67	An Important Meeting	Meetings	Famous meetings.	Mark 14:12-26: The last supper. In the upper room Jerusalem 33 AD
68	It's a Boy!	Offering to help. Using the word <i>recommend</i> .	Cultural norms when you are pregnant . Incense sticks. 'yin' energies of the dead.	Luke 1:5-80: Zechariah and Elizabeth. Temple in Jerusalem.1BC
69	What a Coincidence!	Talking to somebody you run into in an unexpected situation. Passing on good news	Double Happiness. Story from Tang Dynasty	Luke 2:8-20:The story of the shepherds Bethlehem and nearby hills. 0AD
70	I Know	Contacting somebody you don't know	Stories of somebody being recognised. Zhiyin (知音)	Luke 2:22-39: Simeon and Anna The temple in Jerusalem. 0AD
71	Any Luck?	Fishing nouns, verbs, adverbs and adjectives. Idiom: <i>You never know what's just around the corner</i>	Amazing fishing wisdom stories. Jiang Taigong	Luke 5:1-11: A Story of Great Fishing. Sea of Galilee.(Best fishing was at night) 30AD. Follow up story could be John 21: 1-14.
72	I Am	Introductions and Conversations	People who claimed to be divine. Hong Xiuquan	Luke 5:17-26: Healing of the Paralytic Man. Galilee. 30AD
73	Who's the Boss?	Employment Vocabulary and reasons for leaving a job. Permission to Leave Early	Good bosses: Liu Bei Sun Shuilin and Sun Donglin	Luke 6:12-19: The Twelve Apostles Mountainside and plain near Jerusalem.30AD
74	What a House	Furniture and position	Traditional houses	Luke 6:46-49: Wise and foolish builders
75	Seeing is Believing	Language used when something doesn't arrive	Mysteries: Tianchi lake and Qinghai lake	Luke 7:1-10 The Faith of the Centurion. Jesus entering Capernaum. 30AD
76	Welcome Corner	Welcome to the office	Welcome to special visitors	Luke 7:36-50 Jesus anointed by the sinful woman
77	Somewhere to Stay	Booking accommodation. Reception and phone	Unique places of accommodation	Luke 10:1-11 and 17-20: The sending out of 72 Jerusalem in the temple. 30AD.

# New Testament Continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
78	10 out of 10	Giving Feedback	Times in history where one nation is or could have been classified as the godly and the other nation as ungodly. Opium War and Boxer rebellion:	Luke 10:25-37. The Good Samaritan On the road from Jerusalem to Jericho. 30AD
79	You Love Me	Levels of intimacy and how to tell someone you are/aren't interested in them	Stories of relationships. Liu Guljiang and Xu Calquing	Luke 10:38-42 Mary and Martha At their house. 30AD
80	Peace Man	Pets, Flowers and Peace Intonation, Frequency of adverbs. Dealing with worry	Pets that help relieve stress. Gardening activities. Wildflowers	Luke 12:22-31 Consider the ravens (wildflowers) Proverbs 6:1-6 Go to the ant. This lesson is a good follow up to lesson 119 Luke 12:The foolish rich man)
81	Exchange Rate	Coffee shop language	Great discoveries/losses	Luke 15:8-10: The lost coin
82	What's the Problem	Good counselling and not so good counselling	Problems were obvious or not so obvious. <i>Wang Yang Bu Lao</i>	Luke 15:11-31. The Parable of the Lost Son
83	Double or Nothing	Dealing with problems Performance appraisal Returning Faulty Items Situational Analysis	Spiritual Money and what happens to you when you die. Burning of Spirit Money (Escape Diyu):	Luke 16: Lazarus and the Rich Man
84	Give Me Some Light	Leaving a message on the telephone	Lantern Festivals: Story; The Jade Emperor in Heaven and his favourite goose	Luke 17:11-19 The parable of the 10 lepers -John 8:12. Acts 3:13-15,19. 4:12. Jesus is the light. We are all in Darkness. On the border of Galilee and Samaria as Jesus was entering a village. 30AD
85	Heart Language	Skin colour and complements. The words <i>happiness</i> and <i>contentment</i>	Ways of trying to gain contentment including visiting spiritual places. Mount Tai	Luke 18:9-14 The Two Men in the Temple.30AD
86	Show Me the Way)	How to encourage others for good work	Confucius and morally young gentleman and also what happens to children when they die	Luke 18:18-27: The Rich Young Ruler. Luke 6:26-27 (enemies)/ Romans 3:23-24. 30AD
87	Something Seems Wrong	Language dealing with crimes and suspicions Is this deal trustworthy	People or places of suspicions/corruption: Zhuge Liang's (Chu-Ko's') Empty Fort Strategy	Luke 19:1-10: Zacchaeus Jericho 30AD
88	Long Live the King	Idioms Voice projection	Royalty, leadership and coinage	Luke 20:20-26: Paying taxes to Caesar. Temple Jerusalem 30AD.
89	It Breaks My Heart	Reaction to sadness and prolonged sadness	Siddhartha Gautama (Buddhism) and stories of reaction to sickness and death.	Luke 22:39-46 and Mark 14:32-36. The Garden of Gethsemane. Near Jerusalem 33AD
90	General Alert	The Perfect Paragraph Making a Point	Stories of great but not perfect generals. General Qi Jiguang	Luke 22:33-34, 54-62: Peter's statement and denial. Near and in Jerusalem.33AD
91	Roller Coaster of Emotions	Fluctuating Line Graph Presentation/ Emotions	Stories of fluctuating feelings for individuals and supporters Liu Xiang and story of Han Qi sacrifice	Luke 23:40-43, Matthew 27:22-55. The Crucifixion. Jerusalem.33AD (Resurrection optional)

# New Testament Continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
92	Tea for Two	Using Future Grammar	Tea history and ceremony. Emperors Qian Long, Shen Nong	Luke 24:13-35: On the 7 mile Road Jerusalem to Emmaus. Death and Resurrection
93	Everything is Organised	Daily schedule	Routines at weddings	John 2:1-12 The wedding at Cana 30AD
94	Authentic	Markets and Haggling Markets; buying/selling	Best markets and shopping centres	John 2:13-23: Jesus at the temple in the temple courts 30AD.
95	The Tower of Power	Negotiation Skills Building jobs	Pagodas, temples and towers. Leifang pagoda	John 2:13-23: Predicted the Destruction of the Temple in 3 days. Pharisees are confused. Mark 9:33-35, Mark 10:35-38_Mark 13:2: Jesus followers are confused
96	Call Me	Making new Contact Telephone call	Media outlets and personalities	John 3:1-21 Nicodemus. Jerusalem 30AD.
97	Excuse Me	Tourism: Cross Culture Correcting culturally inappropriate behaviour	Flags. Culturally appropriate or inappropriate behaviour.	John 4:1-42.The Woman at the Well. Jacobs Well Sychar Samaria. 30AD
98	Give Me a Break	Dealing with Stress Move on language from a stressful situation	Hot Springs. Yang Guifei. Huaqing Hot Spring	John 5:1-18. Healing at the Sheep Gate Pool. Jerusalem 30AD.
99	It's the Law Cars and Driving	Dealing with double negatives. Crimes and penalties	Seatbelt laws. License laws. Unique laws and Crazy laws	John 8:1-11: The Woman Caught in Adultery. Base of Mount Olive at dawn in the temple courts. 30AD
100	All I Know Is	Routine: Past continuous and simple past	Religious figures	John 9:1-34: Jesus heals a man born blind. Israel 30AD.
101	He's Cute!	Persuading Somebody Animals	Horses, sheep and other significant animals	John 10:11-15,;1-17The Shepherd and the Sheep
102	No Fear	Public Speaking (first part)	Stories of people who feared dying or who who wished for eternal life and healing. Emperor Qin Shi Huang	John 11:1-48. Lazarus (tomb) Bethany 30 AD
103	Job	Daily responsibilities of a leader	Elections and celebrity politicians	John 13:1-17 Washing the disciples feet. Jerusalem Passover festival
104	The King's Speech	Making an Announcement.	Famous speeches of influence. Chairman Mao. Oct 1 1949	John 14: Jesus' Speech: He is going somewhere Jerusalem 33AD
105	To Be or Not to Be	Fashions and Arts Giving compliments about appearance and clothing	Famous arts and performances, main roles and type of make up. Chinese Opera	Acts 1:3-11: The Ascension. Mount of Olives near Jerusalem 33AD
106	Bumper Harvest	Dangers of absolutes, Use of most, most of, most of the etc...	Harvest festivals and festivals wishing for a plentiful season. Future happenings. Mid Autumn Harvest. Turtle	Acts 1:11 and Matthew 25:1-13. The Parable of the Ten Virgins. Hebrews 13:5. He is coming back. 1Corinthians 16:54-55 perishable to imperishable etc John 3:16
107	Winds of Fortune	Oops a daisy. Silly billy.	Prayer Flags	Acts 2:1-17: Pentecost
See 33	Just what I needed	Gifts	Amazing Grace	Acts 3:1-12 Peter and John. John 3:16 (Luke 23: 39-43: Robbers on the cross)
108	Come Change the World	Brainstorming	Tried to improve their country. Sun Yet-Sun, Chiang Kai-shek, Mao Zedong	Acts 4:32-34 Acts 6:1-5 (Community of believers). Jerusalem 33-37AD

# New Testament Continued...

Lesson	Title	Communication	Culture	Christ
109	Power Aid	Describing Products Gadgets	Evil Spirits	Acts 5:12-16. Disciples casting out evil spirits In the name of Jesus.
110	Born to be Bad	Labelling Students Responding to someone who is behaving badly	Stories of people who are known for their loyalty and who have experienced change in their life. General Yueh Fei. Jin zhōng bào guó	Acts 7:56-40 and 9:1-32. Saul's Conversion on the road from Jerusalem to Damascus 37AD.
111	The Road to Heaven	What to say when you are lost	Silk Road and Zhang Qian	Acts 8:26-40: Phillip and the Ethiopian Jerusalem to Gaza 40AD
112	We Are One	Group Work: Paraphrase. Group dynamics (Forming, storming, norming, performing)	Stories of overcoming cultural differences. Cao Zhi and his Seven Steps Poem: 220 AD	Acts 10:1:48. Acts 11:1-4, 18: Peter and Cornelius. Caesarea and Joppa 40AD
113	What Now?	Coach Talk Positive in negative situations	Stories of being in a difficult situation and trying to stay positive. Mukden incident 1931	Acts 16:16-40: Paul and Silas in prison. Philippi Greece 50AD.
114	Don't Get Too Close!	Setting Boundaries Setting physical and psychological boundaries	Double 7 Day and other stories that have clear boundaries between heaven and earth or two other parties	Acts 17:10-31: Paul in Athens 50AD
115	A Shining Light	Cleaning Duties Asking somebody to do a favour for you using phrasal verbs and pronouns.	Towers of light or towers for creating optimism. The Porcelain Tower of Nanjing:	Acts 20:7-12: Eutychus Goes to Sleep Troas (Modern day Turkey). 55AD
116	No Regrets	Rewording Regrets How to rephrase a regret to a more proactive response	Stories of perseverance or wisdom in challenging situations. Mao Zedong swims across the Yangtze.	Acts 27:9-44: The Storm and the Shipwreck. Paul on his way to Rome. Ship hit by the Northeaster around Crete. 60 AD
117	Love is in the Air	Unconditional Love Words associated with love. and passion for people and for their country	Marriage, divorce rates and problems in marriages. Double seven day	1 Corinthians 13:1-4: Unconditional Love. Paul is in Ephesus writing to the church in Corinth. 57AD
118	Armour Oil	Verb Tense / Battles: Past continuous and simple past.	Famous battles and traditional armour	Ephesians 6:10-19 The spiritual battle and armour. Paul under house arrest in Rome 62AD.
119	Cents or Sense	Voice projection 'down in the dumps" and over the moon. Reasons for loss of job	Cost of living Pay scales in your country. Weekly wage and Yearly salary	Philippians 4:10-13 Paul's secret to being content. Luke 12:13-21: The foolish rich man
120	Honesty and Truth	Use of the word to be frank and honest	The Phoenix and other symbols of what is truth	2 Timothy 3:1-5. Timothy 3:16-17. All Scripture is God Breathed. Paul is writing to Timothy from Rome 64AD.
121	Home Sweet Home	Farewell Party Talking about people from other cultures	Double Ninth Festival and stories of missing your hometown or a future hope of wanting to be reunited with your master or people group.	Hebrews 8:10. Hebrews 11:1-3, Hebrews 11:13-16, Hebrews 12:1-2: People of Faith knew heaven existed and that they were going there. 70AD.

# Lessons



Enjoy the Discovery!

# 1. An Amazing Creation

## Travel



- (a) Role play looking at something amazing while travelling  
 Wow, look at those **mountains**  
 Wow, look at that **sunrise**  
 Wow, look at ...(**lake, river...**)
- (b) Draw a map of your country and share where the most beautiful places are.
- (c) In groups of four, read through the following conversation about the most beautiful place in your country to visit.
- Yoshi: Margaret, you must go to ...() (place)  
 Ayako: It is the most beautiful place in ...() (Country)  
 Nana: The scenery is (**great, amazing, stunning, glorious**)  
 Yoshi: The views are...() (**fantastic, incredible, awesome**)  
 Margaret: Sounds great!  
 Ayako: The countryside is very picturesque.  
 Nana: If you go there, you can smell the fresh air  
 Yoshi: You should go there one day. It's amazing.

- (d) Role-play in pairs a local person giving instructions to a tourist
- Tourist: Excuse me.  
 Local: Yes, can I help you?  
 Tourist: I'm just visiting Guilin. Do you know any good restaurants around here?  
 Local: Yes there is good Thai restaurant not far from here, just a stones throw away, just around the corner.  
 Tourist: Can you recommend any good accommodation?  
 Local: The Chan hotel is fantastic but it is a long way away.  
 Tourist: Where can I catch a bus to Yangshuo?  
 Can you tell me where I can catch a bus to Yangshuo?  
 Local: You can catch minibus number 110 every morning at this stop at 5:00, 6:15, 8:30 and 10:45.  
 Tourist: Sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said. Could you say it again please ? (one more time please). Could you speak a little slower please? Thank you

## The First Place

- (e) 桂林山水甲天下 - "Guilin's scenery is best among all under heaven." Beautiful places are often described as being just like heaven. For example: Backdu Mountain in Korea has a heavenly lake and Nakhon Sawan in Thailand means heavenly city. Do you have any heavenly named places in your country?
- (f) Beautiful places can also be described as being like the Garden of Eden which existed at the beginning of time. How do you think the world was first created?
1. A big explosion or two planets colliding
  2. Volcanic eruption
  3. God said ...



- (g) What are your culture's creation stories?  
 For example:  
**China:** Pan Gu and Nu Wa  
**World:** The Creation story (**1st day, 2nd day...**, **image, very good**) ...See the Chinese character for creation)  $\pm + \text{ノ} + \text{口} + \text{支} \rightarrow \text{造}$

- (h) Does it really matter which creation story you believe in?

# 1. An Amazing Creation

## Travel



- (a) Role play looking at something amazing while travelling  
 Wow, look at those **mountains**  
 Wow, look at that **sunrise**  
 Wow, look at ...(**lake, river...**)
- (b) Draw a map of your country and share where the most beautiful places are.
- (c) In groups of four, read through the following conversation about the most beautiful place in your country to visit.
- Yoshi: Margaret, you must go to ...() (place)  
 Ayako: It is the most beautiful place in ...() (Country)  
 Nana: The scenery is (**great, amazing, stunning, glorious**)  
 Yoshi: The views are...() (**fantastic, incredible, awesome**)  
 Margaret: Sounds great!  
 Ayako: The countryside is very picturesque.  
 Nana: If you go there, you can smell the fresh air  
 Yoshi: You should go there one day. It's amazing.

- (d) Role-play in pairs a local person giving instructions to a tourist
- Tourist: Excuse me.  
 Local: Yes, can I help you?  
 Tourist: I'm just visiting Guilin. Do you know any good restaurants around here?  
 Local: Yes there is good Thai restaurant not far from here, just a stones throw away, just around the corner.  
 Tourist: Can you recommend any good accommodation?  
 Local: The Chan hotel is fantastic but it is a long way away.  
 Tourist: Where can I catch a bus to Yangshuo?  
 Can you tell me where I can catch a bus to Yangshuo?  
 Local: You can catch minibus number 110 every morning at this stop at 5:00, 6:15, 8:30 and 10:45.  
 Tourist: Sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said. Could you say it again please ? (one more time please). Could you speak a little slower please? Thank you

## The First Place

- (e) 桂林山水甲天下 - "Guilin's scenery is best among all under heaven." Beautiful places are often described as being just like heaven. For example: Backdu Mountain in Korea has a heavenly lake and Nakhon Sawan in Thailand means heavenly city. Do you have any heavenly named places in your country?
- (f) Beautiful places can also be described as being like the Garden of Eden which existed at the beginning of time. How do you think the world was first created?
1. A big explosion or two planets colliding
  2. Volcanic eruption
  3. God said ...



- (g) What are your culture's creation stories?  
 For example:  
**China:** Pan Gu and Nu Wa  
**World:** The Creation story (**1st day, 2nd day...**, **image, very good**) ...See the Chinese character for creation)  $\pm + \text{ノ} + \text{口} + \text{支} \rightarrow \text{造}$

- (h) Does it really matter which creation story you believe in?

## 2. Independence Day

### Expressing Anger

- (a) Ask your partner three yes/no questions
1. Do you like... (**running**)? Yes I do/ No I don't
  2. Are you... (**Japanese**)? Yes I am/ No I'm not
  3. Can you...(sing, cook) well? Yes I can/No I can't
- (b) Practice these different ways of saying yes and no.
1. You could say that
  2. Absolutely or definitely
  3. Certainly (not)
  4. Sounds great
  5. Of course
  6. Sure or ok
  7. Some people say I am
  8. I am afraid I can't
- (c) In groups of 3, ask one of your group a number of questions and if that person says yes or no, they receive a punishment.

Person 1: Are you friendly?

Person 2: Some people say I am (No penalty)

- (d) What do you do when you feel angry? (Circle and share)

When I feel angry I ...

1. take a deep breath
2. take a walk around the block
3. take out my frustration on ... (kick the cat)
4. try to talk to the offender
5. shout or throw something
6. count to three
7. pray

- (e) Role-play a situation when you needed to talk to someone about something they did that made you feel very angry.

Alana: Excuse me Peter. Can I talk to you about something?

Peter: Sure.

Alana: I felt really angry when you...()



### Broken Relationship

- (f) In Chinese history, Qu Yuan was one person who felt extremely sad and angry about what King Hui did. Circle which of the following answers do you think is correct.

1. Qu Yuan lived around 300 BC or 100 BC
2. Qu Yuan was from a poor family or rich family
3. He was a famous prime minister or cook
4. He was banished to Japan or Hunan
5. He wrote poems or e-mails

- (g) Share what else you know about Qu Yuan.

#### Vocabulary

King Hui aggressive passive disillusioned

- (h) Do you think your country is getting better or worse?
- (i) Was there ever a time when the world was perfect?
- (j) Do you know the time when the world was perfect until the Adam, Eve and snake incident? (**trees, snake, doubt, did, dishonest, hide**). See the Chinese character for forbidden: 禁)

## 2. Independence Day

### Expressing Anger

- (a) Ask your partner three yes/no questions
1. Do you like... (**running**)? Yes I do/ No I don't
  2. Are you... (**Japanese**)? Yes I am/ No I'm not
  3. Can you...(sing, cook) well? Yes I can/No I can't
- (b) Practice these different ways of saying yes and no.
1. You could say that
  2. Absolutely or definitely
  3. Certainly (not)
  4. Sounds great
  5. Of course
  6. Sure or ok
  7. Some people say I am
  8. I am afraid I can't
- (c) In groups of 3, ask one of your group a number of questions and if that person says yes or no, they receive a punishment.

Person 1: Are you friendly?

Person 2: Some people say I am (No penalty)

- (d) What do you do when you feel angry? (Circle and share)

When I feel angry I ...

1. take a deep breath
2. take a walk around the block
3. take out my frustration on ... (kick the cat)
4. try to talk to the offender
5. shout or throw something
6. count to three
7. pray

- (e) Role-play a situation when you needed to talk to someone about something they did that made you feel very angry.

Alana: Excuse me Peter. Can I talk to you about something?

Peter: Sure.

Alana: I felt really angry when you...()



### Broken Relationship

- (f) In Chinese history, Qu Yuan was one person who felt extremely sad and angry about what King Hui did. Circle which of the following answers do you think is correct.

1. Qu Yuan lived around 300 BC or 100 BC
2. Qu Yuan was from a poor family or rich family
3. He was a famous prime minister or cook
4. He was banished to Japan or Hunan
5. He wrote poems or e-mails

- (g) Share what else you know about Qu Yuan.

#### Vocabulary

King Hui aggressive passive disillusioned

- (h) Do you think your country is getting better or worse?
- (i) Was there ever a time when the world was perfect?
- (j) Do you know the time when the world was perfect until the Adam, Eve and snake incident? (**trees, snake, doubt, did, dishonest, hide**). See the Chinese character for forbidden: 禁)

# 3. Please Me

## Recent Events

- (a) Help to do an acrostic poem on the board with the word **help**  
 was **H** a car  
**E**  
**L**  
 Pick up the rubbish

- (b) What have you been doing lately to help people?

*I've been helping people...*

- do their **homework**.
- paint** their **house**.
- learn how to play soccer.
- finish their projects.

- (c) What is the difference between
- I played soccer with my son yesterday.
  - I have played soccer with my son.

- (d) If you have been helping to paint someone's house, you probably have paint on your hands. When there is evidence of doing an activity like paint on your hands, you use present perfect continuous language. Read through the following conversation with a partner.

Jacky: *Brad! Look at the paint on your hands (evidence), What have you been doing?*  
 Brad: *(Choose the most correct answer)*  
 1. I painted a house yesterday.  
 2. I have painted a house.  
 3. I've been painting a house.

- (e) Do a role-play with a partner who portrays one of following:
- Kim Chi on their breath.
  - Sweat on their face.
  - Looks very tired.

Ruth: *You are sweating! What have you been doing?*  
 Naomi: *I have been ...()*

- (f) Buddhist monks try to build up enough evidence and merit to reach Nirvana (*Nirvana means to blow out sin*). Role play two Buddhist monks talking to each other.

Monk 1: *What have you been doing lately?*  
 Monk 2: *I have been ...(fasting...)*



- (g) In your country, what do people try to do to 'blow out' sin and have union with the supreme being? For example:

**China:** Visit Mogao caves

### Vocabulary

492 temples	Silk Road	1,000 years	366 AD
Buddhist	meditation	worship	monk
vision	austerity	retreat	in remote
caves	pilgrims	enlightenment	meditation

- (h) Do you know the story how Cain and Able gave offerings to deal with sin but only one was acceptable (**soil, animals, best, happy, go**)?

# 3. Please Me

## Recent Events

- (a) Help to do an acrostic poem on the board with the word **help**  
 was **H** a car  
**E**  
**L**  
 Pick up the rubbish

- (b) What have you been doing lately to help people?

*I've been helping people...*

- do their **homework**.
- paint** their **house**.
- learn how to play soccer.
- finish their projects.

- (c) What is the difference between
- I played soccer with my son yesterday.
  - I have played soccer with my son.

- (d) If you have been helping to paint someone's house, you probably have paint on your hands. When there is evidence of doing an activity like paint on your hands, you use present perfect continuous language. Read through the following conversation with a partner.

Jacky: *Brad! Look at the paint on your hands (evidence), What have you been doing?*  
 Brad: *(Choose the most correct answer)*  
 1. I painted a house yesterday.  
 2. I have painted a house.  
 3. I've been painting a house.

- (e) Do a role-play with a partner who portrays one of following:
- Kim Chi on their breath.
  - Sweat on their face.
  - Looks very tired.

Ruth: *You are sweating! What have you been doing?*  
 Naomi: *I have been ...()*

- (f) Buddhist monks try to build up enough evidence and merit to reach Nirvana (*Nirvana means to blow out sin*). Role play two Buddhist monks talking to each other.

Monk 1: *What have you been doing lately?*  
 Monk 2: *I have been ...(fasting...)*



- (g) In your country, what do people try to do to 'blow out' sin and have union with the supreme being? For example:

**China:** Visit Mogao caves

### Vocabulary

492 temples	Silk Road	1,000 years	366 AD
Buddhist	meditation	worship	monk
vision	austerity	retreat	in remote
caves	pilgrims	enlightenment	meditation

- (h) Do you know the story how Cain and Able gave offerings to deal with sin but only one was acceptable (**soil, animals, best, happy, go**)?

# 4. Shocking but Amazing

## Weather Forecast

42	3
15	

- (a) Write down three numbers that say something about yourself and let your partner guess what they stand for. For example, "You are 42 years old" (Correct)
- (b) Role play this conversation about weather
- Person 1: I want to go **swimming** today, what is the weather like outside, is it **cloudy**?
- Person 2: Outside it is a clear **blue-sky day**.
- Person 1: What is the forecast for tomorrow?
- Person 2: Hot and humid (**sticky, muggy**) in the morning, raining in the **afternoon** and clearing at night.
- (c) Change partners and group these words and phrases into lightest (l) type of rain and heaviest (h) type of rain.
- spitting (l)
  - pouring
  - raining** cats and dogs
  - raining heavily (h)
  - sprinkling
  - bucketing down
  - sleeting
  - Drizzling
- (d) What do you like to do on rainy days? (discuss in pairs)
- On rainy days I like to...
- go to the cinema. It's very relaxing.
  - sit by an open fire. It's very romantic.
  - play football. It's very exciting.
  - sit in a coffee shop. It's very cosy.
  - read a book. It's very enjoyable.

## Making a difficult request

- (e) Rainy days can make a simple task difficult. In pairs, read through the following example of making a difficult request on a rainy day.
- Piphat: Excuse me Suwanna, **can I ask you to do something?**
- Suwanna: Sure.
- Piphat: **It's about dinner. We don't have enough rice. Even though it's pouring outside, I was wondering if you could walk to the shop and buy some rice.**

- (f) Too many rainy days can make you feel down or bleak. What makes you feel depressed about the world?

- Poverty and greed
- Selfishness
- Death
- Corruption
- Droughts
- Floods

- (g) Do you know any flood stories from your culture? For example

**China:** Yu the Great (Dà-Yǔ) (born 2059) BC who harnessed the flood of the Yellow River after his father Gun had failed miserably. dikes executed King Shun recruited dredge backbreaking "Passing his own door three times"

**World:** Noah's Ark: (**Evil, boat, flood**....See Chinese character for ship

船)



# 4. Shocking but Amazing

## Weather Forecast

42	3
15	

- (a) Write down three numbers that say something about yourself and let your partner guess what they stand for. For example, "You are 42 years old" (Correct)
- (b) Role play this conversation about weather
- Person 1: I want to go **swimming** today, what is the weather like outside, is it **cloudy**?
- Person 2: Outside it is a clear **blue-sky day**.
- Person 1: What is the forecast for tomorrow?
- Person 2: Hot and humid (**sticky, muggy**) in the morning, raining in the **afternoon** and clearing at night.
- (c) Change partners and group these words and phrases into lightest (l) type of rain and heaviest (h) type of rain.
- spitting (l)
  - pouring
  - raining** cats and dogs
  - raining heavily (h)
  - sprinkling
  - bucketing down
  - sleeting
  - Drizzling
- (d) What do you like to do on rainy days? (discuss in pairs)
- On rainy days I like to...
- go to the cinema. It's very relaxing.
  - sit by an open fire. It's very romantic.
  - play football. It's very exciting.
  - sit in a coffee shop. It's very cosy.
  - read a book. It's very enjoyable.

## Making a difficult request

- (e) Rainy days can make a simple task difficult. In pairs, read through the following example of making a difficult request on a rainy day.
- Piphat: Excuse me Suwanna, **can I ask you to do something?**
- Suwanna: Sure.
- Piphat: **It's about dinner. We don't have enough rice. Even though it's pouring outside, I was wondering if you could walk to the shop and buy some rice.**

- (f) Too many rainy days can make you feel down or bleak. What makes you feel depressed about the world?

- Poverty and greed
- Selfishness
- Death
- Corruption
- Droughts
- Floods

- (g) Do you know any flood stories from your culture? For example

**China:** Yu the Great (Dà-Yǔ) (born 2059) BC who harnessed the flood of the Yellow River after his father Gun had failed miserably. dikes executed King Shun recruited dredge backbreaking "Passing his own door three times"

**World:** Noah's Ark: (**Evil, boat, flood**....See Chinese character for ship

船)



# 5. Number One

## Building Sites



(a) What is the first thing you think about when you think of a particular country?

For example:

France: Eiffel Tower

Australia: Kangaroo

(b) Compare these animal noises from different cultures.

**pig dog frog rooster**

(c) Cultures can be very **similar** and **different**, compare people in your group and from different countries using *I, he, she, they, it, China, people in New Zealand (Kiwis)*. For example.

1. Seoul has lots of tall buildings but Brisbane has only some.
2. Switzerland has many languages. China has many dialects
3. I have a pen and he has a pen but they don't have a pen.

I have	she/he/it has	we have
they have	you have	people have
I don't have	she doesn't have	we don't have
they don't have	you don't have	Kiwi's don't have

(d) Some countries try to be the best (number one) by having the tallest or the most symbolic structure. What structure or building is your country famous for?

(e) On building sites, people use many tools. Do you know what these tools are in your language? (Match to pictures)

1. Spanner, wrench, shifter, ratchet
2. Star and flat screwdriver
3. Hammer and nails
4. Nuts and bolts
5. Hardhat
6. Saw
7. Drill

(f) What job would you most like to do on a building site? Match these verbs to the nouns

Verbs	Nouns
1. Tightening	a. nails
2. Pouring	b. the walls
3. Hammering	c. nuts
4. Operating	b. the crane
5. Cutting	d. the steel rods
6. Painting	e. cement
7. Tiling	f. the steel
8. Putting in	g. the floors

(g) Role play some builders on a building site. (In threes)

Harry: I don't have a hardhat. Do you have a (spare) hardhat?

Bob: No I don't but Craig has one

Harry: Craig, can you **pass me (lend me/throw me)** your hardhat

Craig: Sure, but can you **help me** lift this plank (tubing/tile/rod/piece/sheet of wood/steel/metal).

Harry: Okay

Bob: Harry, can you **show me** how to use this tool?

(h) Building a tall tower requires a lot of team work. Have you ever been involved in a project that required a lot of people working together?

(i) Do you know the building project at the beginning of time, the Tower of Babel (**build, one language, confused**) where many people united together to build a tower to try to be number one?

# 5. Number One

## Building Sites



(a) What is the first thing you think about when you think of a particular country?

For example:

France: Eiffel Tower

Australia: Kangaroo

(b) Compare these animal noises from different cultures.

**pig dog frog rooster**

(c) Cultures can be very **similar** and **different**, compare people in your group and from different countries using *I, he, she, they, it, China, people in New Zealand (Kiwis)*. For example.

1. Seoul has lots of tall buildings but Brisbane has only some.
2. Switzerland has many languages. China has many dialects
3. I have a pen and he has a pen but they don't have a pen.

I have	she/he/it has	we have
they have	you have	people have
I don't have	she doesn't have	we don't have
they don't have	you don't have	Kiwi's don't have

(d) Some countries try to be the best (number one) by having the tallest or the most symbolic structure. What structure or building is your country famous for?

(e) On building sites, people use many tools. Do you know what these tools are in your language? (Match to pictures)

1. Spanner, wrench, shifter, ratchet
2. Star and flat screwdriver
3. Hammer and nails
4. Nuts and bolts
5. Hardhat
6. Saw
7. Drill

(f) What job would you most like to do on a building site? Match these verbs to the nouns

Verbs	Nouns
1. Tightening	a. nails
2. Pouring	b. the walls
3. Hammering	c. nuts
4. Operating	b. the crane
5. Cutting	d. the steel rods
6. Painting	e. cement
7. Tiling	f. the steel
8. Putting in	g. the floors

(g) Role play some builders on a building site. (In threes)

Harry: I don't have a hardhat. Do you have a (spare) hardhat?

Bob: No I don't but Craig has one

Harry: Craig, can you **pass me (lend me/throw me)** your hardhat

Craig: Sure, but can you **help me** lift this plank (tubing/tile/rod/piece/sheet of wood/steel/metal).

Harry: Okay

Bob: Harry, can you **show me** how to use this tool?

(h) Building a tall tower requires a lot of team work. Have you ever been involved in a project that required a lot of people working together?

(i) Do you know the building project at the beginning of time, the Tower of Babel (**build, one language, confused**) where many people united together to build a tower to try to be number one?

## 6. I'm Leaving

### Reasons for leaving

- (a) Draw a map of your country on a piece of paper and mark in the following places and share with a partner.
1. I **was born** in ...
  2. I **grew up** in ...
  3. When I was ....., my family moved to ...
- (b) Read through the following possible reasons for travelling to another country.
1. To have a holiday (to + verb)
  2. For **a holiday**. (for + noun)
  3. To improve my English.
  4. To change my career.
  5. To look for a boyfriend/girlfriend.
  6. To experience a different culture.
  7. To broaden my horizons.
  8. For no particular reason.
  9. To have **a break**.
  10. To stop and think about life.
  11. To explore new opportunities.
  12. To see what's happening in other parts of the world.
  13. To have a look around and check things out.
- (c) Role-play in a group of three, telling your parents you are going to resign from your job and you are going to another country. Two of you are the parents.

### Foolish

- (d) To leave your hometown could be considered as foolish for a number of reasons. Do you know the Chinese Idiom *Yi Gong and Yi Shan* where an old man was considered foolish for another reason.

#### Vocabulary

level inconvenient scoffed immortals  
heaven spirit

- (e) To leave your spiritual birthplace is a big decision. Describe the sacred places in your country? For example:

**China:** Hang shān (Yellow mountain).



- (f) Do you know the story of Abraham (**leave, all people in the world will be blessed**) who could have been considered crazy for leaving his hometown (2100BC Haran)?
- (g) How is Abraham different from the above Chinese idiom that emphasised indomitable will power of the individual?

## 6. I'm Leaving

### Reasons for leaving

- (a) Draw a map of your country on a piece of paper and mark in the following places and share with a partner.
1. I **was born** in ...
  2. I **grew up** in ...
  3. When I was ....., my family moved to ...
- (b) Read through the following possible reasons for travelling to another country.
1. To have a holiday (to + verb)
  2. For **a holiday**. (for + noun)
  3. To improve my English.
  4. To change my career.
  5. To look for a boyfriend/girlfriend.
  6. To experience a different culture.
  7. To broaden my horizons.
  8. For no particular reason.
  9. To have **a break**.
  10. To stop and think about life.
  11. To explore new opportunities.
  12. To see what's happening in other parts of the world.
  13. To have a look around and check things out.
- (c) Role-play in a group of three, telling your parents you are going to resign from your job and you are going to another country. Two of you are the parents.

### Foolish

- (d) To leave your hometown could be considered as foolish for a number of reasons. Do you know the Chinese Idiom *Yi Gong and Yi Shan* where an old man was considered foolish for another reason.

#### Vocabulary

level inconvenient scoffed immortals  
heaven spirit

- (e) To leave your spiritual birthplace is a big decision. Describe the sacred places in your country? For example:

**China:** Hang shān (Yellow mountain).



- (f) Do you know the story of Abraham (**leave, all people in the world will be blessed**) who could have been considered crazy for leaving his hometown (2100BC Haran)?
- (g) How is Abraham different from the above Chinese idiom that emphasised indomitable will power of the individual?

# 7. In His Hands

## Flight Attendant



- (a) Role play being at the airport asking the person next to you these questions.
1. How many people are in your family?
  2. How many years have lived in ... ( )?
  3. **How many** times have you been on an airplane?
  4. **How much luggage** do you have today?
- (b) You are flying to another city. Choose a different person to be a flight attendant for each of the next four stages. (In fours)

### 1. Checking In

1. Good morning sir/madam
2. Where are you travelling to today?
3. How many people are travelling today?
4. How many items of luggage do you have?
5. Do you have any **carry on baggage**?
6. Can you put these **name tags** on your luggage? Thankyou.
7. Would you prefer window seat or aisle?
8. Boarding time is in about 1 hour. Your gate number is 21.
9. Have a nice flight.

### 2. Boarding the flight

1. Welcome aboard, can I see your **boarding pass**?
2. This way sir/madam
3. Can I check your seat number?
4. Can you put that item in the overhead locker? Thankyou
5. Excuse me sir, could you turn off your electronic device.
6. Excuse me sir/madam, could you put your seat belt on?
7. Can you tighten your seatbelt?
8. In the advent of an emergency, the exit door is here, the oxygen mask falls from here. The emergency lights are here and you will find life jackets under your seat.

### 3. During the flight

1. Anything to drink? Tea or coffee?
2. Excuse sir, can I get through?
3. Would you prefer chicken or fish?
4. Excuse sir, are you on special dietary requirements? Did you order a special meal?
5. Would you like to buy anything from duty free?
6. That's 5 dollars thankyou. Here is your change
7. Here is your customs arrival card. Can you fill it out?

### 4. About to land

1. Sir/Madam, can you put your seat back please? Thankyou
2. Can you fold up your tray?
3. Can you put that bag below your seat?
4. Can you put on your seat belt?
5. Can you turn off your mobile phone?
6. Thankyou for flying ... Airlines
7. I hope you enjoyed the trip

- (c) Mark on a time line, three turning points in your life. For e.g.

1. When I was in school I...
2. When I was 24 I ...
3. 3 years ago I ...

- (d) What are the significant times in your country's history? For eg

1. In 1901, our nation (Australia) became independent
2. In 1975, Darwin had a terrible cyclone
3. In ... became prime minister (king).
4. In the year 2000, Sydney hosted the Olympics

- (e) Do you know the story of an old couple, Abraham and Sarah, in their 90's (2100BC) (**3 visitors, tent, old**) who had a turning point in their lives that led them to have a baby in their old age?

# 7. In His Hands

## Flight Attendant



- (a) Role play being at the airport asking the person next to you these questions.
1. How many people are in your family?
  2. How many years have lived in ... ( )?
  3. **How many** times have you been on an airplane?
  4. **How much luggage** do you have today?
- (b) You are flying to another city. Choose a different person to be a flight attendant for each of the next four stages. (In fours)

### 1. Checking In

1. Good morning sir/madam
2. Where are you travelling to today?
3. How many people are travelling today?
4. How many items of luggage do you have?
5. Do you have any **carry on baggage**?
6. Can you put these **name tags** on your luggage? Thankyou.
7. Would you prefer window seat or aisle?
8. Boarding time is in about 1 hour. Your gate number is 21.
9. Have a nice flight.

### 2. Boarding the flight

1. Welcome aboard, can I see your **boarding pass**?
2. This way sir/madam
3. Can I check your seat number?
4. Can you put that item in the overhead locker? Thankyou
5. Excuse me sir, could you turn off your electronic device.
6. Excuse me sir/madam, could you put your seat belt on?
7. Can you tighten your seatbelt?
8. In the advent of an emergency, the exit door is here, the oxygen mask falls from here. The emergency lights are here and you will find life jackets under your seat.

### 3. During the flight

1. Anything to drink? Tea or coffee?
2. Excuse sir, can I get through?
3. Would you prefer chicken or fish?
4. Excuse sir, are you on special dietary requirements? Did you order a special meal?
5. Would you like to buy anything from duty free?
6. That's 5 dollars thankyou. Here is your change
7. Here is your customs arrival card. Can you fill it out?

### 4. About to land

1. Sir/Madam, can you put your seat back please? Thankyou
2. Can you fold up your tray?
3. Can you put that bag below your seat?
4. Can you put on your seat belt?
5. Can you turn off your mobile phone?
6. Thankyou for flying ... Airlines
7. I hope you enjoyed the trip

- (c) Mark on a time line, three turning points in your life. For e.g.

1. When I was in school I...
2. When I was 24 I ...
3. 3 years ago I ...

- (d) What are the significant times in your country's history? For eg

1. In 1901, our nation (Australia) became independent
2. In 1975, Darwin had a terrible cyclone
3. In ... became prime minister (king).
4. In the year 2000, Sydney hosted the Olympics

- (e) Do you know the story of an old couple, Abraham and Sarah, in their 90's (2100BC) (**3 visitors, tent, old**) who had a turning point in their lives that led them to have a baby in their old age?

# 8. Well Done

## Changing Plans for a BBQ

- (a) Have you ever been invited to ...?  
 1. a **wedding**  
 2. a birthday **party**  
 3. a **BBQ**  
 4. a special event  
 5. to **church**
- (b) **Invite** your partner to something  
*Would you like to come to ....?*
- (c) Make up an invitation and include the following information.  
 1. Event 2. Place 3. Date 4. What to bring  
 5. RSVP 6. BYO 7. Time 8. Wet weather venue
- (d) When we have a planned idea we use the following structure.  
*Next week I **am going to** have a BBQ.*  
 Practise the following role-play with a partner.  
*Pan: Janet what are you doing (next week/tonight)?*  
*Janet: I am going to ...*
- (e) When an event is planned and fully organised (times, place etc.) and close to the actual event happening, we might change:  
 1. I am **going to have** a BBQ **to**  
 2. I am **having** a BBQ  
 What is the difference between sentences 1 and 2?
- (f) Change the following planned, (decided activity), to a planned, decided, well organised activity that will happen soon.  
*Tonight we are going to make dumplings at home at 5' o'clock.*  
**to** *Tonight we are m\_\_\_\_\_ ( )*
- (g) When we have to make a decision (now), we use the word will. Read through in different pairs the following example.  
*Pablo: What are you going to do tonight Samir?*  
*Samir: We **are going to** have a BBQ.*  
*Pablo: (Problem) But it is raining outside.*  
*Samir: (Change of plan, decide now) Ok, we **will eat** at a restaurant instead. Do you want to join us Pablo?*

- (h) Have you ever had to change your plans?  
 (i) Make up a similar role play where a problem has been revealed which leads to a change of plan.  
*Wang. I'm going to Kunming by train.*  
*Hong: But the train drivers are on strike*  
*Wang: Ok I ...*



## Changing plans for a Sacrifice

- (j) In 446-396 BC: many families had to change plans and move away from Zhang River because they were frightened their daughters would be sacrificed. Share about this story.  
 villagers a ploy witch crooked  
 priests trick maiden Huang He  
 frightened Anyang Tianjin corrupt local official  
 Ximen Bao who eliminated this problem  
 court advisor abolish hydraulic engineer  
 damming create human sacrifice  
 large canal absurdity reservoir
- (k) Do you know the ancient story of an old man named Abraham and his only son Isaac where there was a last minute change of plan that involved a sacrifice? (2100BC) (**Mountain, fire, wood, knife, son, sheep**)

# 8. Well Done

## Changing Plans for a BBQ

- (a) Have you ever been invited to ...?  
 1. a **wedding**  
 2. a birthday **party**  
 3. a **BBQ**  
 4. a special event  
 5. to **church**
- (b) **Invite** your partner to something  
*Would you like to come to ....?*
- (c) Make up an invitation and include the following information.  
 1. Event 2. Place 3. Date 4. What to bring  
 5. RSVP 6. BYO 7. Time 8. Wet weather venue
- (d) When we have a planned idea we use the following structure.  
*Next week I **am going to** have a BBQ.*  
 Practise the following role-play with a partner.  
*Pan: Janet what are you doing (next week/tonight)?*  
*Janet: I am going to ...*
- (e) When an event is planned and fully organised (times, place etc.) and close to the actual event happening, we might change:  
 1. I am **going to have** a BBQ **to**  
 2. I am **having** a BBQ  
 What is the difference between sentences 1 and 2?
- (f) Change the following planned, (decided activity), to a planned, decided, well organised activity that will happen soon.  
*Tonight we are going to make dumplings at home at 5' o'clock.*  
**to** *Tonight we are m\_\_\_\_\_ ( )*
- (g) When we have to make a decision (now), we use the word will. Read through in different pairs the following example.  
*Pablo: What are you going to do tonight Samir?*  
*Samir: We **are going to** have a BBQ.*  
*Pablo: (Problem) But it is raining outside.*  
*Samir: (Change of plan, decide now) Ok, we **will eat** at a restaurant instead. Do you want to join us Pablo?*

- (h) Have you ever had to change your plans?  
 (i) Make up a similar role play where a problem has been revealed which leads to a change of plan.  
*Wang. I'm going to Kunming by train.*  
*Hong: But the train drivers are on strike*  
*Wang: Ok I ...*



## Changing plans for a Sacrifice

- (j) In 446-396 BC: many families had to change plans and move away from Zhang River because they were frightened their daughters would be sacrificed. Share about this story.  
 villagers a ploy witch crooked  
 priests trick maiden Huang He  
 frightened Anyang Tianjin corrupt local official  
 Ximen Bao who eliminated this problem  
 court advisor abolish hydraulic engineer  
 damming create human sacrifice  
 large canal absurdity reservoir
- (k) Do you know the ancient story of an old man named Abraham and his only son Isaac where there was a last minute change of plan that involved a sacrifice? (2100BC) (**Mountain, fire, wood, knife, son, sheep**)

# 9. Oh Brother

## Family Comparisons

- (a) How many people are in your family? For example:

*In my family there are ...  
( ) people. My father, my mother, my older sister and me.*



- (b) Draw a picture of your family and have your partner ask some questions as suggested in the following role play

Person One: This is a picture of my family  
Person Two: Who is this?  
Person One: That is my....  
Person Two: What's he/she like?  
Person One: He/she is very **kind and funny**

- (c) Change partners and share two things about yourself compared to other people in your family. For example,

*In my family I am the tallest*

most creative	slimmest	smartest
most overweight	most conservative	most loving
biggest go getter	most adventurous	<b>tallest</b>
most risk taking	most outgoing	wisest

- (d) Share with a partner which of these are true for you.

*Lately I have ...*

- |                            |                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. lost weight             | (True/Not True) |
| 2. put on/gained weight    | (True/Not True) |
| 3. saved lots of money     | (True/Not True) |
| 4. spent too much money    | (True/Not True) |
| 5. earned lots money       | (True/Not True) |
| 6. taken some risks        | (True/Not True) |
| 7. been on a big adventure | (True/Not True) |
| 8. worked/studied hard     | (True/Not True) |
| 9. been a little bit slack | (True/Not True) |
| 10. been lackadaisical     | (True/Not True) |
| 11. been unwise            | (True/Not True) |
| 12. worked for low pay     | (True/Not True) |

## Families of Influence

- (e) Some families have had a major influence on their country. Share about a famous family that helped build your nation. For example:

**China:** The Soong sisters (daughters of Charlie Soong)  
1. 1937-1940  
2. United  
3. Hong Kong  
4. made valiant efforts  
5. Chongqing (1940)  
6. Establishing Chinese Industrial Cooperatives

- (f) There is a popular musical called 'Joseph and the Technicolour dream coat' based on the true story of what happened to a man named Joseph who came from a large family. What do you know about Joseph's family that influenced many countries (1915BC-1805BC Land of Canaan and Egypt)? (**brothers, dream, father, coat, well, empty**)

- (g) Is it possible we are all from the one family?

# 9. Oh Brother

## Family Comparisons

- (a) How many people are in your family? For example:

*In my family there are ...  
( ) people. My father, my mother, my older sister and me.*



- (b) Draw a picture of your family and have your partner ask some questions as suggested in the following role play

Person One: This is a picture of my family  
Person Two: Who is this?  
Person One: That is my....  
Person Two: What's he/she like?  
Person One: He/she is very **kind and funny**

- (c) Change partners and share two things about yourself compared to other people in your family. For example,

*In my family I am the tallest*

most creative	slimmest	smartest
most overweight	most conservative	most loving
biggest go getter	most adventurous	<b>tallest</b>
most risk taking	most outgoing	wisest

- (d) Share with a partner which of these are true for you.

*Lately I have ...*

- |                            |                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. lost weight             | (True/Not True) |
| 2. put on/gained weight    | (True/Not True) |
| 3. saved lots of money     | (True/Not True) |
| 4. spent too much money    | (True/Not True) |
| 5. earned lots money       | (True/Not True) |
| 6. taken some risks        | (True/Not True) |
| 7. been on a big adventure | (True/Not True) |
| 8. worked/studied hard     | (True/Not True) |
| 9. been a little bit slack | (True/Not True) |
| 10. been lackadaisical     | (True/Not True) |
| 11. been unwise            | (True/Not True) |
| 12. worked for low pay     | (True/Not True) |

## Families of Influence

- (e) Some families have had a major influence on their country. Share about a famous family that helped build your nation. For example:

**China:** The Soong sisters (daughters of Charlie Soong)  
1. 1937-1940  
2. United  
3. Hong Kong  
4. made valiant efforts  
5. Chongqing (1940)  
6. Establishing Chinese Industrial Cooperatives

- (f) There is a popular musical called 'Joseph and the Technicolour dream coat' based on the true story of what happened to a man named Joseph who came from a large family. What do you know about Joseph's family that influenced many countries (1915BC-1805BC Land of Canaan and Egypt)? (**brothers, dream, father, coat, well, empty**)

- (g) Is it possible we are all from the one family?

# 10. What's in a Name?

## Introduction-Names

李 王

- (a) Which advertising slogan best describes who you are?
1. Nike: Just do it.
  2. Avis: We try harder
  3. Toyota: Oh what a feeling!
  4. M & Ms: Melts in your mouth, not in your hand
  5. American Express: Don't leave home without it.
- (b) Sometimes your name or nick name describes who you are. In your country do you ...?
1. have a **nick name**
  2. change your **name** when you get married
  3. say your **first name** or **surname** first
- (c) Can you name the top 5 most common surnames in your culture?
- (d) Role-play the following introduction
- Yuki: Hello, my name is Yuki. What's your name?  
Pang: My name is Pang  
Yuki: How do you spell your name?  
Pang: Pang; P,a,n,g (spell out slowly)
- (e) Do the following role-play of people who have two names.
- Preeyaporn: What's your name?  
Samantha: My name is Samantha but you can call me Sam. Sam is short for Samantha. What's your name?  
Preeyaporn: My Thai name is Preeyaporn but my English name is Pam; P.a.m.
- (f) When you have forgotten someone's name, you can say  
Sorry, what's your (English/(nationality) name again?
- (g) Role-play telling someone the meaning of your name:
- Person 1: What's your name?  
Person 2: My whole (full) name is Chen Yao Qin.  
My family name is Chen  
My given name is Yao Qin  
In Chinese it means respectful and honour.  
My nick name is Didi  
My English names is Victoria  
You can call me Vicky, short for Victoria
- (h) Discuss in pairs characteristics of your name.
1. Common or uncommon (not so common).
  2. Difficult to pronounce.
  3. A very traditional name.
  4. Very popular/becoming more popular.
  5. Has a special meaning
- (i) Share about the history of names in your country. For example:
- All countries:** Did common people share the same status as royalty?
- (j) Can you name any famous people who had more than one name and explain why they had many names? For example Zhūgě Liàng had many names such as Wolong.
- (k) Do you know the story about a person who described Himself with many names including the name of "I Am" (1440BC Near Egypt) which He revealed at a burning bush? (**Mountain, sheep, bush, flame, down, go**)

# 10. What's in a Name?

## Introduction-Names

李 王

- (a) Which advertising slogan best describes who you are?
1. Nike: Just do it.
  2. Avis: We try harder
  3. Toyota: Oh what a feeling!
  4. M & Ms: Melts in your mouth, not in your hand
  5. American Express: Don't leave home without it.
- (b) Sometimes your name or nick name describes who you are. In your country do you ...?
1. have a **nick name**
  2. change your **name** when you get married
  3. say your **first name** or **surname** first
- (c) Can you name the top 5 most common surnames in your culture?
- (d) Role-play the following introduction
- Yuki: Hello, my name is Yuki. What's your name?  
Pang: My name is Pang  
Yuki: How do you spell your name?  
Pang: Pang; P,a,n,g (spell out slowly)
- (e) Do the following role-play of people who have two names.
- Preeyaporn: What's your name?  
Samantha: My name is Samantha but you can call me Sam. Sam is short for Samantha. What's your name?  
Preeyaporn: My Thai name is Preeyaporn but my English name is Pam; P.a.m.
- (f) When you have forgotten someone's name, you can say  
Sorry, what's your (English/(nationality) name again?
- (g) Role-play telling someone the meaning of your name:
- Person 1: What's your name?  
Person 2: My whole (full) name is Chen Yao Qin.  
My family name is Chen  
My given name is Yao Qin  
In Chinese it means respectful and honour.  
My nick name is Didi  
My English names is Victoria  
You can call me Vicky, short for Victoria
- (h) Discuss in pairs characteristics of your name.
1. Common or uncommon (not so common).
  2. Difficult to pronounce.
  3. A very traditional name.
  4. Very popular/becoming more popular.
  5. Has a special meaning
- (i) Share about the history of names in your country. For example:
- All countries:** Did common people share the same status as royalty?
- (j) Can you name any famous people who had more than one name and explain why they had many names? For example Zhūgě Liàng had many names such as Wolong.
- (k) Do you know the story about a person who described Himself with many names including the name of "I Am" (1440BC Near Egypt) which He revealed at a burning bush? (**Mountain, sheep, bush, flame, down, go**)

# 11. The Year of the Dragon

## Positive English

- (a) What year is this year in the Chinese calendar and what year were you born in?
- (b) Make some suggestions for Chinese New Years. For example:

Person 1: Let's put up **red banners** on the **door frame**

Person 2: Good idea!

Person 3: Let's give out **red envelopes**

Person 4: Great!

Person 5: Let's go see a **dragon dance**



- (c) Can you draw a dragon? (*Well done!*). In your country, are dragons positive or negative symbols. Where do you usually find dragons in your country?
- (d) In **Chinese** mythology, there is a mythical story of a carp that changed into a dragon. Illustrate a carp at the base of a waterfall than put the following story into the correct order and retell this story in pairs. 1 and 5 are correct

1. **The carp was at the bottom of the waterfall**
2. The carp reached the top of the waterfall (*Well done*)
3. The carp thought "I can I can" swim up this waterfall
4. The carp started swimming upstream against the current
5. **The carp turned into a dragon**

- (e) Read through the following interview between the carp and the interviewer. Choose which answer is the most positive.

Interviewer: How far do you have to swim?

- Carp
1. I don't know.
  2. I'm not quite sure but I can find out.

Interviewer: Excuse me Mr Carp. What are you doing?

- Carp:
1. I will swim upstream.
  2. I am going to swim upstream.

Interviewer: How is your situation at the moment?

- Carp:
1. Terrible!
  2. It could be better.

Interviewer: Do you like swimming upstream?

- Carp:
1. No.
  2. No, not really, but I am willing to try!

Interviewer: 1. You should hire a helicopter!

Interviewer: 2. Wouldn't it be better if you hired a helicopter?

- (f) Answer these questions and situations in a positive manner.

1. How is your English study going?
2. How tall is Mount Everest?
3. What are you doing tonight?
4. Can you drive manual cars? (*willing/want*)
5. I am going to Iraq alone. (*Wouldn't..*)



Photo: Whoisgate 2012

## I've got you covered

- (g) Like dragons, red banners are placed in high places such as over doorways for protection from evil spirits. What do the Chinese characters on the red banners mean?

- (h) Red is a significant colour during Chinese New Year. It is also found in Red envelopes. Will you give or receive any money in red envelopes this year?

- (i) Some people think the use of red and the covering over door frames stems from the story of the Passover in Egypt in 1440 BC. Discuss what you know about this story. (**plagues, people, slaves, go, bread, blood, night** See Chinese Character for Righteousness:

義)



# 11. The Year of the Dragon

## Positive English

- (a) What year is this year in the Chinese calendar and what year were you born in?
- (b) Make some suggestions for Chinese New Years. For example:

Person 1: Let's put up **red banners** on the **door frame**

Person 2: Good idea!

Person 3: Let's give out **red envelopes**

Person 4: Great!

Person 5: Let's go see a **dragon dance**



- (c) Can you draw a dragon? (*Well done!*). In your country, are dragons positive or negative symbols. Where do you usually find dragons in your country?
- (d) In **Chinese** mythology, there is a mythical story of a carp that changed into a dragon. Illustrate a carp at the base of a waterfall than put the following story into the correct order and retell this story in pairs. 1 and 5 are correct

1. **The carp was at the bottom of the waterfall**
2. The carp reached the top of the waterfall (*Well done*)
3. The carp thought "I can I can" swim up this waterfall
4. The carp started swimming upstream against the current
5. **The carp turned into a dragon**

- (e) Read through the following interview between the carp and the interviewer. Choose which answer is the most positive.

Interviewer: How far do you have to swim?

- Carp
1. I don't know.
  2. I'm not quite sure but I can find out.

Interviewer: Excuse me Mr Carp. What are you doing?

- Carp:
1. I will swim upstream.
  2. I am going to swim upstream.

Interviewer: How is your situation at the moment?

- Carp:
1. Terrible!
  2. It could be better.

Interviewer: Do you like swimming upstream?

- Carp:
1. No.
  2. No, not really, but I am willing to try!

Interviewer: 1. You should hire a helicopter!

Interviewer: 2. Wouldn't it be better if you hired a helicopter?

- (f) Answer these questions and situations in a positive manner.

1. How is your English study going?
2. How tall is Mount Everest?
3. What are you doing tonight?
4. Can you drive manual cars? (*willing/want*)
5. I am going to Iraq alone. (*Wouldn't..*)



Photo: Whoisgate 2012

## I've got you covered

- (g) Like dragons, red banners are placed in high places such as over doorways for protection from evil spirits. What do the Chinese characters on the red banners mean?

- (h) Red is a significant colour during Chinese New Year. It is also found in Red envelopes. Will you give or receive any money in red envelopes this year?

- (i) Some people think the use of red and the covering over door frames stems from the story of the Passover in Egypt in 1440 BC. Discuss what you know about this story. (**plagues, people, slaves, go, bread, blood, night** See Chinese Character for Righteousness:

義)



# 12. Ash Cloud

## Meeting Somebody

- (a) Where you would like to go on a date?

*I want to go to the **park** because I like playing games.  
I want to go to the **cinema** because I enjoy watching movies*

- (b) As a class, use the words “to”, “at” and “in” to organise a date then practice in pairs. For example; *I will take you **to** the cinema. After the movie we can have dinner **at** the Tibetan restaurant. Then we can have coffee **in** the city .*

- (c) When we talk about going to places, we often use the preposition ‘to’. Read the following in different pairs.

*Fiona: Where have you visited in China?  
Melissa: I have been **to**.....  
I went there (not **to there**) two years ago  
Fiona: Where are you going next year?  
Melissa: Next year I am going **to**.....*

- (d) When we want to meet someone we often use the preposition ‘at’. The preposition ‘in’ is more used to indicate position (inside or outside). Practice in pairs.

*Glen I will **meet** you **at** the terminal  
Morris: Inside or outside?  
Glen: I will be **in** the terminal **at** the JAL Check-In.*

- (e) Match the following use of prepositions.

1. horse and motorbikes on
2. car/taxi on
3. private transport (my car) in
4. public transport (train) in
5. farm in
6. Tokyo and Japan on



- (f) Read through the following paragraph and then share in pairs about the last holiday/day trip you went on.

*Last year I went **to** Wuhan. I met my friend **at** a café. It was great. I rode **on** a tram and then we got **in** my friend’s car and went **to** the airport. However when we got **on** the plane, we were told we couldn’t take off because of an ash cloud.*

- (g) Change partners and make arrangements to meet someone at the airport using the following words. For example.

*Dougal: I will meet you at the airport at 7pm.  
Vanessa: Where will I meet you?  
Dougal: Let’s meet at (the)...*  
Terminal/gate Arrivals/Departures escalator  
duty free shop drop off area check in

- (h) Have you ever had a flight delayed because of ....?

1. a breakdown or strikes
2. thunderstorms, ice, snow or fog
3. terrorists or cancellations
4. ash clouds caused by volcanoes

- (i) Are there any volcanoes, active, dormant or extinct, in your country? For example:

**China:** Volcanoes: Fire dragons  
**Japan:** Mt. Asama (1903). Photographer H.G.Ponting said ‘This is our last moment. This is the end’



- (j) Do you know the story of one newly formed nation (1440BC) that arrived at the base of a mountain (Mt Sinai) that started (**loud**) trembling and (**thick**) smoking but it wasn’t a volcano?

# 12. Ash Cloud

## Meeting Somebody

- (a) Where you would like to go on a date?

*I want to go to the **park** because I like playing games .  
I want to go to the **cinema** because I enjoy watching movies*

- (b) As a class, use the words “to”, “at” and “in” to organise a date then practice in pairs. For example; *I will take you **to** the cinema. After the movie we can have dinner **at** the Tibetan restaurant. Then we can have coffee **in** the city .*

- (c) When we talk about going to places, we often use the preposition ‘to’. Read the following in different pairs.

*Fiona: Where have you visited in China?  
Melissa: I have been **to**.....  
I went there (not **to there**) two years ago  
Fiona: Where are you going next year?  
Melissa: Next year I am going **to**.....*

- (d) When we want to meet someone we often use the preposition ‘at’. The preposition ‘in’ is more used to indicate position (inside or outside). Practice in pairs.

*Glen I will **meet** you **at** the terminal  
Morris: Inside or outside?  
Glen: I will be **in** the terminal **at** the JAL Check-In.*

- (e) Match the following use of prepositions.

1. horse and motorbikes on
2. car/taxi on
3. private transport (my car) in
4. public transport (train) in
5. farm in
6. Tokyo and Japan on



- (f) Read through the following paragraph and then share in pairs about the last holiday/day trip you went on.

*Last year I went **to** Wuhan. I met my friend **at** a café. It was great. I rode **on** a tram and then we got **in** my friend’s car and went **to** the airport. However when we got **on** the plane, we were told we couldn’t take off because of an ash cloud.*

- (g) Change partners and make arrangements to meet someone at the airport using the following words. For example.

*Dougal: I will meet you at the airport at 7pm.  
Vanessa: Where will I meet you?  
Dougal: Let’s meet at (the)...*  
Terminal/gate Arrivals/Departures escalator  
duty free shop drop off area check in

- (h) Have you ever had a flight delayed because of ....?

1. a breakdown or strikes
2. thunderstorms, ice, snow or fog
3. terrorists or cancellations
4. ash clouds caused by volcanoes

- (i) Are there any volcanoes, active, dormant or extinct, in your country? For example:

**China:** Volcanoes: Fire dragons  
**Japan:** Mt. Asama (1903). Photographer H.G.Ponting said ‘This is our last moment. This is the end’



- (j) Do you know the story of one newly formed nation (1440BC) that arrived at the base of a mountain (Mt Sinai) that started (**loud**) trembling and (**thick**) smoking but it wasn’t a volcano?

# 13. Rule Number One

## Teacher Rules

- (a) Role play pairs being a teacher.

*Student 1: Excuse me teacher, can I get something to **drink**?*

*Teacher 1: Yes you can/No you can't*

*Student 1: Excuse me teacher can I **clean the board**?*

*Teacher 1: Maybe later.*

- (b) Who was your favourite **teacher at school** and think and share three things that make a good teacher?

- (c) What rules would you have if you were teaching another language to adults?

- (d) As a teacher of a class, choose which are the more appropriate ways to express rules for your class.

1. **a.** Never ask a question or **b.** Ask questions
2. **a.** Please make mistakes! or **b.** Do not make a mistake
3. **a.** Follow these guidelines or **b.** Follow these rules

- (e) The following three questions are excellent questions to discuss on the first day of a class. Role play in groups of four. One of you is the teacher

*Teacher (Question 1): What makes a good teacher?*

*Student 1: A good teacher is someone who ... ( )*

*Teacher (Question 2): What makes a good student?*

*Student 2: A good student is someone who ... ( )*

*Teacher (Question 3): What makes a good class?*

*Student 3: A good class is one that ... ( )*

- (f) Confucius and Laozi are well known educators. Share how they have influenced your country's education and thinking.

- (g) Does your country have a golden or silver rule?

- (h) Share any other important rules governing your country or rules that have importance in your culture. For example:

**Thailand:** Monks 227 precepts (Phra Nattawud).



- (i) Read through the following reasons why people make rules

1. To save lives
2. To have peace and quiet
3. To become rich
4. To maintain their power and control
5. To reveal who they are or what they are like
6. To prevent injury
7. To deter people
8. To set a standard of behaviour
9. other ...

- (j) Give an example of why people have made rules. For e.g.  
*At the beach, people have made rules to prevent drowning.*

- (k) Write on a piece of paper a rule that would make the world a better place for everybody. Share this rule with the rest of the class.

- (l) What do you know about the rules/guidelines "The Ten Commandments" (**You shou not.....**) (1440BC)? Also a famous old Hollywood movie title.

# 13. Rule Number One

## Teacher Rules

- (a) Role play pairs being a teacher.

*Student 1: Excuse me teacher, can I get something to **drink**?*

*Teacher 1: Yes you can/No you can't*

*Student 1: Excuse me teacher can I **clean the board**?*

*Teacher 1: Maybe later.*

- (b) Who was your favourite **teacher at school** and think and share three things that make a good teacher?

- (c) What rules would you have if you were teaching another language to adults?

- (d) As a teacher of a class, choose which are the more appropriate ways to express rules for your class.

1. **a.** Never ask a question or **b.** Ask questions
2. **a.** Please make mistakes! or **b.** Do not make a mistake
3. **a.** Follow these guidelines or **b.** Follow these rules

- (e) The following three questions are excellent questions to discuss on the first day of a class. Role play in groups of four. One of you is the teacher

*Teacher (Question 1): What makes a good teacher?*

*Student 1: A good teacher is someone who ... ( )*

*Teacher (Question 2): What makes a good student?*

*Student 2: A good student is someone who ... ( )*

*Teacher (Question 3): What makes a good class?*

*Student 3: A good class is one that ... ( )*

- (f) Confucius and Laozi are well known educators. Share how they have influenced your country's education and thinking.

- (g) Does your country have a golden or silver rule?

- (h) Share any other important rules governing your country or rules that have importance in your culture. For example:

**Thailand:** Monks 227 precepts (Phra Nattawud).



- (i) Read through the following reasons why people make rules

1. To save lives
2. To have peace and quiet
3. To become rich
4. To maintain their power and control
5. To reveal who they are or what they are like
6. To prevent injury
7. To deter people
8. To set a standard of behaviour
9. other ...

- (j) Give an example of why people have made rules. For e.g.  
*At the beach, people have made rules to prevent drowning.*

- (k) Write on a piece of paper a rule that would make the world a better place for everybody. Share this rule with the rest of the class.

- (l) What do you know about the rules/guidelines "The Ten Commandments" (**You shou not.....**) (1440BC)? Also a famous old Hollywood movie title.

# 14. This is an Emergency

## Arriving at the hospital

(a) Have you ever had...?

1. food poisoning or an allergic reaction
2. a headache, migraine or fever
3. a common cold or Influenza
4. any type of disease



(b) When was the last time you went to **hospital**. (In pairs)

(c) Match some of the questions/statements you might be asked at a hospital.

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. What's your ...?             | a. outpatients        |
| 2. Are you ... to anything?     | b. address            |
| 3. Who is your ...?             | c. allergic           |
| 4. What ... are you?            | d. gap                |
| 5. Do you know where ... is?    | e. blood type         |
| 6. Have you got any ...?        | f. insurance          |
| 7. There will be a ... payment. | g. next akin (of kin) |

(d) Using the above sentences, role play in pairs a **patient** entering a hospital talking to a **receptionist**.

*Receptionist: What's your name?*

(e) Sometimes you go to a hospital because something has bitten you. What's the most deadly thing that has bitten or nearly bitten you?

(f) In groups of four, discuss what you do if you have been bitten on the toe by a snake (Four of the following instructions are incorrect and the others need to be put in the right order).

*Help Help I've been bitten by a snake!*

1. **Cut** off your foot (incorrect)
2. Relax (correct)
3. **Tie** a tight bandage (tourniquet) to stop the poison
4. **Wrap** a wide compressed bandage firmly around the leg to slowdown the poison
5. Panic
6. **Drive** to the hospital to get some anti-venom
7. Suck out the poison
8. Raise your foot above your heart
9. Allow the anti venom to flow from the heart

(g) In threes, verbalise instructions to somebody who has just been bitten by a snake on the hand.

*Victim: Help! Help! a snake has just bitten me!*

*Tourist 1: The first thing you have to do is sit down and relax.*

*Victim: What do I do now?*

*Tourist 2: The next thing you do is...( )*

(h) Do you know any cultural stories about snakes? For example:

**China:** The tale of the white snake

(i) What do you know about this snake emblem (pictured) that is seen in medical symbols around the world?

**World:** In the desert near Egypt (1440-1406BC)  
(**sick, pole, look, believe, live**)

# 14. This is an Emergency

## Arriving at the hospital

(a) Have you ever had...?

1. food poisoning or an allergic reaction
2. a headache, migraine or fever
3. a common cold or Influenza
4. any type of disease



(b) When was the last time you went to **hospital**. (In pairs)

(c) Match some of the questions/statements you might be asked at a hospital.

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. What's your ...?             | a. outpatients        |
| 2. Are you ... to anything?     | b. address            |
| 3. Who is your ...?             | c. allergic           |
| 4. What ... are you?            | d. gap                |
| 5. Do you know where ... is?    | e. blood type         |
| 6. Have you got any ...?        | f. insurance          |
| 7. There will be a ... payment. | g. next akin (of kin) |

(d) Using the above sentences, role play in pairs a **patient** entering a hospital talking to a **receptionist**.

*Receptionist: What's your name?*

(e) Sometimes you go to a hospital because something has bitten you. What's the most deadly thing that has bitten or nearly bitten you?

(f) In groups of four, discuss what you do if you have been bitten on the toe by a snake (Four of the following instructions are incorrect and the others need to be put in the right order).

*Help Help I've been bitten by a snake!*

1. **Cut** off your foot (incorrect)
2. Relax (correct)
3. **Tie** a tight bandage (tourniquet) to stop the poison
4. **Wrap** a wide compressed bandage firmly around the leg to slowdown the poison
5. Panic
6. **Drive** to the hospital to get some anti-venom
7. Suck out the poison
8. Raise your foot above your heart
9. Allow the anti venom to flow from the heart

(g) In threes, verbalise instructions to somebody who has just been bitten by a snake on the hand.

*Victim: Help! Help! a snake has just bitten me!*

*Tourist 1: The first thing you have to do is sit down and relax.*

*Victim: What do I do now?*

*Tourist 2: The next thing you do is...( )*

(h) Do you know any cultural stories about snakes? For example:

**China:** The tale of the white snake

(i) What do you know about this snake emblem (pictured) that is seen in medical symbols around the world?

**World:** In the desert near Egypt (1440-1406BC)  
(**sick, pole, look, believe, live**)

# 15. The Fight for Life

## Networking for a Marital Arts Instructor

(a) Practice these instructions by saying and doing

1. **Stand** with your **feet** shoulder width apart
2. **Put** your **hands** on your hips
3. **Stretch** to the left
4. Stretch to the right
5. **Swivel** your **hips**
6. **Touch** your **toes**



(b) Have you ever learned a martial art?

(c) Can you demonstrate a type of marital art like kung fu?

(d) Share about a form of martial arts from your country.

**China:** Kung Fu: The Shaolin monks are located at Shaolin Temple in Song Shan Mountain. Have you ever been there?

1500 years    Buddhism    Qi Gong    Warriors

(e) Sit back to back to your partner and call your partner to tell him/her that you want to find a good martial arts instructor to teach you Kung Fu.



Ash: Hi Kim, it's Ash

Kim: Hi Ash. How are you?

Ash: Good thank you, do you know anybody who teaches marital arts? I want to learn Kung Fu.

Kim: Yes I do, I know a good martial arts teacher. His name is Bruce Lee.

Ash: Could I have his number?

Kim: It is 555 555 55

Ash: Do you mind if I mention your name when I call?

Kim: No, go right ahead.

(f) Role-play calling Bruce Lee the marital Arts instructor.

Bruce: (Ring Ring) Hello Lee's gym. Bruce speaking.

Ash: Hello. My name is Ashley, I am a friend of Kim Russell. She suggested I give you a call.

Bruce: You know Kim, how is she?

Ash: She is great, we work together

Bruce: Say hi to her the next time you see her

Ash: I will

Bruce: How can I help you Ash?

Ash: I am wanting to learn Kung Fu so I was wondering if you could tell me about your lessons.

(g) What questions would you ask Bruce next on the phone? For example:

1. Where are you located?
2. How much do you charge?

(h) Are you good at networking?

(i) Change partners and role-play networking for another reason.

(j) Do you know the story of a man named Balaam (1400BC Near the Jordan River) who used to network amongst the gods until one day, while riding on his donkey, he came across a sword wielding angel? (**road, hand, could see, couldn't see, fell**)

# 15. The Fight for Life

## Networking for a Marital Arts Instructor

(a) Practice these instructions by saying and doing

1. **Stand** with your **feet** shoulder width apart
2. **Put** your **hands** on your hips
3. **Stretch** to the left
4. Stretch to the right
5. **Swivel** your **hips**
6. **Touch** your **toes**



(b) Have you ever learned a martial art?

(c) Can you demonstrate a type of marital art like kung fu?

(d) Share about a form of martial arts from your country.

**China:** Kung Fu: The Shaolin monks are located at Shaolin Temple in Song Shan Mountain. Have you ever been there?

1500 years    Buddhism    Qi Gong    Warriors

(e) Sit back to back to your partner and call your partner to tell him/her that you want to find a good martial arts instructor to teach you Kung Fu.



Ash: Hi Kim, it's Ash

Kim: Hi Ash. How are you?

Ash: Good thank you, do you know anybody who teaches marital arts? I want to learn Kung Fu.

Kim: Yes I do, I know a good martial arts teacher. His name is Bruce Lee.

Ash: Could I have his number?

Kim: It is 555 555 55

Ash: Do you mind if I mention your name when I call?

Kim: No, go right ahead.

(f) Role-play calling Bruce Lee the marital Arts instructor.

Bruce: (Ring Ring) Hello Lee's gym. Bruce speaking.

Ash: Hello. My name is Ashley, I am a friend of Kim Russell. She suggested I give you a call.

Bruce: You know Kim, how is she?

Ash: She is great, we work together

Bruce: Say hi to her the next time you see her

Ash: I will

Bruce: How can I help you Ash?

Ash: I am wanting to learn Kung Fu so I was wondering if you could tell me about your lessons.

(g) What questions would you ask Bruce next on the phone? For example:

1. Where are you located?
2. How much do you charge?

(h) Are you good at networking?

(i) Change partners and role-play networking for another reason.

(j) Do you know the story of a man named Balaam (1400BC Near the Jordan River) who used to network amongst the gods until one day, while riding on his donkey, he came across a sword wielding angel? (**road, hand, could see, couldn't see, fell**)

# 16. New Body



## Physical Education

- (a) In pairs, draw an outline of your partners head and ask
1. What is your name?
  2. What do you like doing in your free time?
  3. What do you do to keep fit. For example:
    - a. I go **jogging** everyday
    - b. I do **aerobics** or tai chi
    - c. I go for a **walk**
    - d. I go **swimming** (for a swim)
    - e. I go for a **bike ride**
    - f. I **climb** steps
- (b) Share this information about your partner to another pair.
- Person 1: This is my partner.  
His/her name is...  
In his/her free time he/she likes .....  
To keep fit he/she likes to ....*
- (c) Have you ever done aerobics?
- (d) Stand up and follow these instructions from your teacher. The teacher has to demonstrate like an aerobics instructor
1. Stand with legs shoulder width apart.
  2. Put your hands on your hips.
  3. Touch your toes 3 times, 1. 2. 3.
  4. Jog on the spot and count to ten 1.2.3.4.5.6.7.8.9.10.
  5. Take two steps to the left. 1.2.
  6. Take two steps to the right. 1.2.
- (e) Demonstrate a new move and learn the English for that move.
- (f) Write three instructions and participate in a group class aerobics activity. Each person is to go out the front of the group and have his/her turn at being an aerobic instructor.
- (g) Share about the following types of recreation in your country.
1. Mass games "Arirang" Unity and group dynamics
  2. Tai chi: The supreme ultimate
  3. Dance parties
  4. Marathons
  5. Triathlon and Fun runs

## Spiritual Education

- (h) Some people like to relax by themselves by walking on a beach. Where do you like to go walking by yourself and what do you like to think about?
- (i) There is one famous poem called "**Footprints in the sand**" which is about a person walking on the beach reflecting about many things in their life. Do you know this poem and the illustration that describes what is said in this poem? When have you felt like this person in this poem?
- (j) How does this this poem relate to the following quote?
- There you saw how the LORD your God **carried** you, as a **father** carries his **son**.*

# 16. New Body



## Physical Education

- (a) In pairs, draw an outline of your partners head and ask
1. What is your name?
  2. What do you like doing in your free time?
  3. What do you do to keep fit. For example:
    - a. I go **jogging** everyday
    - b. I do **aerobics** or tai chi
    - c. I go for a **walk**
    - d. I go **swimming** (for a swim)
    - e. I go for a **bike ride**
    - f. I **climb** steps
- (b) Share this information about your partner to another pair.
- Person 1: This is my partner.  
His/her name is...  
In his/her free time he/she likes .....  
To keep fit he/she likes to ....*
- (c) Have you ever done aerobics?
- (d) Stand up and follow these instructions from your teacher. The teacher has to demonstrate like an aerobics instructor
1. Stand with legs shoulder width apart.
  2. Put your hands on your hips.
  3. Touch your toes 3 times, 1. 2. 3.
  4. Jog on the spot and count to ten 1.2.3.4.5.6.7.8.9.10.
  5. Take two steps to the left. 1.2.
  6. Take two steps to the right. 1.2.
- (e) Demonstrate a new move and learn the English for that move.
- (f) Write three instructions and participate in a group class aerobics activity. Each person is to go out the front of the group and have his/her turn at being an aerobic instructor.
- (g) Share about the following types of recreation in your country.
1. Mass games "Arirang" Unity and group dynamics
  2. Tai chi: The supreme ultimate
  3. Dance parties
  4. Marathons
  5. Triathlon and Fun runs

## Spiritual Education

- (h) Some people like to relax by themselves by walking on a beach. Where do you like to go walking by yourself and what do you like to think about?
- (i) There is one famous poem called "**Footprints in the sand**" which is about a person walking on the beach reflecting about many things in their life. Do you know this poem and the illustration that describes what is said in this poem? When have you felt like this person in this poem?
- (j) How does this this poem relate to the following quote?
- There you saw how the LORD your God **carried** you, as a **father** carries his **son**.*

# 17. East to West

## Directions N.S.E.W

- (a) Draw a map of your province or country.
- (b) Mark on your map and share with a partner ...
1. where you were born
  2. where you went to school/university
  3. where you live now
  4. where something else happened in your life
- (c) Which of the following are grammatically correct?  
My hometown is ...
1. located in **central** China (Correct)
  2. located in the centre China (Incorrect)
  3. located in the centre of China
  4. located in **North West** China
  5. located in the North West China
  6. in North Western China
  7. located in North China
  8. located in the northern part (area) of China.
- (d) Share some more information about your hometown in pairs
- Xiaoming: *Where is your hometown?*  
Xiaoqing: *My hometown is located....*
1. quite **near** to ... (Guiyang). Not **far** from ...
  2. between ... and ...
  3. ... hours from the coast.
  4. just off the coast or right on the coast
  5. a long way from....
- (e) Share a little bit more about where you live now by using the above terms. For example, I now live in Shenzhen. It is (about) 1/2 an hour by train from Hong Kong.
- (f) Mark on your map and share where the following places are located in your country.
1. Rivers, lakes,dams and national parks
  2. Mountain ranges, mountains.
  3. Famous temples and museums
  4. Forests and deserts: For example:

**China:** Gobi Desert. It has a buffer; the Green Wall of China.

sand dunes    creeping    alarmingrate  
Erosion    grasslands    rain shadow

- (g) Mark on your map and share how close you live to the following

1. Family and Friends
2. Cousins and Relatives
3. High school friends
4. Old work colleagues
5. Team mates
6. God



- (h) Read this ancient quote (1440-1406BC) and discuss where God is.

*'What other nation is so **great** as to have their gods **near** them the way the Lord our God is near us whenever we **pray** to him?'*

# 17. East to West

## Directions N.S.E.W

- (a) Draw a map of your province or country.
- (b) Mark on your map and share with a partner ...
1. where you were born
  2. where you went to school/university
  3. where you live now
  4. where something else happened in your life
- (c) Which of the following are grammatically correct?  
My hometown is ...
1. located in **central** China (Correct)
  2. located in the centre China (Incorrect)
  3. located in the centre of China
  4. located in **North West** China
  5. located in the North West China
  6. in North Western China
  7. located in North China
  8. located in the northern part (area) of China.
- (d) Share some more information about your hometown in pairs
- Xiaoming: *Where is your hometown?*  
Xiaoqing: *My hometown is located....*
1. quite **near** to ... (Guiyang). Not **far** from ...
  2. between ... and ...
  3. ... hours from the coast.
  4. just off the coast or right on the coast
  5. a long way from....
- (e) Share a little bit more about where you live now by using the above terms. For example, I now live in Shenzhen. It is (about) 1/2 an hour by train from Hong Kong.
- (f) Mark on your map and share where the following places are located in your country.
1. Rivers, lakes,dams and national parks
  2. Mountain ranges, mountains.
  3. Famous temples and museums
  4. Forests and deserts: For example:

**China:** Gobi Desert. It has a buffer; the Green Wall of China.

sand dunes    creeping    alarmingrate  
Erosion    grasslands    rain shadow

- (g) Mark on your map and share how close you live to the following

1. Family and Friends
2. Cousins and Relatives
3. High school friends
4. Old work colleagues
5. Team mates
6. God



- (h) Read this ancient quote (1440-1406BC) and discuss where God is.

*'What other nation is so **great** as to have their gods **near** them the way the Lord our God is near us whenever we **pray** to him?'*

# 18. That's History

## Party Invitation

(a) Dramatise a lion dance in lines of five. The person at the front is the head (paper plate), the one at the back is the tail (rope) and the rest of the group are the body. (Improvise music)

(b) Match these **party items** and labels

1. Firecrackers and fireworks
2. Party poppers
3. Serviettes
4. Tablecloth
5. Party whistle
6. Invitation
7. Incense
8. Banners
9. Punch



(c) Hold up one item and incorrectly say

*Teacher: These are party poppers*

*Class: No they aren't, they are candles*

(d) Chinese New Year is a time of many parties. Role-play inviting your partner to come and see a special lion dragon dance.

*Zhou: Hi James*

*James: Hi Zhou*

*Zhou: What are you doing this New Year? Do you have any plans?*

*James: No, I don't.*

*Zhou: Some friends and I are going to watch a lion dance. Would you like to join us?*

*James: Yes, that would be great!*

**or**

*James: I'm sorry I can't but thank you for asking. That's very kind of you*

*Zhou: Don't mention it.*

## Heaven Invitation

(e) People remember their ancestors during Chinese New Year. On Remembrance day people remember past battles. What do you like to remember about your ancestors or the past?



(f) During **Chinese** New Year, people give out red envelopes to bring in good luck. Do you know origin of red envelopes? How much do you give and receive? What do people do in your country to bring good luck? For example:

**Asia:** Be born on the right date and have the right blood type

(g) What would make this year a lucky one for you? (Choose 4)

1. More money (Wealth)
2. Get better (Health)
3. Find the cure for eternal life
4. Get a better job (Employment)
5. Be forgiven for all your sins
6. Get married
7. Have a place booked in heaven
8. Find a boyfriend or girlfriend. (relationship)

(h) Do you know the good fortune brought to a woman named Rahab (1400BC Jericho) who experienced great change in her life, not because of good luck or her blood type but because of her belief in historical truth? (**2 men, 1 woman, went, stayed, she, don't know, look**)

# 18. That's History

## Party Invitation

(a) Dramatise a lion dance in lines of five. The person at the front is the head (paper plate), the one at the back is the tail (rope) and the rest of the group are the body. (Improvise music)

(b) Match these **party items** and labels

1. Firecrackers and fireworks
2. Party poppers
3. Serviettes
4. Tablecloth
5. Party whistle
6. Invitation
7. Incense
8. Banners
9. Punch



(c) Hold up one item and incorrectly say

*Teacher: These are party poppers*

*Class: No they aren't, they are candles*

(d) Chinese New Year is a time of many parties. Role-play inviting your partner to come and see a special lion dragon dance.

*Zhou: Hi James*

*James: Hi Zhou*

*Zhou: What are you doing this New Year? Do you have any plans?*

*James: No, I don't.*

*Zhou: Some friends and I are going to watch a lion dance. Would you like to join us?*

*James: Yes, that would be great!*

**or**

*James: I'm sorry I can't but thank you for asking. That's very kind of you*

*Zhou: Don't mention it.*

## Heaven Invitation

(e) People remember their ancestors during Chinese New Year. On Remembrance day people remember past battles. What do you like to remember about your ancestors or the past?



(f) During **Chinese** New Year, people give out red envelopes to bring in good luck. Do you know origin of red envelopes? How much do you give and receive? What do people do in your country to bring good luck? For example:

**Asia:** Be born on the right date and have the right blood type

(g) What would make this year a lucky one for you? (Choose 4)

1. More money (Wealth)
2. Get better (Health)
3. Find the cure for eternal life
4. Get a better job (Employment)
5. Be forgiven for all your sins
6. Get married
7. Have a place booked in heaven
8. Find a boyfriend or girlfriend. (relationship)

(h) Do you know the good fortune brought to a woman named Rahab (1400BC Jericho) who experienced great change in her life, not because of good luck or her blood type but because of her belief in historical truth? (**2 men, 1 woman, went, stayed, she, don't know, look**)

# 19. Sweet Sweet Music

## Description of a New Thing

- (a) What's your favourite **song, singer, band** and type of music?
- (b) Listen to the teacher play different types of music and describe and/or act out the feelings the music portrays. For example
1. Anger
  2. Peace
  3. War
  4. Storm
  5. Heaven
  6. Nation
  7. Battle
  8. Nature
  9. Seasons (Winter)
- (c) Mime your favourite **musical instrument** to your partner.
- (d) Role play in fours the following discussion

*Strauss:* Can you play any musical instruments?

*Chopin:* (Choose 1)

1. Yes, I can play the ..( ). I started learning when I was ... ( )
2. No I can't play anything.
3. No I can't, but I want to learn how to play the ... ( ). Do you know anybody who could teach me?

- (e) If you were a musical instrument, what would you be? For example:

*If I were a musical instrument, I would be a trumpet because I always make a lot of noise and I like team sports.*

- (f) Share with a partner a traditional musical instruments from your country or another country. For example:

*Mozart:* Hey Bach, I just bought a guitar.

*Bach:* What's a guitar?

*Mozart:* A guitar **is** a musical instrument **that** has strings and is usually made out of timber

**China:** What's an Erhu?  
An Erhu is a traditional Chinese musical instrument **that** ... ( )

- (g) Sometimes to be a famous musician, you need a lucky break. Share about a time you had a lucky break.

## A Better Future

- (h) What numbers are considered lucky in your country and give examples of how they are used. For example:

**China:** Number 8. Beijing Olympics opened on 08, 08, 08.

**China:** The story of the cow herd and weaver girl (qī xī).

1. Double seven day
2. Ox herder stole
3. Sacrifice
4. Bridge of magpies

- (i) Do you know story of the divine symbolic use of trumpets and the number seven that brought down the walls of Jericho in 1400BC? (**early in the morning, day, carry, seven times**)



# 19. Sweet Sweet Music

## Description of a New Thing

- (a) What's your favourite **song, singer, band** and type of music?
- (b) Listen to the teacher play different types of music and describe and/or act out the feelings the music portrays. For example
1. Anger
  2. Peace
  3. War
  4. Storm
  5. Heaven
  6. Nation
  7. Battle
  8. Nature
  9. Seasons (Winter)
- (c) Mime your favourite **musical instrument** to your partner.
- (d) Role play in fours the following discussion

*Strauss:* Can you play any musical instruments?

*Chopin:* (Choose 1)

1. Yes, I can play the ..( ). I started learning when I was ... ( )
2. No I can't play anything.
3. No I can't, but I want to learn how to play the ... ( ). Do you know anybody who could teach me?

- (e) If you were a musical instrument, what would you be? For example:

*If I were a musical instrument, I would be a trumpet because I always make a lot of noise and I like team sports.*

- (f) Share with a partner a traditional musical instruments from your country or another country. For example:

*Mozart:* Hey Bach, I just bought a guitar.

*Bach:* What's a guitar?

*Mozart:* A guitar **is** a musical instrument **that** has strings and is usually made out of timber

**China:** What's an Erhu?  
An Erhu is a traditional Chinese musical instrument **that** ... ( )

- (g) Sometimes to be a famous musician, you need a lucky break. Share about a time you had a lucky break.

## A Better Future

- (h) What numbers are considered lucky in your country and give examples of how they are used. For example:

**China:** Number 8. Beijing Olympics opened on 08, 08, 08.

**China:** The story of the cow herd and weaver girl (qī xī).

1. Double seven day
2. Ox herder stole
3. Sacrifice
4. Bridge of magpies

- (i) Do you know story of the divine symbolic use of trumpets and the number seven that brought down the walls of Jericho in 1400BC? (**early in the morning, day, carry, seven times**)



# 20. Snip Snip

## Hairdressing and Advice

(a) Describe your hair to your partner.

*I have.....hair or I wish I had ....hair*

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. curly    | 7. wavy     |
| 2. dyed     | 8. permed   |
| 3. long     | 9. straight |
| 4. receding | 10. short   |
| 5. dark     | 11. blonde  |
| 6. brunette | 12. brown   |



(b) When did you last have your haircut, who cut it and how much did it cost? (Share in pairs)

(c) What is the difference in the following responses to someone who has just had a haircut?

1. Did you cut your hair? (*I cut my own hair*)
2. Have you had your haircut? (*Somebody cut my hair*)

(d) Draw some bald heads on the board and then choose some students to draw different types of hairstyles on each head.

1. Pony or pig tails
2. Short back and sides
3. Dregs or hippy look
4. Mullet or mo hawk
5. Tracks
6. Platted or dyed hair
7. Goatee or beard
8. Shaven, number 1 or crew cut
9. Moustache

(e) What celebrities have made a hairstyle famous?

(f) How do you usually have your hair? (Discuss in pairs)

1. A little bit scruffy on top.
2. I usually part it (brush it) to the side.
3. I have a little bit of a part

(g) What do you say when the hairdresser asks you the customer the following question?

*Hairdresser: How would you like your haircut today?*

*Customer:*

1. Just the fringe thanks.
2. Can you shave the back of my neck?
3. Just a little bit of a wave thanks.
4. Can you cut a little bit off the length please?
5. Could I have it coloured please?
6. Can you leave a little bit on the sides please?
7. Can you leave a little bit of a curl please?

(h) Role-play a conversation between a hairdresser and a customer. The hairdresser can stand behind the customer.

(i) Choose which answers are more polite in advising someone to get a haircut and then role-play in pairs.

1. Why don't you get a haircut?
2. Maybe it would be a good idea to get a haircut.
3. Have you thought about getting a haircut?
4. What about getting a haircut?
5. You should get a haircut.
6. Your hair is too long.

(j) Do you know any famous stories, poems or songs about haircuts, hairstyles or barbers from your country?

**World:** Samson and Delilah (1300-1050BC) Babylonian Exile  
(hair, long, strong, married, cut, remember)

# 20. Snip Snip

## Hairdressing and Advice

(a) Describe your hair to your partner.

*I have.....hair or I wish I had ....hair*

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. curly    | 7. wavy     |
| 2. dyed     | 8. permed   |
| 3. long     | 9. straight |
| 4. receding | 10. short   |
| 5. dark     | 11. blonde  |
| 6. brunette | 12. brown   |



(b) When did you last have your haircut, who cut it and how much did it cost? (Share in pairs)

(c) What is the difference in the following responses to someone who has just had a haircut?

1. Did you cut your hair? (*I cut my own hair*)
2. Have you had your haircut? (*Somebody cut my hair*)

(d) Draw some bald heads on the board and then choose some students to draw different types of hairstyles on each head.

1. Pony or pig tails
2. Short back and sides
3. Dregs or hippy look
4. Mullet or mo hawk
5. Tracks
6. Platted or dyed hair
7. Goatee or beard
8. Shaven, number 1 or crew cut
9. Moustache

(e) What celebrities have made a hairstyle famous?

(f) How do you usually have your hair? (Discuss in pairs)

1. A little bit scruffy on top.
2. I usually part it (brush it) to the side.
3. I have a little bit of a part

(g) What do you say when the hairdresser asks you the customer the following question?

*Hairdresser: How would you like your haircut today?*

*Customer:*

1. Just the fringe thanks.
2. Can you shave the back of my neck?
3. Just a little bit of a wave thanks.
4. Can you cut a little bit off the length please?
5. Could I have it coloured please?
6. Can you leave a little bit on the sides please?
7. Can you leave a little bit of a curl please?

(h) Role-play a conversation between a hairdresser and a customer. The hairdresser can stand behind the customer.

(i) Choose which answers are more polite in advising someone to get a haircut and then role-play in pairs.

1. Why don't you get a haircut?
2. Maybe it would be a good idea to get a haircut.
3. Have you thought about getting a haircut?
4. What about getting a haircut?
5. You should get a haircut.
6. Your hair is too long.

(j) Do you know any famous stories, poems or songs about haircuts, hairstyles or barbers from your country?

**World:** Samson and Delilah (1300-1050BC) Babylonian Exile  
(hair, long, strong, married, cut, remember)

# 21. Here Comes Trouble

## A Good Mother

- (a) Play charades, the actions are things people do.  
*Student: What am I doing?*  
*Class: You are **giving a speech** (Correct)*
- (b) What is your most favourite activity?  
*I love (really enjoy) ....*
- (c) Choose a picture of a celebrity woman and explain in first person why you are **mother** of the year.  
*I am mother of the year because I am **good at** .....*
- (d) Describe your mother's hobbies, job, looks etc. Does she look like you? Does she have the same interests and personality?  
*I resemble (look like) my mother, we have the same...*
- (e) How do you celebrate mother's day in your country?
- (f) How would you describe your mother's personality?  
 1. Outgoing or shy (reserved)  
 2. **Hardworking** or lazy  
 3. Quick tempered or patient  
 4. Considerate (**kind**) or rude  
 5. Easy going or serious
- (g) Practice in pairs thanking your mother for being your mum.  
*Son/Daughter: Mum, can I tell you something?*  
*Mum: Yes, what do you want to tell me?*  
*Son/Daughter: I just want to say thanks for being my mother*
- (h) Sometimes relationships between daughters and mothers or mothers-in-law aren't perfect. Role-play mending a relationship between Me Jeong and her mother in law Karen  
*Me Jeong: Karen, can I talk to you about something?*  
*Karen: I suppose*  
*Me Jeong: I know we haven't gotten along so well and I am very sorry about that, but in the future I would like us to try and get along a bit better. What do you think?*  
*Karen: It has been very difficult but I am willing to give it a go.*
- (i) Practice trying to mend another broken relationship between you and somebody else you know.
- (j) Relationships can improve and people can change. Share about a famous woman who changed or created great change in your culture. For example:  
**China:** Wu Zetian  
 1. First empress of the Tang dynasty in China. (625-705 AD)  
 2. Ruthless and considerate  
 3. Emperor Taizong's and Gaozong's concubine  
 4. Started own Zhou Dynasty  
 5. Empress Wang and Consort Xiao
- (k) Did these women challenge Confucian-inspired sayings? (Y/N)  
 1. *A woman's duty is not to control or take charge.* (Y)  
 2. *A woman's greatest duty is to produce a son.*  
 3. *A woman ruler is like a hen crowing.*
- (l) Do you know of the story of Ruth and her amazing relationship with her mother in law called Naomi (1250BC Returning to Bethlehem)? Something was more important than marriage, job security, family and cultural tradition. (**food, leave, old, go, your/my**)



# 21. Here Comes Trouble

## A Good Mother

- (a) Play charades, the actions are things people do.  
*Student: What am I doing?*  
*Class: You are **giving a speech** (Correct)*
- (b) What is your most favourite activity?  
*I love (really enjoy) ....*
- (c) Choose a picture of a celebrity woman and explain in first person why you are **mother** of the year.  
*I am mother of the year because I am **good at** .....*
- (d) Describe your mother's hobbies, job, looks etc. Does she look like you? Does she have the same interests and personality?  
*I resemble (look like) my mother, we have the same...*
- (e) How do you celebrate mother's day in your country?
- (f) How would you describe your mother's personality?  
 1. Outgoing or shy (reserved)  
 2. **Hardworking** or lazy  
 3. Quick tempered or patient  
 4. Considerate (**kind**) or rude  
 5. Easy going or serious
- (g) Practice in pairs thanking your mother for being your mum.  
*Son/Daughter: Mum, can I tell you something?*  
*Mum: Yes, what do you want to tell me?*  
*Son/Daughter: I just want to say thanks for being my mother*
- (h) Sometimes relationships between daughters and mothers or mothers-in-law aren't perfect. Role-play mending a relationship between Me Jeong and her mother in law Karen  
*Me Jeong: Karen, can I talk to you about something?*  
*Karen: I suppose*  
*Me Jeong: I know we haven't gotten along so well and I am very sorry about that, but in the future I would like us to try and get along a bit better. What do you think?*  
*Karen: It has been very difficult but I am willing to give it a go.*
- (i) Practice trying to mend another broken relationship between you and somebody else you know.
- (j) Relationships can improve and people can change. Share about a famous woman who changed or created great change in your culture. For example:  
**China:** Wu Zetian  
 1. First empress of the Tang dynasty in China. (625-705 AD)  
 2. Ruthless and considerate  
 3. Emperor Taizong's and Gaozong's concubine  
 4. Started own Zhou Dynasty  
 5. Empress Wang and Consort Xiao
- (k) Did these women challenge Confucian-inspired sayings? (Y/N)  
 1. *A woman's duty is not to control or take charge.* (Y)  
 2. *A woman's greatest duty is to produce a son.*  
 3. *A woman ruler is like a hen crowing.*
- (l) Do you know of the story of Ruth and her amazing relationship with her mother in law called Naomi (1250BC Returning to Bethlehem)? Something was more important than marriage, job security, family and cultural tradition. (**food, leave, old, go, your/my**)



## 22. One Perfect Day

### Personal Values – Saying No

- (a) What's your favourite type of sushi or sandwich?
- (b) What 5 ingredients would you need to make the ultimate sandwich, sushi roll or Vietnamese rap roll? (**lettuce, tomato.**)
- (c) Use these verbs to make a sandwich in class  
**cut slice spread sprinkle pour**
- (d) What five personal values would you need to make the ultimate person? For example:

#### Personal values

1. Money
2. Friendship
3. Loyalty
4. Honesty
5. Adventure
6. Economic security
7. Competence
8. Reputation
9. freedom
10. Status
11. Nature
12. Faith



- (e) Brainstorm 5 other personal values.
- (f) Share your top three personal values in groups of four.
- (g) Role-play in different pairs complimenting a personal value of your co-worker Taka.

*Masami: Hi Taka, can I tell you something?*

*Taka: Sure Masami, what is it?*

*Masami: I just want to tell you I really value your...(honesty, hard work, etc).*

- (h) Sometimes people can suffer a conflict of personal values. For example, a friend wants to copy your assignment. (Honesty verses friendship). Role play an assertive response to this situation in pairs.

*Joshua: Jacob, do you mind if I copy your assignment?*

*Jacob: (Choose 2 of these assertive polite answers).*

*Jacob 1: No I can't let you copy my assignment because I really value honesty. I hope you can understand.*

*Jacob 2: Josh, I know we are good friends but I'm sorry I can't let you copy my assignment.*

*Jacob 3: Honesty is very important to me, so I have to say no.*

- (i) Share a time you experienced a conflict in personal values
- (j) Who is the most honourable person you know?
- (k) Share about a famous judge or person who upheld their personal values despite a lot of pressure. For example:

**China:** Bao Zheng (Pictured) (999-1062 AD, Song Dynasty) was a judge (magistrate) who tried to preserve his personal values of integrity and uprightness. Share what you know about him.

1. Lord Bao's family regulations about who can be buried alongside him in his graveyard. Stance against corruption. Dismissed high officials. Flood in Keifeng.
2. Clear Sky Bao stood up for some people from poor backgrounds who were unjustly convicted. Wouldn't be bribed with ink stones.

- (l) Do you know story about a person of integrity called Boaz (1280BC Bethlehem)? (**good, kind, returned, paid, price**)

## 22. One Perfect Day

### Personal Values – Saying No

- (a) What's your favourite type of sushi or sandwich?
- (b) What 5 ingredients would you need to make the ultimate sandwich, sushi roll or Vietnamese rap roll? (**lettuce, tomato.**)
- (c) Use these verbs to make a sandwich in class  
**cut slice spread sprinkle pour**
- (d) What five personal values would you need to make the ultimate person? For example:

#### Personal values

1. Money
2. Friendship
3. Loyalty
4. Honesty
5. Adventure
6. Economic security
7. Competence
8. Reputation
9. freedom
10. Status
11. Nature
12. Faith



- (e) Brainstorm 5 other personal values.
- (f) Share your top three personal values in groups of four.
- (g) Role-play in different pairs complimenting a personal value of your co-worker Taka.

*Masami: Hi Taka, can I tell you something?*

*Taka: Sure Masami, what is it?*

*Masami: I just want to tell you I really value your...(honesty, hard work, etc).*

- (h) Sometimes people can suffer a conflict of personal values. For example, a friend wants to copy your assignment. (Honesty verses friendship). Role play an assertive response to this situation in pairs.

*Joshua: Jacob, do you mind if I copy your assignment?*

*Jacob: (Choose 2 of these assertive polite answers).*

*Jacob 1: No I can't let you copy my assignment because I really value honesty. I hope you can understand.*

*Jacob 2: Josh, I know we are good friends but I'm sorry I can't let you copy my assignment.*

*Jacob 3: Honesty is very important to me, so I have to say no.*

- (i) Share a time you experienced a conflict in personal values
- (j) Who is the most honourable person you know?
- (k) Share about a famous judge or person who upheld their personal values despite a lot of pressure. For example:

**China:** Bao Zheng (Pictured) (999-1062 AD, Song Dynasty) was a judge (magistrate) who tried to preserve his personal values of integrity and uprightness. Share what you know about him.

1. Lord Bao's family regulations about who can be buried alongside him in his graveyard. Stance against corruption. Dismissed high officials. Flood in Keifeng.
2. Clear Sky Bao stood up for some people from poor backgrounds who were unjustly convicted. Wouldn't be bribed with ink stones.

- (l) Do you know story about a person of integrity called Boaz (1280BC Bethlehem)? (**good, kind, returned, paid, price**)

# 23. Do You Hear What I Hear

## Introductions

(a) In pairs, describe your partner using two adjectives For e.g.

*This is my partner. His name is ... He is .....(1) and .....(2)*

1. **tall** or **short** (cute)
2. **young** and **kind**
3. honest and wise
4. Korean
5. **handsome**
6. cuddly and **friendly**
7. athletic (fit looking)
8. fresh looking
9. a good listener and a good speaker



(b) Do you have good hearing? Are you a good listener?

*Right now I can hear....*

(c) What is your favourite sound? I love listening to .....

1. the sound of the waves
2. rain on a tin roof
3. James Bond or French accents. (Very romantic)
4. a particular person's voice

(d) In pairs, take one picture and describe what things (nouns) and verbs (actions) are in the picture and then expand the sentence by using adjectives and adverbs. Your partner has to listen to you say the final sentence and repeat the sentence. For example

1. The man is listening (verb) to his radio
2. The handsome (adjective) man is listening to his new radio.
3. The handsome man is carefully (adverb) listening to his new radio

(e) Role play in pairs trying to understand somebody who uses English words or has an accent you don't understand because you are not used to their accent or slang vocabulary.

*Kanit: Robyn, what are you doing today?*  
*Robyn: This arvo I am going to have a siesta.*  
*Kanit: Excuse me Robyn, I didn't quite understand what you said.*  
*Robyn: Arvo means this afternoon and siesta means to have a short sleep. I'm having a sleep this afternoon*  
*Kanit: Thanks for helping me. By the way. I love your accent, can you just give me a little time to get used to it?*

(f) Role play not understanding somebody who speaks too fast

*Speedy: Blah Blah Blah Blah Blah!*  
*Ting Ru: Sorry Speedy, I didn't quite catch what you said. Could you say it again please? Could you repeat what you said? Could you speak a little bit slower please?*

(g) Do you know any stories from your culture of people trying to listen and understand a voice or sound?

(h) Do you the know the ancient story (1000BC Israel) of a boy named Samuel who was confused by a voice he didn't recognize? (**old man, young boy, weak, heard, ran, go back, lie down, here**)

# 23. Do You Hear What I Hear

## Introductions

(a) In pairs, describe your partner using two adjectives For e.g.

*This is my partner. His name is ... He is .....(1) and .....(2)*

1. **tall** or **short** (cute)
2. **young** and **kind**
3. honest and wise
4. Korean
5. **handsome**
6. cuddly and **friendly**
7. athletic (fit looking)
8. fresh looking
9. a good listener and a good speaker



(b) Do you have good hearing? Are you a good listener?

*Right now I can hear....*

(c) What is your favourite sound? I love listening to .....

1. the sound of the waves
2. rain on a tin roof
3. James Bond or French accents. (Very romantic)
4. a particular person's voice

(d) In pairs, take one picture and describe what things (nouns) and verbs (actions) are in the picture and then expand the sentence by using adjectives and adverbs. Your partner has to listen to you say the final sentence and repeat the sentence. For example

1. The man is listening (verb) to his radio
2. The handsome (adjective) man is listening to his new radio.
3. The handsome man is carefully (adverb) listening to his new radio

(e) Role play in pairs trying to understand somebody who uses English words or has an accent you don't understand because you are not used to their accent or slang vocabulary.

*Kanit: Robyn, what are you doing today?*  
*Robyn: This arvo I am going to have a siesta.*  
*Kanit: Excuse me Robyn, I didn't quite understand what you said.*  
*Robyn: Arvo means this afternoon and siesta means to have a short sleep. I'm having a sleep this afternoon*  
*Kanit: Thanks for helping me. By the way. I love your accent, can you just give me a little time to get used to it?*

(f) Role play not understanding somebody who speaks too fast

*Speedy: Blah Blah Blah Blah Blah!*  
*Ting Ru: Sorry Speedy, I didn't quite catch what you said. Could you say it again please? Could you repeat what you said? Could you speak a little bit slower please?*

(g) Do you know any stories from your culture of people trying to listen and understand a voice or sound?

(h) Do you the know the ancient story (1000BC Israel) of a boy named Samuel who was confused by a voice he didn't recognize? (**old man, young boy, weak, heard, ran, go back, lie down, here**)

# 24. Face Value

## Idioms / Helping People

- (a) What is your favourite **car, colour, ice cream flavour and name**?
- (b) If you had a child next month, what would you call him/her?
- (c) Sometimes it is **difficult to remember** names of people and places. Read through the following role play in pairs

Elaine: Hi Warren, where are you going to next month?

Warren: What's the name of that place again in China? I know it. I can't think of it. 'It's (totally) slipped my mind'. Can I tell you later?

- (d) Read through this role play in pairs.

Elaine: Hi Warren, where are you going to next month?

Warren: What's the name of that place again in China? I know it. 'It's on the tip of my tongue', Chin, Chan, Chong, Chongqing, that's it.

- (e) What's the difference between the two sayings
  1. 'It's on the tip of my tongue'
  2. 'It's (totally) slipped my mind'
- (f) Do you have any stories of someone who was very forgetful?
- (g) We never forget people who wear their heart on their sleeve and are known for helping people. When was the last time you helped somebody? For example: Do their homework, wash the dishes, give somebody a lift.etc).
- (h) Who do you know who wears their heart on their sleeve?
- (i) Choose which of the following descriptions best describes a person who wears his heart on his sleeve.
 

1. selfish	or	generous
2. proud	or	humble
3. loyal	or	self centered



- (j) Wearing a heart on you sleeve originates from the time of knights in jousting competitions. Share any stories where people from your culture were like a knight in shining armour i.e. a rescuer, and wore their heart on their sleeve. For example:

**China:** Youxia: Wandered the country helping the less fortunate people to experience more freedom

1. Need for freedom.
2. Knew someone important.
3. Any social class.
4. Hubei and Henan



- (k) Do you know the story of how a boy named David was chosen to be king, not because of his age or external appearance but by his heart? (**king, height, looks, heart**)

# 24. Face Value

## Idioms / Helping People

- (a) What is your favourite **car, colour, ice cream flavour and name**?
- (b) If you had a child next month, what would you call him/her?
- (c) Sometimes it is **difficult to remember** names of people and places. Read through the following role play in pairs

Elaine: Hi Warren, where are you going to next month?

Warren: What's the name of that place again in China? I know it. I can't think of it. 'It's (totally) slipped my mind'. Can I tell you later?

- (d) Read through this role play in pairs.

Elaine: Hi Warren, where are you going to next month?

Warren: What's the name of that place again in China? I know it. 'It's on the tip of my tongue', Chin, Chan, Chong, Chongqing, that's it.

- (e) What's the difference between the two sayings
  1. 'It's on the tip of my tongue'
  2. 'It's (totally) slipped my mind'
- (f) Do you have any stories of someone who was very forgetful?
- (g) We never forget people who wear their heart on their sleeve and are known for helping people. When was the last time you helped somebody? For example: Do their homework, wash the dishes, give somebody a lift.etc).
- (h) Who do you know who wears their heart on their sleeve?
- (i) Choose which of the following descriptions best describes a person who wears his heart on his sleeve.
 

1. selfish	or	generous
2. proud	or	humble
3. loyal	or	self centered



- (j) Wearing a heart on you sleeve originates from the time of knights in jousting competitions. Share any stories where people from your culture were like a knight in shining armour i.e. a rescuer, and wore their heart on their sleeve. For example:

**China:** Youxia: Wandered the country helping the less fortunate people to experience more freedom

1. Need for freedom.
2. Knew someone important.
3. Any social class.
4. Hubei and Henan



- (k) Do you know the story of how a boy named David was chosen to be king, not because of his age or external appearance but by his heart? (**king, height, looks, heart**)

# 25. Invasion or Invitation

## Case Study Analysis

- (a) Mark one wall as agree and the opposite wall as disagree. Where do you stand on the following opinions and why?
- Basketball** is a better sport than **football (soccer)**.  
*Interviewer: Why do you think Basketball is better than..?*  
*Person 1: I think Basketball is better because....*
  - Burger King (Hungry Jacks) is better than McDonalds.
- (b) In pairs discuss what is your favourite fast food and why?
- (c) Are there many **fast food outlets** in your country?
- Not so many.
  - There are a few.
  - The number is growing all the time.
  - Heaps.
- (d) Which of the following are positive (p) or negative (n) reasons for a new major fast food outlet (MacKim's) in a **small town**?
- provides more employment (p)
  - encourages poor diet
  - local shops will lose business
  - attracts tourists
  - takes away the local character of a town.
- (e) In groups of 4, work through the following case study analysis whether a country town should allow McKims to open.

*Person 1: 1 - Introduction: Introduce a situation to define or identify the problem.*

*Person 2: MacKim's fast food outlet wants to set up a restaurant in our town but many people see it as a potential threat.*

*Person 3: This case study will investigate and evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of this proposal.*

*Person 1: 2 - Problem and Impact: Analyse the proposal and its impact on the business/organisation.*

*Person 3: If we allow MacKim's to begin operations in ... (town), there are some positive things and some negative things to consider. First the positives ( )*

*Person 4: Now the negatives ... ( )*

*Person 1: 3 - Examine and evaluate: Examine and evaluate strengths and weaknesses of possible solutions.*

*Person 2. Let's now evaluate each strength and weakness. First the strengths ... ( )*

*Person 3: Now the weaknesses ... ( )*

*Person 1: 4 - Conclusion: Select a preferred solution (or a combination).*

*Person 4: Weighing up all the evidence, I see no reason why we should/shouldn't allow MacKim's in (town).*

*Person 2: The short term benefits are ..( )*

*Person 3: The long-term benefits are ... ( )*

- (f) Do you know of any stories where a case study analysis would not have explained why an underdog defeated an overwhelming favourite? For example:



**China:** In 209AD, southern warlords and Sun Quan defeated Cao Cao in the Battle of Red Cliff Chibi) numerous troops seasickness ravaged tropical diseases Zhuge Liang arrows straw figures penetrated war drums sipping Zhou Yu fog

**World:** David verses Goliath (A saying often quoted in the media) 15 miles west of Jerusalem. (**boy, giant, amour, spear, stone, everyday**).

# 25. Invasion or Invitation

## Case Study Analysis

- (a) Mark one wall as agree and the opposite wall as disagree. Where do you stand on the following opinions and why?
- Basketball** is a better sport than **football (soccer)**.  
*Interviewer: Why do you think Basketball is better than..?*  
*Person 1: I think Basketball is better because....*
  - Burger King (Hungry Jacks) is better than McDonalds.
- (b) In pairs discuss what is your favourite fast food and why?
- (c) Are there many **fast food outlets** in your country?
- Not so many.
  - There are a few.
  - The number is growing all the time.
  - Heaps.
- (d) Which of the following are positive (p) or negative (n) reasons for a new major fast food outlet (MacKim's) in a **small town**?
- provides more employment (p)
  - encourages poor diet
  - local shops will lose business
  - attracts tourists
  - takes away the local character of a town.
- (e) In groups of 4, work through the following case study analysis whether a country town should allow McKims to open.

*Person 1: 1 - Introduction: Introduce a situation to define or identify the problem.*

*Person 2: MacKim's fast food outlet wants to set up a restaurant in our town but many people see it as a potential threat.*

*Person 3: This case study will investigate and evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of this proposal.*

*Person 1: 2 - Problem and Impact: Analyse the proposal and its impact on the business/organisation.*

*Person 3: If we allow MacKim's to begin operations in ... (town), there are some positive things and some negative things to consider. First the positives ( )*

*Person 4: Now the negatives ... ( )*

*Person 1: 3 - Examine and evaluate: Examine and evaluate strengths and weaknesses of possible solutions.*

*Person 2. Let's now evaluate each strength and weakness. First the strengths ... ( )*

*Person 3: Now the weaknesses ... ( )*

*Person 1: 4 - Conclusion: Select a preferred solution (or a combination).*

*Person 4: Weighing up all the evidence, I see no reason why we should/shouldn't allow MacKim's in (town).*

*Person 2: The short term benefits are ..( )*

*Person 3: The long-term benefits are ... ( )*

- (f) Do you know of any stories where a case study analysis would not have explained why an underdog defeated an overwhelming favourite? For example:



**China:** In 209AD, southern warlords and Sun Quan defeated Cao Cao in the Battle of Red Cliff Chibi) numerous troops seasickness ravaged tropical diseases Zhuge Liang arrows straw figures penetrated war drums sipping Zhou Yu fog

**World:** David verses Goliath (A saying often quoted in the media) 15 miles west of Jerusalem. (**boy, giant, amour, spear, stone, everyday**).

# 26. Don't Label Me

## Welcoming a New Person at Work

- (a) What jobs have you done in the past?
- (b) What is your dream job?
- (c) How do you feel when you first start a **new job**?
  1. **Good** or **happy**
  2. A little bit anxious.
  3. **Nervous** at first.
  4. **Excited.** (great)
  5. A little bit unsettled. It takes a bit of time to settle in.
- (d) Sometimes when you change jobs, you can feel a little bit tentative using new equipment. Role-play in pairs this situation.

*New Worker :* Excuse me, I am new here. I don't understand how to use this ...(program on the computer), could you show me how to use it?

*Old Worker:* Sure, you... ( )

- (e) Sometimes you are categorised as 'the new kid on the block' when you start a new job. In different pairs, practice welcoming the new person at work.

*Old employee:* Hi, my name is..., what's your name?

*New employee:* My name is...

*Old employee:* I'd just like to welcome you here to... (company name). If you need any help, please don't hesitate to ask. Just let me know. Here is my card.

*New employee:* You are very helpful.

*Old employee:* I remember what it's like to be new.

- (f) Do you sometimes categorize people or have you ever been categorized by people?

## Categorizing People

- (g) How are people categorized in your country? For example:
- (h) Deng Xiaoping of **China** once said 'the dangers of categorizing'

*I don't care if it's a white cat or a black cat. It's a good cat so long as it catches mice.*



Do you know what this means?

- (i) Share what else you know about Deng Xiaoping?
  1. Seek truth from facts"
  2. Productive rather than following ideology
  3. Socialism does not mean shared poverty"
  4. Tractor Factory (Jiangxi province)
- (j) What is the danger of categorizing or labeling people?
  1. People are not treated as people
  2. People are racist
  3. Highlights differences
- (k) Do you know the story when a king called David surprisingly didn't categorize a man named Mephibosheth 1000BC as a major threat to his throne? (**lame, both feet, bowed, restore, farm, dead dog, eat**)

# 26. Don't Label Me

## Welcoming a New Person at Work

- (a) What jobs have you done in the past?
- (b) What is your dream job?
- (c) How do you feel when you first start a **new job**?
  1. **Good** or **happy**
  2. A little bit anxious.
  3. **Nervous** at first.
  4. **Excited.** (great)
  5. A little bit unsettled. It takes a bit of time to settle in.
- (d) Sometimes when you change jobs, you can feel a little bit tentative using new equipment. Role-play in pairs this situation.

*New Worker :* Excuse me, I am new here. I don't understand how to use this ...(program on the computer), could you show me how to use it?

*Old Worker:* Sure, you... ( )

- (e) Sometimes you are categorised as 'the new kid on the block' when you start a new job. In different pairs, practice welcoming the new person at work.

*Old employee:* Hi, my name is..., what's your name?

*New employee:* My name is...

*Old employee:* I'd just like to welcome you here to... (company name). If you need any help, please don't hesitate to ask. Just let me know. Here is my card.

*New employee:* You are very helpful.

*Old employee:* I remember what it's like to be new.

- (f) Do you sometimes categorize people or have you ever been categorized by people?

## Categorizing People

- (g) How are people categorized in your country? For example:
- (h) Deng Xiaoping of **China** once said 'the dangers of categorizing'

*I don't care if it's a white cat or a black cat. It's a good cat so long as it catches mice.*



Do you know what this means?

- (i) Share what else you know about Deng Xiaoping?
  1. Seek truth from facts"
  2. Productive rather than following ideology
  3. Socialism does not mean shared poverty"
  4. Tractor Factory (Jiangxi province)
- (j) What is the danger of categorizing or labeling people?
  1. People are not treated as people
  2. People are racist
  3. Highlights differences
- (k) Do you know the story when a king called David surprisingly didn't categorize a man named Mephibosheth 1000BC as a major threat to his throne? (**lame, both feet, bowed, restore, farm, dead dog, eat**)

# 27. Smart Thinking

## Report Writing

- (a) What is your favourite chocolate bar?
- (b) Have a competition picking up M&M's with chopsticks.
- (c) The chopsticks activity is only a small challenge. Have you ever attempted a very difficult challenge? Share in pairs.
- (d) How many ways can you think of to do the difficult challenge of transporting an elephant? For example: By jumbo jet.
- (e) In groups of three, make up three sentences using the following comparative adjectives to compare different methods of transporting an elephant. For example: It's more expensive to transport an elephant by jet than by truck.
  1. more/less **expensive**
  2. more/less **time** consuming
  3. more/less practical
- (f) Think of some other comparative adjectives to compare the different methods of transporting an elephant.
- (g) There are many ways to transport an elephant. To decide which is the best future option, some organisations would undertake a report. Read through and **complete** the following report in groups of four.

Person 1: **1 - Purpose of the report:** The purpose of this report is ..(...)

Person 2: **2 - Details:** This report was authorised by Wuhan English Corner on January 31, 2011. Surveys, tests and interviews were used to research the topic under discussion. From this research the major findings (choices) to transport the elephant were...(...)

Person 3: **3 - Recommendations:** The major recommendation (s) (choices) from this report is (are): Transport an elephant by...(...) Based on this recommendation, the following future actions need to be carried out... (...)

Person 4: **4 - Polite close:** Working with you and your staff has been a pleasure. If you have any questions after reading the report or if you would like to discuss our conclusions, please contact us on 5555 5555.

- (h) Reports help to give wisdom on making the best decision. Do you know any stories of examples of great wisdom from your culture? For example:



**China:** Cao Cao: How to weigh an elephant. (His young son's wisdom)  
report            chief advisors  
impossible      extreme pressure

**World:** King Solomon "Who is the real mother of a baby?"  
950BC Jerusalem (**third day, took, born, died, half**)

# 27. Smart Thinking

## Report Writing

- (a) What is your favourite chocolate bar?
- (b) Have a competition picking up M&M's with chopsticks.
- (c) The chopsticks activity is only a small challenge. Have you ever attempted a very difficult challenge? Share in pairs.
- (d) How many ways can you think of to do the difficult challenge of transporting an elephant? For example: By jumbo jet.
- (e) In groups of three, make up three sentences using the following comparative adjectives to compare different methods of transporting an elephant. For example: It's more expensive to transport an elephant by jet than by truck.
  1. more/less **expensive**
  2. more/less **time** consuming
  3. more/less practical
- (f) Think of some other comparative adjectives to compare the different methods of transporting an elephant.
- (g) There are many ways to transport an elephant. To decide which is the best future option, some organisations would undertake a report. Read through and **complete** the following report in groups of four.

Person 1: **1 - Purpose of the report:** The purpose of this report is ..(...)

Person 2: **2 - Details:** This report was authorised by Wuhan English Corner on January 31, 2011. Surveys, tests and interviews were used to research the topic under discussion. From this research the major findings (choices) to transport the elephant were...(...)

Person 3: **3 - Recommendations:** The major recommendation (s) (choices) from this report is (are): Transport an elephant by...(...) Based on this recommendation, the following future actions need to be carried out... (...)

Person 4: **4 - Polite close:** Working with you and your staff has been a pleasure. If you have any questions after reading the report or if you would like to discuss our conclusions, please contact us on 5555 5555.

- (h) Reports help to give wisdom on making the best decision. Do you know any stories of examples of great wisdom from your culture? For example:

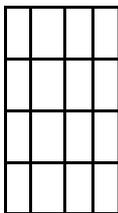


**China:** Cao Cao: How to weigh an elephant. (His young son's wisdom)  
report            chief advisors  
impossible      extreme pressure

**World:** King Solomon "Who is the real mother of a baby?"  
950BC Jerusalem (**third day, took, born, died, half**)

# 28. Straight Ahead

## Giving Directions



(a) Practice in pairs.

Person 1: What do you usually **buy** at 7eleven?

Person 2: I usually buy ..()

(b) Which of these questions are most correct?

1. Where is the nearest 7eleven?
2. Excuse me, **can you tell** me where is the nearest 7eleven?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where **the nearest** 7eleven is?

(c) Role play in pairs asking for directions

Backpacker: Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest 7eleven is?

Police Officer It's not far from here **or** It's along way away from here. (Choose one more phrase)

1. It's 2 shops down the road, just a hop skip and a jump
2. It's 50 kilometers from here A long way from **here**.
3. It's a couple of blocks, only 5 minutes by car
4. It's just a short taxi ride, about 10 min on foot
5. It's just around the corner. Very Close
6. It's in the next block
7. About 1 hour by taxi

(d) Draw a map on the whiteboard of a couple of blocks as pictured and mark on this map your office, house or other landmarks such as roads, shops, banks, etc. Your map can be improvised.

(e) Describe where different places are located using some of the above and following vocabulary. For example:

**The hotel** is located next to the bank opposite the **park**.

1. Just past the.... Next (adjacent) to... It's on the left/right
2. Across the **road** from ... 2 **shops** past ...
3. Behind or in front of ...
4. Opposite or directly opposite or diagonally opposite ...
5. Just before or just after...

(f) Read the following directions (demonstrate with hands)

1. take a left at the intersection
2. go straight along this road
3. turn right at the next lights
4. go through the crossroads (intersection)
5. go down this road
6. up the steps
7. down the escalator
8. go to the lift and press 29
9. you will see it on your right, you can't miss it.



(g) Mark in a starting point on your map and using the above vocabulary, instruct a partner how to get to your office, house, bank, 7eleven etc. For example:

Visitor: Excuse me, can you tell me how can I get to the bank?

Local: It's not far from here, just 10 minutes on foot. Can you see that hotel? Go down this road, past the hotel, the bank is just past the post office on the left. You can't miss it.

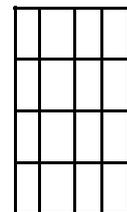
(h) Inform people how far it is to a place that is very quiet for a holiday in your country because it is isolated and remote

Local: I know a place that is very quiet and remote. It's a long way from here. About 5 hours by car.

(i) Do you know the story of how one man, Elijah 950BC , received divine directions to go to a very remote, isolated and desolate place? (**announced, king, drought, leave, bread, meat, water**)

# 28. Straight Ahead

## Giving Directions



(a) Practice in pairs.

Person 1: What do you usually **buy** at 7eleven?

Person 2: I usually buy ..()

(b) Which of these questions are most correct?

1. Where is the nearest 7eleven?
2. Excuse me, **can you tell** me where is the nearest 7eleven?
3. Excuse me, can you tell me where **the nearest** 7eleven is?

(c) Role play in pairs asking for directions

Backpacker: Excuse me, can you tell me where the nearest 7eleven is?

Police Officer It's not far from here **or** It's along way away from here. (Choose one more phrase)

1. It's 2 shops down the road, just a hop skip and a jump
2. It's 50 kilometers from here A long way from **here**.
3. It's a couple of blocks, only 5 minutes by car
4. It's just a short taxi ride, about 10 min on foot
5. It's just around the corner. Very Close
6. It's in the next block
7. About 1 hour by taxi

(d) Draw a map on the whiteboard of a couple of blocks as pictured and mark on this map your office, house or other landmarks such as roads, shops, banks, etc. Your map can be improvised.

(e) Describe where different places are located using some of the above and following vocabulary. For example:

**The hotel** is located next to the bank opposite the **park**.

1. Just past the.... Next (adjacent) to... It's on the left/right
2. Across the **road** from ... 2 **shops** past ...
3. Behind or in front of ...
4. Opposite or directly opposite or diagonally opposite ...
5. Just before or just after...

(f) Read the following directions (demonstrate with hands)

1. take a left at the intersection
2. go straight along this road
3. turn right at the next lights
4. go through the crossroads (intersection)
5. go down this road
6. up the steps
7. down the escalator
8. go to the lift and press 29
9. you will see it on your right, you can't miss it.



(g) Mark in a starting point on your map and using the above vocabulary, instruct a partner how to get to your office, house, bank, 7eleven etc. For example:

Visitor: Excuse me, can you tell me how can I get to the bank?

Local: It's not far from here, just 10 minutes on foot. Can you see that hotel? Go down this road, past the hotel, the bank is just past the post office on the left. You can't miss it.

(h) Inform people how far it is to a place that is very quiet for a holiday in your country because it is isolated and remote

Local: I know a place that is very quiet and remote. It's a long way from here. About 5 hours by car.

(i) Do you know the story of how one man, Elijah 950BC , received divine directions to go to a very remote, isolated and desolate place? (**announced, king, drought, leave, bread, meat, water**)

# 29. BBQ's Galore

## Invitation to a BBQ

- (a) Have you ever been to a BBQ?
- (b) Are BBQs popular in your country?
- (c) Role play inviting a friend to a BBQ.

Jack: Hi Tim, some friends and I are having a BBQ, would you like to come?

Tim: Sure, can I bring anything?

Jack: Maybe a **salad** and some **drinks**.

- (d) What do you like to eat at a BBQ?
- (e) Role play this conversation at a BBQ (Change partners)

Cook: Would you like some **steak**?

Hungry person: Yes please.

Cook: How would you like your steak cooked?  
(How do you like steak?)

Rare

Medium rare

Medium

Well done

Hungry person: Well done please.

- (f) Discuss these words that are associated with BBQs.
1. Grill and hot plate
  2. **Tongs** (turn), flipper and skewers
  3. Marinate and cut up
  4. Apron
  5. **Flame**
  6. Esky (Chilly bin/Ice Box)
- (g) Describe BBQs in your country.
1. Indoors or outdoors
  2. Gas, electric, wood or charcoal
  3. In the park (Public), National Park or backyard
  4. Only men cook (Have to provide a drink for the cook)
  5. Mosquitoes or ants
  6. BYO drinks
  7. Use foil or no foil on the hotplate
  8. Games
- (h) Have you ever seen something surprising at a BBQ? For e.g.  
*I was surprised when I saw kangaroo meat being cooked on a BBQ (It was surprising and it made me feel surprised)*

- (i) What's the most surprising man made thing you have seen while driving in your country? For example: In Australia:
1. Big BBQ
  2. Big apple (pictured)
  3. Big banana
  4. Big prawn
  5. Big pineapple



- (j) Who would be a surprising guest you would invite to a BBQ?
1. Elvis Presley
  2. Jackie Chan
  3. God
- (k) Do you know the story of a big sacrifice (BBQ) held at Mt Carmel 950 BC? Many people were invited, saw and were surprised by who turned up and what they saw. (**mountain, fire, yelled, midday, sleep, fill, pour, water, three times**)

# 29. BBQ's Galore

## Invitation to a BBQ

- (a) Have you ever been to a BBQ?
- (b) Are BBQs popular in your country?
- (c) Role play inviting a friend to a BBQ.

Jack: Hi Tim, some friends and I are having a BBQ, would you like to come?

Tim: Sure, can I bring anything?

Jack: Maybe a **salad** and some **drinks**.

- (d) What do you like to eat at a BBQ?
- (e) Role play this conversation at a BBQ (Change partners)

Cook: Would you like some **steak**?

Hungry person: Yes please.

Cook: How would you like your steak cooked?  
(How do you like steak?)

Rare

Medium rare

Medium

Well done

Hungry person: Well done please.

- (f) Discuss these words that are associated with BBQs.
1. Grill and hot plate
  2. **Tongs** (turn), flipper and skewers
  3. Marinate and cut up
  4. Apron
  5. **Flame**
  6. Esky (Chilly bin/Ice Box)
- (g) Describe BBQs in your country.
1. Indoors or outdoors
  2. Gas, electric, wood or charcoal
  3. In the park (Public), National Park or backyard
  4. Only men cook (Have to provide a drink for the cook)
  5. Mosquitoes or ants
  6. BYO drinks
  7. Use foil or no foil on the hotplate
  8. Games
- (h) Have you ever seen something surprising at a BBQ? For e.g.  
*I was surprised when I saw kangaroo meat being cooked on a BBQ (It was surprising and it made me feel surprised)*

- (i) What's the most surprising man made thing you have seen while driving in your country? For example: In Australia:
1. Big BBQ
  2. Big apple (pictured)
  3. Big banana
  4. Big prawn
  5. Big pineapple



- (j) Who would be a surprising guest you would invite to a BBQ?
1. Elvis Presley
  2. Jackie Chan
  3. God
- (k) Do you know the story of a big sacrifice (BBQ) held at Mt Carmel 950 BC? Many people were invited, saw and were surprised by who turned up and what they saw. (**mountain, fire, yelled, midday, sleep, fill, pour, water, three times**)

# 30. Fit as a Fiddle

## Medical Visit

- (a) Complete and then do **charades**. For example:  
*On Monday I go to work*  
*On Tuesday I play tennis*  
*On Wednesday I go dancing*  
*On Thursday I ..*
- (b) Role play in pairs  
**Becks:** *You look fit and healthy. What do you do to keep fit? (In pairs)*  
**Rocky:** *I play sport and I go jogging every night. I get plenty of sleep and I eat healthy food I do weights and I exercise 2 times a day.*
- (c) Which of the above do you want to do more of in the future?  
**Person 1:** *I want to eat healthier foods. I want to do more exercise etc.*
- (d) Role play a basketball coach asking his players about their state of health at training. Which of the player responses are positive (P) or negative (N) responses  
**Coach:** *How are you feeling at the moment?*  
**Player One:** *Fit as a fiddle* (P)  
**Player Two:** *Couldn't be better!*  
**Player Three:** *Ok I guess*  
**Player Four:** *I feel I'm coming down with something*  
**Player Five:** *I'm getting better*  
**Player Six:** *I've caught a cold*  
**Player Seven:** *I was sick but now I am on the mend*

(e) In pairs, share how you are feeling at the moment.

(f) Which of the following symptoms have you had?

1. A temperature or fever
2. A headache or migraine
3. Stomach cramps or sharp pains.
4. A pain in the side or a sore tummy.
5. A runny nose, blocked nose or a sore throat
6. An allergic reaction, swelling or a rash
7. The runs (diarrhea)
8. Feeling faint or dizziness



(g) Role play in different pairs visiting a doctor

- Doctor:** *How can I help you today?*  
**Patient:** *I'm not feeling so well.*  
**Doctor:** *What are your symptoms?*  
**Patient:** *...( )*  
**Doctor:** *Are you allergic to anything?*  
**Patient:** *...( )*  
**Doctor:** *Here is a prescription with the recommended dosage.*

(h) Do you know of any home remedies from your country to fix a problem? For example, "If you have a headache, you should eat eggs"

(i) Do you know any stories of famous doctors or healing stories from your country?

- China:** Physician Hua Tuo cured Emperor Cao Cao's headaches and treated Guan Yu illness.  
  1. Procrastinate and risk of being executed
  2. scraping the poison
  3. general aesthetic including *mafeisan* (麻沸散 lit. "cannabis boil powder")
- World:** General Naaman was miraculously healed of leprosy in the Jordan River (852-841BC). (**sick, went, publicly, dip, nothing**)

# 30. Fit as a Fiddle

## Medical Visit

- (a) Complete and then do **charades**. For example:  
*On Monday I go to work*  
*On Tuesday I play tennis*  
*On Wednesday I go dancing*  
*On Thursday I ..*
- (b) Role play in pairs  
**Becks:** *You look fit and healthy. What do you do to keep fit? (In pairs)*  
**Rocky:** *I play sport and I go jogging every night. I get plenty of sleep and I eat healthy food I do weights and I exercise 2 times a day.*
- (c) Which of the above do you want to do more of in the future?  
**Person 1:** *I want to eat healthier foods. I want to do more exercise etc.*
- (d) Role play a basketball coach asking his players about their state of health at training. Which of the player responses are positive (P) or negative (N) responses  
**Coach:** *How are you feeling at the moment?*  
**Player One:** *Fit as a fiddle* (P)  
**Player Two:** *Couldn't be better!*  
**Player Three:** *Ok I guess*  
**Player Four:** *I feel I'm coming down with something*  
**Player Five:** *I'm getting better*  
**Player Six:** *I've caught a cold*  
**Player Seven:** *I was sick but now I am on the mend*

(e) In pairs, share how you are feeling at the moment.

(f) Which of the following symptoms have you had?

1. A temperature or fever
2. A headache or migraine
3. Stomach cramps or sharp pains.
4. A pain in the side or a sore tummy.
5. A runny nose, blocked nose or a sore throat
6. An allergic reaction, swelling or a rash
7. The runs (diarrhea)
8. Feeling faint or dizziness



(g) Role play in different pairs visiting a doctor

- Doctor:** *How can I help you today?*  
**Patient:** *I'm not feeling so well.*  
**Doctor:** *What are your symptoms?*  
**Patient:** *...( )*  
**Doctor:** *Are you allergic to anything?*  
**Patient:** *...( )*  
**Doctor:** *Here is a prescription with the recommended dosage.*

(h) Do you know of any home remedies from your country to fix a problem? For example, "If you have a headache, you should eat eggs"

(i) Do you know any stories of famous doctors or healing stories from your country?

- China:** Physician Hua Tuo cured Emperor Cao Cao's headaches and treated Guan Yu illness.  
  1. Procrastinate and risk of being executed
  2. scraping the poison
  3. general aesthetic including *mafeisan* (麻沸散 lit. "cannabis boil powder")
- World:** General Naaman was miraculously healed of leprosy in the Jordan River (852-841BC). (**sick, went, publicly, dip, nothing**)

# 31. Give me the Chop

## Lending and Borrowing Tools/Money

- (a) Have you ever borrowed or lent something?
- (b) Guess 5 things that are in the teacher's toolbox.
- (c) Name 4 items you would find in a garden shed?
- (d) Here are some more tools and items people can borrow. Complete the following sentences. For example

An axe is used **for cutting** wood. (for verb + ing)  
An axe is used **to cut** wood. (to verb)

1. A **saw** is used to.....
  2. A **screwdriver** is used for fixing....
  3. A **spanner** is used to tighten ....
  4. A lawn mower is used to
  5. A tape measure is used for
  6. A hammer is used for....
- (e) Role play borrowing an axe from a friend
- Jack: Hi Kim, could I ask you a favour?  
Kim: Sure.  
Jack: I have to cut down some trees, could I borrow your axe? (Could you **lend me** your axe)  
Kim: Ok, but please be careful, can you return it by Friday?  
Jack: No problems. I will return it Thursday.

- (f) Have you ever lent something that hasn't been returned?
- (g) Role play somebody asking for a tool to be returned to them
- Kim: Excuse me Jack,  
Jack: Yes Kim  
Kim: Last week you borrowed my axe. I was wondering if you could return it as soon as possible?  
Jack: I'm terribly sorry Kim, I will return it straight away.

- (h) Have you ever borrowed money from a bank?



- (i) What are the major banks in your country?

- (j) How are these banks different from each other?

1. Bank fees and Interest rates
2. Number of branches, ATMs and use of agencies
3. Usual clients (e.g. Agricultural)
4. Answering machines
5. Range of services
6. History

- (k) Have you ever been in debt?

- (l) Do you know of a miraculous ending to a story of a man who borrowed an expensive axe head to build a temple but then accidentally lost the axe head in a river (850BC: Jordan River)? (**too small, meet, tree, cut, fell, stick**)

# 31. Give me the Chop

## Lending and Borrowing Tools/Money

- (a) Have you ever borrowed or lent something?
- (b) Guess 5 things that are in the teacher's toolbox.
- (c) Name 4 items you would find in a garden shed?
- (d) Here are some more tools and items people can borrow. Complete the following sentences. For example

An axe is used **for cutting** wood. (for verb + ing)  
An axe is used **to cut** wood. (to verb)

1. A **saw** is used to.....
  2. A **screwdriver** is used for fixing....
  3. A **spanner** is used to tighten ....
  4. A lawn mower is used to
  5. A tape measure is used for
  6. A hammer is used for....
- (e) Role play borrowing an axe from a friend
- Jack: Hi Kim, could I ask you a favour?  
Kim: Sure.  
Jack: I have to cut down some trees, could I borrow your axe? (Could you **lend me** your axe)  
Kim: Ok, but please be careful, can you return it by Friday?  
Jack: No problems. I will return it Thursday.

- (f) Have you ever lent something that hasn't been returned?

- (g) Role play somebody asking for a tool to be returned to them
- Kim: Excuse me Jack,  
Jack: Yes Kim  
Kim: Last week you borrowed my axe. I was wondering if you could return it as soon as possible?  
Jack: I'm terribly sorry Kim, I will return it straight away.

- (h) Have you ever borrowed money from a bank?



- (i) What are the major banks in your country?

- (j) How are these banks different from each other?

1. Bank fees and Interest rates
2. Number of branches, ATMs and use of agencies
3. Usual clients (e.g. Agricultural)
4. Answering machines
5. Range of services
6. History

- (k) Have you ever been in debt?

- (l) Do you know of a miraculous ending to a story of a man who borrowed an expensive axe head to build a temple but then accidentally lost the axe head in a river (850BC: Jordan River)? (**too small, meet, tree, cut, fell, stick**)

## 32. Just Another...

### Positive Work Environment

- (a) What is your favourite colour? Do you have a happy colour that you wear when you feel sad? Share with a partner.
- (b) In Thai Buddhist thinking, there is a different colour and position of Buddha for everyday of the week. Share what you know about these colours and positions.
- (c) Choose a colour that best describes different emotions or different days of the week. For example: Monday-grey-tired
- (d) Sometimes your amount of **sleep** effects your attitude and performance at work. How did you sleep last night?

#### 1. Good or not good

1. A little bit restless.
3. I tossed and turned all night
4. Okay. Not too bad
5. I slept soundly. Like a baby. Like a log

- (e) What positive things could you say to people when you see them every day at work? For example:
1. A big hello or good morning: *Hi Jack*
  2. A complement: *Wow! I love your haircut*
  3. A word of wisdom: *May **God bless you** today.  
You are not alone*
- (f) Role play greeting somebody at work positively at the beginning of the day.

*Positive man: Good morning Zorro. You look nice and fresh this morning, are you ready for the day?*

*Zorro: I sure am.*

*Positive man: What's happening today? Anything special?*

*Zorro: Nothing special. Nothing out of the ordinary.*

*Positive man: I hope you have a great day. I hope today is your best day ever*

- (g) Practice positively saying goodbye to somebody when you finish work.

*Superman: I'm off now. Thanks for (your help) today.*

*Cat woman: No problems*

*Superman: See you tomorrow. Have a good night.*

*Cat woman: You too.*

- (h) What activities in your life have become too routine that you know longer enjoy or you feel a sense of nothingness?

1. Going to work
2. Playing sport
3. Watching television
4. Drinking with my friends
5. Celebrating a cultural celebration
6. Going to the temple



- (i) Do you know any stories from your culture where people became so routine that they missed out in appreciating something special?

**China:** The poem "The Common Sight to the Sikong". *Poetic Sentiments* by Meng Qi of the Tang Dynasty (618 - 907). Sikong Li became so accustomed to things that nothing seemed special anymore

- (j) Sometimes we treat everyday as just another day. What do you do the same everyday or every year? *Another...*

meal job birthday  
story celebration death

- (k) Do you know Psalm 23 which is often quoted to encourage people to treat everyday as the most special day in their life? (**shepherd, pasture, stream, restores, eat, not fear**)

## 32. Just Another...

### Positive Work Environment

- (a) What is your favourite colour? Do you have a happy colour that you wear when you feel sad? Share with a partner.
- (b) In Thai Buddhist thinking, there is a different colour and position of Buddha for everyday of the week. Share what you know about these colours and positions.
- (c) Choose a colour that best describes different emotions or different days of the week. For example: Monday-grey-tired
- (d) Sometimes your amount of **sleep** effects your attitude and performance at work. How did you sleep last night?

#### 1. Good or not good

2. A little bit restless.
3. I tossed and turned all night
4. Okay. Not too bad
5. I slept soundly. Like a baby. Like a log

- (e) What positive things could you say to people when you see them every day at work? For example:
1. A big hello or good morning: *Hi Jack*
  2. A complement: *Wow! I love your haircut*
  3. A word of wisdom: *May **God bless you** today.  
You are not alone*
- (f) Role play greeting somebody at work positively at the beginning of the day.

*Positive man: Good morning Zorro. You look nice and fresh this morning, are you ready for the day?*

*Zorro: I sure am.*

*Positive man: What's happening today? Anything special?*

*Zorro: Nothing special. Nothing out of the ordinary.*

*Positive man: I hope you have a great day. I hope today is your best day ever*

- (g) Practice positively saying goodbye to somebody when you finish work.

*Superman: I'm off now. Thanks for (your help) today.*

*Cat woman: No problems*

*Superman: See you tomorrow. Have a good night.*

*Cat woman: You too.*

- (h) What activities in your life have become too routine that you know longer enjoy or you feel a sense of nothingness?

1. Going to work
2. Playing sport
3. Watching television
4. Drinking with my friends
5. Celebrating a cultural celebration
6. Going to the temple



- (i) Do you know any stories from your culture where people became so routine that they missed out in appreciating something special?

**China:** The poem "The Common Sight to the Sikong". *Poetic Sentiments* by Meng Qi of the Tang Dynasty (618 - 907). Sikong Li became so accustomed to things that nothing seemed special anymore

- (j) Sometimes we treat everyday as just another day. What do you do the same everyday or every year? *Another...*

meal job birthday  
story celebration death

- (k) Do you know Psalm 23 which is often quoted to encourage people to treat everyday as the most special day in their life? (**shepherd, pasture, stream, restores, eat, not fear**)

# 33. Just What I Needed

# 33. Just What I Needed

## Gifts

- (a) What **time** did you go to bed last night and get up this **morning**?
- (b) Role play nodding off while doing something. For e.g. nodding off while watching television. The rest of the class have to guess what you are doing when you nodded off.
- (c) In pairs, share with your partner a time when you...
1. nodded off.
  2. slept in very **late**.
  3. crashed. (I went to sleep as soon as my head hit the pillow and I slept for a long time).

- (d) Role play in fours three people who need to rest

Host: Do you want to play tennis this afternoon?

Tired person 1: I might go and have a lie down. (a nap/ short sleep)

Tired person 2: I might catch up on my emails

Tired person 3: I might just put my feet up for a while

- (e) Read through the following examples of what you might say when you need 10 minutes to refresh yourself during a break at a conference.

Host: Do you want some coffee?

Visitor 1: I might go outside and stretch/exercise my legs.

Visitor 2: I might go outside and get some fresh air.

Visitor 3: I might go outside and clear my head.

- (f) Sometimes at international conferences you receive gifts from other participants. Role play in pairs being wise in your response to receiving a gift that you don't really like.

Mayor of a City: Here is a gift for you.

Overseas Guest: Well thank you. That's very kind of you. It's just what I wanted.

- (g) In every country there are some gifts that are not wise to give. What gifts are not wise to give in your culture and explain why? For example:

**Japan:** A plant with roots on it.

**China:** An umbrella as a wedding gift.



- (h) What's an appropriate gift to give in your culture?

- (i) Do you know the story behind the song *Amazing Grace* where one very inappropriate (rude) man received a gift that would change his life forever?

*Amazing grace! How sweet the sound  
that saved a wretch like me!*

*I once was lost, but now am found*

*was blind but now I see (John Newton 1779)*

- (j) Do you the story of the amazing life changing gift given to a man born lame by two men named Peter and John in Jerusalem in 33-36AD. (**cannot walk, silver, gold, eyes, hand, jumped**)(Or the gift received by a robber on a cross 33AD) (**wrong, remember, paradise**)

## Gifts

- (a) What **time** did you go to bed last night and get up this **morning**?
- (b) Role play nodding off while doing something. For e.g. nodding off while watching television. The rest of the class have to guess what you are doing when you nodded off.
- (c) In pairs, share with your partner a time when you...
1. nodded off.
  2. slept in very **late**.
  3. crashed. (I went to sleep as soon as my head hit the pillow and I slept for a long time).

- (d) Role play in fours three people who need to rest

Host: Do you want to play tennis this afternoon?

Tired person 1: I might go and have a lie down. (a nap/ short sleep)

Tired person 2: I might catch up on my emails

Tired person 3: I might just put my feet up for a while

- (e) Read through the following examples of what you might say when you need 10 minutes to refresh yourself during a break at a conference.

Host: Do you want some coffee?

Visitor 1: I might go outside and stretch/exercise my legs.

Visitor 2: I might go outside and get some fresh air.

Visitor 3: I might go outside and clear my head.

- (f) Sometimes at international conferences you receive gifts from other participants. Role play in pairs being wise in your response to receiving a gift that you don't really like.

Mayor of a City: Here is a gift for you.

Overseas Guest: Well thank you. That's very kind of you. It's just what I wanted.

- (g) In every country there are some gifts that are not wise to give. What gifts are not wise to give in your culture and explain why? For example:

**Japan:** A plant with roots on it.

**China:** An umbrella as a wedding gift.



- (h) What's an appropriate gift to give in your culture?

- (i) Do you know the story behind the song *Amazing Grace* where one very inappropriate (rude) man received a gift that would change his life forever?

*Amazing grace! How sweet the sound  
that saved a wretch like me!*

*I once was lost, but now am found*

*was blind but now I see (John Newton 1779)*

- (j) Do you the story of the amazing life changing gift given to a man born lame by two men named Peter and John in Jerusalem in 33-36AD. (**cannot walk, silver, gold, eyes, hand, jumped**)(Or the gift received by a robber on a cross 33AD) (**wrong, remember, paradise**)

# 34. Mr and Mrs Right

## Wedding Photographer

(a) What do you like taking photos of?

(b) Choose one of the photos that have been laid out by the teacher and explain how this photo relates to how you feel about this class.



*I chose this photo as/ because I feel*

(c) Role play being on a tour bus discussing photography with the person next to you.

1. What type of camera do you have?
2. Are you interested in photography?
3. Are you very photogenic?
  - a. Yes I am.
  - b. No I am not.
  - c. Of course
  - d. Sometimes I am sometime I'm not
4. Do you like having your photo taken?
5. How many photos would you take in one week?

*On average I would take .....photos a week.*

(d) In groups of six, role play where three people want another person to take a group photo of them.

*Person 1: Let's have a group photo*

*Person 2: Great idea!*

*Person 3: Excuse me, could you take a photo off for us*

*Photographer: Sure (Everybody pose together in a group)*

1. Could you **bob down** a little bit
2. Could you move in a little bit
3. Could you squeeze in a little bit
4. I can't see the person in the second row
5. Could you **move over** a little bit
6. Could you cross your legs
7. Could you **fold** your arms
8. Could you crouch down a little bit

(e) Photos are very important at weddings. Share how couples have their wedding photos taken in your country.

### Vocabulary

1. Photographer
2. Studios, backgrounds, Wedding hall
3. Pose
4. Outfits
5. Wedding party: Groomsmen and Bridesmaids
6. Church service and Reception

(f) What things are peculiar to wedding ceremonies in your country? For example:

(g) What characteristics are important for your future spouse?

*I hope my future husband/wife will be....(generous etc..)*

1. What questions would a pre marriage counsellor ask a couple before they got married in your country?
2. Have you ever received advice from someone on whom you should marry or not marry?

*You should marry someone who ...*

(h) Do you know the advice King Lemuel (1000BC-800BC) received from his mother about who he should marry in a well known proverb? (**woman, helps, wise, fears, praised**)

# 34. Mr and Mrs Right

## Wedding Photographer

(a) What do you like taking photos of?

(b) Choose one of the photos that have been laid out by the teacher and explain how this photo relates to how you feel about this class.



*I chose this photo as/ because I feel*

(c) Role play being on a tour bus discussing photography with the person next to you.

1. What type of camera do you have?
2. Are you interested in photography?
3. Are you very photogenic?
  - a. Yes I am.
  - b. No I am not.
  - c. Of course
  - d. Sometimes I am sometime I'm not
4. Do you like having your photo taken?
5. How many photos would you take in one week?

*On average I would take .....photos a week.*

(d) In groups of six, role play where three people want another person to take a group photo of them.

*Person 1: Let's have a group photo*

*Person 2: Great idea!*

*Person 3: Excuse me, could you take a photo off for us*

*Photographer: Sure (Everybody pose together in a group)*

1. Could you **bob down** a little bit
2. Could you move in a little bit
3. Could you squeeze in a little bit
4. I can't see the person in the second row
5. Could you **move over** a little bit
6. Could you cross your legs
7. Could you **fold** your arms
8. Could you crouch down a little bit

(e) Photos are very important at weddings. Share how couples have their wedding photos taken in your country.

### Vocabulary

1. Photographer
2. Studios, backgrounds, Wedding hall
3. Pose
4. Outfits
5. Wedding party: Groomsmen and Bridesmaids
6. Church service and Reception

(f) What things are peculiar to wedding ceremonies in your country? For example:

(g) What characteristics are important for your future spouse?

*I hope my future husband/wife will be....(generous etc..)*

1. What questions would a pre marriage counsellor ask a couple before they got married in your country?
2. Have you ever received advice from someone on whom you should marry or not marry?

*You should marry someone who ...*

(h) Do you know the advice King Lemuel (1000BC-800BC) received from his mother about who he should marry in a well known proverb? (**woman, helps, wise, fears, praised**)

# 35. The Game of Life

## Agree to disagree: Games

- (a) Match these verbs and sports
- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. do (did)      | a. soccer   |
| 2. play (played) | b. swimming |
| 3. go (went)     | c. karate   |
- (b) In pairs, share what is your favorite sport/game.
- I **love** playing/going/doing ...
  - I **sometimes** watch/play ...
- (c) What activities do you have lined up for next week?  
*Next week I am going to ...*
- (d) Discuss the following sport questions in different pairs.
- In my country, the most popular summer/winter sport is... (sport) followed by ... (sport).
  - A good team is ... (choose one)
    - a team of champions. It relies on its stars
    - a champion team. It relies on good team work
  - A good team has ... (choose two)
    - a coach who knows his players well
    - a coach with a history of success
    - a well paid coach
- (e) Who is the best coach you have ever had?

- (f) Discuss a famous game in your country like Mah-jong
- Tiles made of ivory
  - Symbols and meaning
  - Aim of the game



- (g) Read through the following positive points about Mah-jong:
- If you play Mah-jong you will
    - make new friends
  - From my own personal experience (or in my opinion)
    - Mah-jong is a lot of fun...
    - Mah-jong can be played by people from all ages
  - Research shows playing Mah-jong
    - is very stimulating for the brain
  - Experts believe that people who play Mah-jong
    - will be mentally healthier than people who don't.
  - Everybody in China knows Mah-jong is
    - a great game
  - Therefore, you have to say Mah-jong is one of the best games in the world to play.
- (h) Read through the following negative points about Mah-jong
- I can understand what you are saying but ...
    - we all know people who play Mah-jong gamble a lot
  - You are somewhat correct when you say Mah-jong is
    - good for you mentally but not physically.
  - You say that Mah-jong is a great game that might be true.
    - but it takes up a lot of time to play one game.
- (i) In groups of four, discuss "One of the best games in the world is ...". Two of you agree and two of you disagree.
- (j) Let's look at a more difficult game, the game of life, where we are the players and death is the biggest opposition we face. Discuss this quote from an ancient text 950BC.
- The day of **death** is better than the day of **birth**. It is better to go to a house of mourning than to go to a **house** of feasting, for death is the **destiny** of **everyone** ....*
- (k) Do you know a coach in the game of life who...?
- knows** how **many hairs** are on each players head.
  - has history of **success** over his team's number one opposition: death!

# 35. The Game of Life

## Agree to disagree: Games

- (a) Match these verbs and sports
- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. do (did)      | a. soccer   |
| 2. play (played) | b. swimming |
| 3. go (went)     | c. karate   |
- (b) In pairs, share what is your favorite sport/game.
- I **love** playing/going/doing ...
  - I **sometimes** watch/play ...
- (c) What activities do you have lined up for next week?  
*Next week I am going to ...*
- (d) Discuss the following sport questions in different pairs.
- In my country, the most popular summer/winter sport is... (sport) followed by ... (sport).
  - A good team is ... (choose one)
    - a team of champions. It relies on its stars
    - a champion team. It relies on good team work
  - A good team has ... (choose two)
    - a coach who knows his players well
    - a coach with a history of success
    - a well paid coach
- (e) Who is the best coach you have ever had?

- (f) Discuss a famous game in your country like Mah-jong
- Tiles made of ivory
  - Symbols and meaning
  - Aim of the game



- (g) Read through the following positive points about Mah-jong:
- If you play Mah-jong you will
    - make new friends
  - From my own personal experience (or in my opinion)
    - Mah-jong is a lot of fun...
    - Mah-jong can be played by people from all ages
  - Research shows playing Mah-jong
    - is very stimulating for the brain
  - Experts believe that people who play Mah-jong
    - will be mentally healthier than people who don't.
  - Everybody in China knows Mah-jong is
    - a great game
  - Therefore, you have to say Mah-jong is one of the best games in the world to play.
- (h) Read through the following negative points about Mah-jong
- I can understand what you are saying but ...
    - we all know people who play Mah-jong gamble a lot
  - You are somewhat correct when you say Mah-jong is
    - good for you mentally but not physically.
  - You say that Mah-jong is a great game that might be true.
    - but it takes up a lot of time to play one game.
- (i) In groups of four, discuss "One of the best games in the world is ...". Two of you agree and two of you disagree.
- (j) Let's look at a more difficult game, the game of life, where we are the players and death is the biggest opposition we face. Discuss this quote from an ancient text 950BC.
- The day of **death** is better than the day of **birth**. It is better to go to a house of mourning than to go to a **house** of feasting, for death is the **destiny** of **everyone** ....*
- (k) Do you know a coach in the game of life who...?
- knows** how **many hairs** are on each players head.
  - has history of **success** over his team's number one opposition: death!

# 36. Fit for a King

## Tour Guide of Royalty

- (a) Draw part of a famous structure in the world For example: The Eiffel tower, the rest of the group have to try guess what it is.
- (b) In pairs, discuss a famous place you have visited.

*Pim:* What is the most famous building you have visited?  
(Palace, castle..)

*Neng:* I have been to ..( ) It was very...( )

1. interesting and sentimental
2. historical and educational
3. stimulating and intriguing

- (c) Describe any famous places for kings queens or emperors in your country and describe what they did there? For example:

**China:** The Temple of Heaven  
sacrifices no idols  
fasted bad omen  
on his knees symbols  
number 9 squares  
circles



- (d) Welcome to tour guide training school.  
Play *Simon Says* for the following words
- |                 |                |                      |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| Turn left/right | See this door  | Look to your left    |
| Duck your head  | Come this way  | Look to your right   |
| Mind your head  | Mind your step | Look here/over there |

- (e) Role play in groups of four being a tour guide around your classroom. The teacher will role model first (The tour guide leader can change his role by passing the flag).

1. Welcome to today's tour of ... ( )
2. My name is ... ( )
3. I am your tour guide today.
4. This afternoon I want to show you around this room/place
5. Before we begin, I want to give you a brief history about this temple (classroom). It was first built in... by ...
6. Let's now begin our tour.
7. On your right, you can see where the teacher/Emperor.( )
8. Over there is (where) ... ( )
9. If you look ... (.), you will notice ... ( )
10. Interesting to note *is the emperor used to eat here.*
11. If you look... (.) you can see... ( )
12. Let's go now to... ( )
13. Please follow me through this doorway. Mind your step.
14. For your information, this room/temple is closed at night.
15. That concludes our tour for today.
16. Thank you for your attention, I hope it has been interesting and enjoyable for you.

- (f) Nominate one person in a group of 4 to be a tour guide around a royal palace (Give them a flag).

- (g) Many tours are around royal palaces. Who has been the most significant king or queen in history and how were they different from other kings and queens?

- (h) What do you know about a coming future king who was prophesised many times in detail including 600BC?

But he was **pierced** for our transgressions, He was crushed for our iniquities Chinese Character Righteousness

義

# 36. Fit for a King

## Tour Guide of Royalty

- (a) Draw part of a famous structure in the world For example: The Eiffel tower, the rest of the group have to try guess what it is.
- (b) In pairs, discuss a famous place you have visited.

*Pim:* What is the most famous building you have visited?  
(Palace, castle..)

*Neng:* I have been to ..( ) It was very...( )

1. interesting and sentimental
2. historical and educational
3. stimulating and intriguing

- (c) Describe any famous places for kings queens or emperors in your country and describe what they did there? For example:

**China:** The Temple of Heaven  
sacrifices no idols  
fasted bad omen  
on his knees symbols  
number 9 squares  
circles



- (d) Welcome to tour guide training school.  
Play *Simon Says* for the following words
- |                 |                |                      |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| Turn left/right | See this door  | Look to your left    |
| Duck your head  | Come this way  | Look to your right   |
| Mind your head  | Mind your step | Look here/over there |

- (e) Role play in groups of four being a tour guide around your classroom. The teacher will role model first (The tour guide leader can change his role by passing the flag).

1. Welcome to today's tour of ... ( )
2. My name is ... ( )
3. I am your tour guide today.
4. This afternoon I want to show you around this room/place
5. Before we begin, I want to give you a brief history about this temple (classroom). It was first built in... by ...
6. Let's now begin our tour.
7. On your right, you can see where the teacher/Emperor.( )
8. Over there is (where) ... ( )
9. If you look ... (.), you will notice ... ( )
10. Interesting to note *is the emperor used to eat here.*
11. If you look... (.) you can see... ( )
12. Let's go now to... ( )
13. Please follow me through this doorway. Mind your step.
14. For your information, this room/temple is closed at night.
15. That concludes our tour for today.
16. Thank you for your attention, I hope it has been interesting and enjoyable for you.

- (f) Nominate one person in a group of 4 to be a tour guide around a royal palace (Give them a flag).

- (g) Many tours are around royal palaces. Who has been the most significant king or queen in history and how were they different from other kings and queens?

- (h) What do you know about a coming future king who was prophesised many times in detail including 600BC?

But he was **pierced** for our transgressions, He was crushed for our iniquities Chinese Character Righteousness

義

# 37. Closure

## Comparisons

- (a) In groups of three, compare yourself to each other.
1. **tall** taller tallest
  2. creative more creative most creative
- (b) Share about mountains in your country.
1. rugged more rugged most rugged
  2. picturesque more picturesque most picturesque
  3. **high** higher highest
  4. highest second most highest third most highest
- (c) Share about food in your country.
1. **spicy** spicier spiciest
  2. tasty tastier most tasty
- (d) Which city is ...?
1. **big** bigger the biggest
  2. **old** older the oldest
  3. **beautiful** more beautiful most beautiful
  4. the biggest city second biggest city third biggest city
  5. livable more livable the most livable
  6. viable more viable the most viable
  7. progressive more progressive most progressive
  8. populated more populated most populated

- (e) Make a sentence about your country using these words

1. good
2. better
3. best



## Best Contribution

- (f) What is the best project that has been undertaken in your country?
- (g) Have you got any major projects in your country that...?
1. have never been completed
  2. were just a pipedream
  3. have been very abstract
  4. are white elephant projects
  5. have become run down or obsolete.
- (h) Which person in your country has made the greatest contribution domestically and internationally?
- (i) If you could contribute anything to the world, what would you do?
1. A soccer ball for every child
  2. Food for everybody
  3. A free holiday for everybody
  4. No more poverty
  5. No more death
  6. No more tears
  7. Other ....
- (j) An ancient text (760-673BC) highlights a contribution that has been made for all people in every nation. Discuss with a partner the positives about this quote.

*He will swallow up death forever. He will **wipe away the tears from all faces***

# 37. Closure

## Comparisons

- (a) In groups of three, compare yourself to each other.
1. **tall** taller tallest
  2. creative more creative most creative
- (b) Share about mountains in your country.
1. rugged more rugged most rugged
  2. picturesque more picturesque most picturesque
  3. **high** higher highest
  4. highest second most highest third most highest
- (c) Share about food in your country.
1. **spicy** spicier spiciest
  2. tasty tastier most tasty
- (d) Which city is ...?
1. **big** bigger the biggest
  2. **old** older the oldest
  3. **beautiful** more beautiful most beautiful
  4. the biggest city second biggest city third biggest city
  5. livable more livable the most livable
  6. viable more viable the most viable
  7. progressive more progressive most progressive
  8. populated more populated most populated

- (e) Make a sentence about your country using these words

1. good
2. better
3. best



## Best Contribution

- (f) What is the best project that has been undertaken in your country?
- (g) Have you got any major projects in your country that...?
1. have never been completed
  2. were just a pipedream
  3. have been very abstract
  4. are white elephant projects
  5. have become run down or obsolete.
- (h) Which person in your country has made the greatest contribution domestically and internationally?
- (i) If you could contribute anything to the world, what would you do?
1. A soccer ball for every child
  2. Food for everybody
  3. A free holiday for everybody
  4. No more poverty
  5. No more death
  6. No more tears
  7. Other ....
- (j) An ancient text (760-673BC) highlights a contribution that has been made for all people in every nation. Discuss with a partner the positives about this quote.

*He will swallow up death forever. He will **wipe away the tears from all faces***

## 38. Any More?

### Welcoming a Guest

- (a) What **rooms** are usually found in a normal house/**unit** in your country?
- (b) What gift would you take if you were visiting someone's **house**?
- (c) What would you would say to a visitor to your house? For e.g.



Host: *Welcome to my house*

Larry: *Thankyou for inviting me. I brought some drinks*

Host: *Thankyou:*

1. *Please make yourself at home*
2. *Please have (take) a seat.*
3. *Would you like a **cup of tea** or coffee? (Tea please)  
How do you have it? (Black no sugar thanks)*
4. *Would you like something to drink? (I'm ok)*
5. *Help yourself to any food in the refrigerator.*

Larry: *Excuse me, can you tell me where the **toilet** is.*

### Use of leftover food

- (d) Which of these actions during and after a meal are appropriate (A) or inappropriate (I) in your country?
1. Leaving some food on the **plate** (A or I)
  2. Banging the **cutlery** whilst eating
  3. Using serviettes (**paper napkins**) as a handkerchief
  4. Scraping all the food off your plate into a container
  5. Leaving no food on your plate
  6. Burping during a meal
  7. Saying 'grace' after the meal
  8. Asking for seconds (another helping)
  9. Asking for a take away container for leftovers
- (e) What do you do with leftover food? For example  
*We put leftovers on a plate and cover it with plastic wrap*
- (f) Practice saying 'seconds'! if people want to eat more food.
- (g) In pairs, practice asking for some more food.  
*Excuse me, could I have another helping please?*
- (h) Have you ever asked for a doggie bag or take away/out container for leftover food in a restaurant?

### Use of leftover material

- (i) Discuss how Min Nong's (**Chinese**) poem relates to leftovers?  
*At noon they wield their hoe. Their sweat drips on to soil. Each bowl of rice, who knows. Every single grain is exhausting.*
- (j) What items are recycled, value or not wasted in your country?
- (k) Discuss this ancient quote (760-673BC) about leftover material used to construct temples and idols

*Half of the **wood** he burns in the **fire**; over it he prepares his meal, he roasts his **meat** and eats his fill. He also warms himself and says, "Ah! I am **warm**; I see the fire."*

*<sup>17</sup> From the rest he makes a god, his idol; he **bows down** to it and worships.....**No one stops to think!** He prays to it and says, "**Save me!** You are my god!"*

## 38. Any More?

### Welcoming a Guest

- (a) What **rooms** are usually found in a normal house/**unit** in your country?
- (b) What gift would you take if you were visiting someone's **house**?
- (c) What would you would say to a visitor to your house? For e.g.



Host: *Welcome to my house*

Larry: *Thankyou for inviting me. I brought some drinks*

Host: *Thankyou:*

1. *Please make yourself at home*
2. *Please have (take) a seat.*
3. *Would you like a **cup of tea** or coffee? (Tea please)  
How do you have it? (Black no sugar thanks)*
4. *Would you like something to drink? (I'm ok)*
5. *Help yourself to any food in the refrigerator.*

Larry: *Excuse me, can you tell me where the **toilet** is.*

### Use of leftover food

- (d) Which of these actions during and after a meal are appropriate (A) or inappropriate (I) in your country?
1. Leaving some food on the **plate** (A or I)
  2. Banging the **cutlery** whilst eating
  3. Using serviettes (**paper napkins**) as a handkerchief
  4. Scraping all the food off your plate into a container
  5. Leaving no food on your plate
  6. Burping during a meal
  7. Saying 'grace' after the meal
  8. Asking for seconds (another helping)
  9. Asking for a take away container for leftovers
- (e) What do you do with leftover food? For example  
*We put leftovers on a plate and cover it with plastic wrap*
- (f) Practice saying 'seconds'! if people want to eat more food.
- (g) In pairs, practice asking for some more food.  
*Excuse me, could I have another helping please?*
- (h) Have you ever asked for a doggie bag or take away/out container for leftover food in a restaurant?

### Use of leftover material

- (i) Discuss how Min Nong's (**Chinese**) poem relates to leftovers?  
*At noon they wield their hoe. Their sweat drips on to soil. Each bowl of rice, who knows. Every single grain is exhausting.*
- (j) What items are recycled, value or not wasted in your country?
- (k) Discuss this ancient quote (760-673BC) about leftover material used to construct temples and idols

*Half of the **wood** he burns in the **fire**; over it he prepares his meal, he roasts his **meat** and eats his fill. He also warms himself and says, "Ah! I am **warm**; I see the fire."*

*<sup>17</sup> From the rest he makes a god, his idol; he **bows down** to it and worships.....**No one stops to think!** He prays to it and says, "**Save me!** You are my god!"*

# 39. Just Like Heaven

## Gardening Instructions

- (a) Draw a picture of a flower that has three big petals. On each petal, draw and share the following

1. Your favourite **hobby**
2. Your favourite fruit or **vegetable**
3. Your favourite **flower** or tree



- (b) Do you like gardening? Role play in pairs

Person 1: *Wow! I love **those** flowers*

Person 2: *Don't those flowers look beautiful*

Person 1: *Doesn't **that** tree look amazing.*

- (c) Take in turns dramatising the following gardening words.

planting (sowing)	<b>digging up</b>	<b>watering</b>	weeding
whipper snipping	spraying	cutting back	mowing
trimming	moving	shovelling	raking
mulching	fertilizing	pruning	grafting

- (d) Give instructions on how to grow a flower

1. First (I/we/you) dig up and prepare the soil.
2. Then (I/we/you) ... ( )
3. After that (I/we/you) ... ( )
4. Next ... ( )
5. Finally ... ( )

- (e) Ask your partner to help you in the garden

Violet: *Excuse me Daisy, can you **water** the lawn for me?*

Daisy: ***(Can)** Sure, I can do that*

**or** ***(Can't)** I am a little busy at the moment, can you ask someone else?*

- (f) If you have 'a green thumb', any gardening work you do will succeed. Do you know anybody that has 'a green thumb'?

- (g) Match the following words to pictures of gardens. (See Q (I))

beautiful	colourful	peaceful.	dry	abundant.
barren	alive	dead	exotic	Japanese

- (h) Marco Polo described the gardens of Suzhou in **China** as "The Venice of the Orient". Share about the location and history of famous gardens and parks in your country. For e.g.

- (i) Match these garden items and their meanings.

- |               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1. water      | a. strength of will          |
| 2. rocks      | b. wisdom                    |
| 3. bamboo     | c. wisdom and immortality    |
| 4. plum trees | d. strength and morality     |
| 5. pine trees | e. the arteries of the earth |

- (j) What items and plants can you usually find in a garden? In groups of three, construct and describe your own garden.

- (k) Ji Ching a 15<sup>th</sup> century garden designer said:

*"The garden is created by the human hand, but should appear as if created by heaven".*

Has there ever been a perfect heavenly garden?

- (l) During the Song dynasty, the most expensive object in the empire was the sculptural Taihu rock. It is only extracted from Tai Lake and represents wisdom and immortality. Do you think we now live in an immortal, eternal garden?

- (m) Compare pictures of the following 3 landscapes of time (2 are perfect gardens) and learn the story of the valley of dry bones.

1. The Garden of Eden: The beginning of time
2. The eternal garden at the end of time.
3. The Valley of Dry Bones 580BC which represent the dry bones in our heart (30AD) (**hand, brought, led, full, dry, live, breath**)

- (n) What caused the change between the landscapes and how do you respond knowing this information: *First I have to ... ( )*

# 39. Just Like Heaven

## Gardening Instructions

- (a) Draw a picture of a flower that has three big petals. On each petal, draw and share the following

1. Your favourite **hobby**
2. Your favourite fruit or **vegetable**
3. Your favourite **flower** or tree



- (b) Do you like gardening? Role play in pairs

Person 1: *Wow! I love **those** flowers*

Person 2: *Don't those flowers look beautiful*

Person 1: *Doesn't **that** tree look amazing.*

- (c) Take in turns dramatising the following gardening words.

planting (sowing)	<b>digging up</b>	<b>watering</b>	weeding
whipper snipping	spraying	cutting back	mowing
trimming	moving	shovelling	raking
mulching	fertilizing	pruning	grafting

- (d) Give instructions on how to grow a flower

1. First (I/we/you) dig up and prepare the soil.
2. Then (I/we/you) ... ( )
3. After that (I/we/you) ... ( )
4. Next ... ( )
5. Finally ... ( )

- (e) Ask your partner to help you in the garden

Violet: *Excuse me Daisy, can you **water** the lawn for me?*

Daisy: ***(Can)** Sure, I can do that*

**or** ***(Can't)** I am a little busy at the moment, can you ask someone else?*

- (f) If you have 'a green thumb', any gardening work you do will succeed. Do you know anybody that has 'a green thumb'?

- (g) Match the following words to pictures of gardens. (See Q (I))

beautiful	colourful	peaceful.	dry	abundant.
barren	alive	dead	exotic	Japanese

- (h) Marco Polo described the gardens of Suzhou in **China** as "The Venice of the Orient". Share about the location and history of famous gardens and parks in your country. For e.g.

- (i) Match these garden items and their meanings.

- |               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1. water      | a. strength of will          |
| 2. rocks      | b. wisdom                    |
| 3. bamboo     | c. wisdom and immortality    |
| 4. plum trees | d. strength and morality     |
| 5. pine trees | e. the arteries of the earth |

- (j) What items and plants can you usually find in a garden? In groups of three, construct and describe your own garden.

- (k) Ji Ching a 15<sup>th</sup> century garden designer said:

*"The garden is created by the human hand, but should appear as if created by heaven".*

Has there ever been a perfect heavenly garden?

- (l) During the Song dynasty, the most expensive object in the empire was the sculptural Taihu rock. It is only extracted from Tai Lake and represents wisdom and immortality. Do you think we now live in an immortal, eternal garden?

- (m) Compare pictures of the following 3 landscapes of time (2 are perfect gardens) and learn the story of the valley of dry bones.

1. The Garden of Eden: The beginning of time
2. The eternal garden at the end of time.
3. The Valley of Dry Bones 580BC which represent the dry bones in our heart (30AD) (**hand, brought, led, full, dry, live, breath**)

- (n) What caused the change between the landscapes and how do you respond knowing this information: *First I have to ... ( )*

# 40. What's Cooking?

## Job Interview

(a) Role play in threes

Li: Are you good at cooking?

Wu: Yes I am. (I'm not)

Pi: So am I. (Neither am I)

Li: Do you like spicy food?

Wu: Yes I do (No I don't)

Pi: So do I (Neither do I)



(b) Match than memorize 10 kitchen utensils to 10 labels.

(c) What 5 ingredients do you need to make a good spicy dish?

**China:** Hot pot



(d) How hot should the water be?

luke warm    bubbling    simmering    boiling hot

(e) Imagine you are a chef, what questions would you be asked at a job interview for a chef position in a hot pot restaurant?

(f) Choose 2 verbs to describe your previous work experience.

In my last job I helped to **lead** a team of 20 people.

sell /buy	serve	call/talk	stack/clean
negotiate	prepare	supervise	establish
encourage	organize	initiate	develop
concentrate	manage	reduce	expand
plan	motivate	launch	utilise

(g) Choose the best answers in the following job interview

1. Can you make a good hot pot?

a. No I can't

b. No, I can't but I am willing to learn

2. Why are you the best person for this job?

a. There are a lot of good people for this job, but I think I am very creative, passionate and reliable.

b. I am the most creative, passionate and reliable person for this job

3. How would you describe your personality?

a. Some people say I am very hard working

b. I am very approachable and teachable

c. People have found me to be very approachable and teachable. I also enjoy working with people.

d. I find it easy to establish a quick rapport with people

4. Do you have any experience for this position?

a. I have never cooked Chinese food.

b. I don't have any direct experience but in my last job I had to work in a team and handle cash, which I think is important for this position.

(h) In groups of three, role-play going for a job as a cook in a hot pot restaurant. Two people are the interviewers.

(i) Super large hot pots are used in the Japanese Autumn Imoni Festival where people eat imoni from a gigantic iron kettle.

Other large hot pots (furnaces) are used for melting material for statues etc. Have you visited a large statue made of gold?

(j) Do you know any stories where people were thrown into hot spas or furnaces because of their belief? For example

**World:** Three men, who would have done well in any job interview, were thrown into a furnace because of their belief (Babylon 570 BC) (**gold, worship, tied**)

# 40. What's Cooking?

## Job Interview

(a) Role play in threes

Li: Are you good at cooking?

Wu: Yes I am. (I'm not)

Pi: So am I. (Neither am I)

Li: Do you like spicy food?

Wu: Yes I do (No I don't)

Pi: So do I (Neither do I)



(b) Match than memorize 10 kitchen utensils to 10 labels.

(c) What 5 ingredients do you need to make a good spicy dish?

**China:** Hot pot



(d) How hot should the water be?

luke warm    bubbling    simmering    boiling hot

(e) Imagine you are a chef, what questions would you be asked at a job interview for a chef position in a hot pot restaurant?

(f) Choose 2 verbs to describe your previous work experience.

In my last job I helped to **lead** a team of 20 people.

sell /buy	serve	call/talk	stack/clean
negotiate	prepare	supervise	establish
encourage	organize	initiate	develop
concentrate	manage	reduce	expand
plan	motivate	launch	utilise

(g) Choose the best answers in the following job interview

1. Can you make a good hot pot?

a. No I can't

b. No, I can't but I am willing to learn

2. Why are you the best person for this job?

a. There are a lot of good people for this job, but I think I am very creative, passionate and reliable.

b. I am the most creative, passionate and reliable person for this job

3. How would you describe your personality?

a. Some people say I am very hard working

b. I am very approachable and teachable

c. People have found me to be very approachable and teachable. I also enjoy working with people.

d. I find it easy to establish a quick rapport with people

4. Do you have any experience for this position?

a. I have never cooked Chinese food.

b. I don't have any direct experience but in my last job I had to work in a team and handle cash, which I think is important for this position.

(h) In groups of three, role-play going for a job as a cook in a hot pot restaurant. Two people are the interviewers.

(i) Super large hot pots are used in the Japanese Autumn Imoni Festival where people eat imoni from a gigantic iron kettle.

Other large hot pots (furnaces) are used for melting material for statues etc. Have you visited a large statue made of gold?

(j) Do you know any stories where people were thrown into hot spas or furnaces because of their belief? For example

**World:** Three men, who would have done well in any job interview, were thrown into a furnace because of their belief (Babylon 570 BC) (**gold, worship, tied**)

## Selling Healthy Market Food



- (a) Write a letter on the back of a person with your finger, the person has to guess which letter it is.
- (b) Vitamins are classified by letter numbers such as Vitamin A, B1 etc. As a class, brainstorm all the possible vitamins on the board and name the **food items** that contain that vitamin
- (c) In the following table, content and outcomes are correctly matched but the food type are incorrectly matched. Match the correct food type to the content and outcome

Food type	Content	Outcome
1. bread	high in calcium	stronger bones
2. carrots	high in B2	growth
3. milk	high in starch	fatty
4. eggs	high in salt	blood pressure
5. candy (lollies)	high in sugar	holes in your teeth
6. soy sauce	vitamin A	better eyesight
7. bananas	high in cholesterol	heart attack
8. lettuce	vitamin e	Red blood cells
9. steak	vitamin B6	good for the brain

- (d) In pairs, role play one person being a food seller giving out free sample cups to passing by customers. For example

*Food seller: Hello, how are you today?*

*Customer: Fine thanks*

*Food seller: Would you like to try some orange juice? It is very healthy for you. It's good for your body/health. It's high in vitamin C. If you drink lots of orange juice, you will feel healthier.*

## Future Predictions

- (e) Share a positive prediction about consuming a food type that is good for your health. For example:

*Orange juice is high in vitamin C. If you drink lots of orange juice you will have less colds and feel healthier.*

- (f) Share some likely negative predictions about consuming something in excess that is not good for your health

*Person 1: If you eat too much ...() you will ...()*

*Person 2: If you drink too much ...() you will...()*

- (g) Do you have any special healthy food or drink that your country is famous for?
- (h) Share in the future what things you want to do to improve your health physically, mentally and spiritually
- In the future I want to eat/drink more/less
  - In the future I want to do more...
- (i) What are the future predictions for your country or people in your country?

*Person 1: We currently have a problem with ....()  
If we keep/continue to ...()*

- (j) Sometimes it is too late to change something and a negative result is likely to happen. Often in this situation, the saying *the writing on the wall* is used. Do you know the origin of this saying? (**eat, drink, king, gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, stone, worship, goblets (cups) temple, hand, write, wall**)

## Selling Healthy Market Food



- (a) Write a letter on the back of a person with your finger, the person has to guess which letter it is.
- (b) Vitamins are classified by letter numbers such as Vitamin A, B1 etc. As a class, brainstorm all the possible vitamins on the board and name the **food items** that contain that vitamin
- (c) In the following table, content and outcomes are correctly matched but the food type are incorrectly matched. Match the correct food type to the content and outcome

Food type	Content	Outcome
1. bread	high in calcium	stronger bones
2. carrots	high in B2	growth
3. milk	high in starch	fatty
4. eggs	high in salt	blood pressure
5. candy (lollies)	high in sugar	holes in your teeth
6. soy sauce	vitamin A	better eyesight
7. bananas	high in cholesterol	heart attack
8. lettuce	vitamin e	Red blood cells
9. steak	vitamin B6	good for the brain

- (d) In pairs, role play one person being a food seller giving out free sample cups to passing by customers. For example

*Food seller: Hello, how are you today?*

*Customer: Fine thanks*

*Food seller: Would you like to try some orange juice? It is very healthy for you. It's good for your body/health. It's high in vitamin C. If you drink lots of orange juice, you will feel healthier.*

## Future Predictions

- (e) Share a positive prediction about consuming a food type that is good for your health. For example:

*Orange juice is high in vitamin C. If you drink lots of orange juice you will have less colds and feel healthier.*

- (f) Share some likely negative predictions about consuming something in excess that is not good for your health

*Person 1: If you eat too much ...() you will ...()*

*Person 2: If you drink too much ...() you will...()*

- (g) Do you have any special healthy food or drink that your country is famous for?
- (h) Share in the future what things you want to do to improve your health physically, mentally and spiritually
- In the future I want to eat/drink more/less
  - In the future I want to do more...
- (i) What are the future predictions for your country or people in your country?

*Person 1: We currently have a problem with ....()  
If we keep/continue to ...()*

- (j) Sometimes it is too late to change something and a negative result is likely to happen. Often in this situation, the saying *the writing on the wall* is used. Do you know the origin of this saying? (**eat, drink, king, gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, stone, worship, goblets (cups) temple, hand, write, wall**)

# 42. Who Me?

## Borrowing / Accusations

- (a) If someone gave you a million dollars, what would you do?
1. Buy a **house, car** or a **boat**
  2. Go on a **holiday**
  3. Give it all away
  4. Pay off a mortgage
  5. Buy a white elephant
  6. Travel around the world
  7. Resign from my job
  8. Divide it amongst my family

- (b) Have you ever borrowed something? For example:
1. money
  2. a car
  3. CD or DVD

- (c) Role play borrowing a DVD from somebody.

Jim: Ken, can I borrow your DVD?

Ken: Sure Jim, make sure you return it by Monday.

Jim: Thanks Jim.

- (d) What's the difference between...?

1. by Monday
2. before Monday
3. until Monday

- (e) Role-play a situation of a simple misunderstanding of being falsely accused of something that didn't happen.

Ken: You haven't returned my DVD, I'm disappointed in you.

Jim: Excuse me Ken, I returned it yesterday.

Ken: Are you sure?

Jim: Definitely. You have to believe me, I put it on the kitchen table. I'm telling the truth!

Ken: I'm sorry, I thought you hadn't returned it.

- (f) Role-play a situation of a simple misunderstanding.

Masami: You ate my lunch. I'm very angry with you!

Ashley: Oh, I thought you said I could. I'm sorry.

Masami: That's ok, just a simple misunderstanding.

- (g) Have you ever been falsely accused?

- (h) Why do some people falsely accuse other people of something they didn't do?

1. Simple misunderstanding
2. Jealous of somebody
3. Feel threatened
4. Ignorant of the truth



- (g) Have you ever been falsely accused?

- (h) Why do some people falsely accuse other people of something they didn't do?

1. Simple misunderstanding
2. Jealous of somebody
3. Feel threatened
4. Ignorant of the truth

- (i) Have you ever been jealous of someone?

- (j) Do you know any stories from your culture of somebody who was falsely accused or misunderstood? For example:

**China:** Fengmeng tried to prosper by accusing Chang' E

1. Jealous of...
2. Elixir
3. Became immortal

**World:** Daniel was falsely accused and fed to the lions (Babylon 620-540 BC). (**120, best, honest, prayer, throw, sleep, close, near, overjoyed**)

# 42. Who Me?

## Borrowing / Accusations

- (a) If someone gave you a million dollars, what would you do?
1. Buy a **house, car** or a **boat**
  2. Go on a **holiday**
  3. Give it all away
  4. Pay off a mortgage
  5. Buy a white elephant
  6. Travel around the world
  7. Resign from my job
  8. Divide it amongst my family

- (b) Have you ever borrowed something? For example:
1. money
  2. a car
  3. CD or DVD

- (c) Role play borrowing a DVD from somebody.

Jim: Ken, can I borrow your DVD?

Ken: Sure Jim, make sure you return it by Monday.

Jim: Thanks Jim.

- (d) What's the difference between...?

1. by Monday
2. before Monday
3. until Monday

- (e) Role-play a situation of a simple misunderstanding of being falsely accused of something that didn't happen.

Ken: You haven't returned my DVD, I'm disappointed in you.

Jim: Excuse me Ken, I returned it yesterday.

Ken: Are you sure?

Jim: Definitely. You have to believe me, I put it on the kitchen table. I'm telling the truth!

Ken: I'm sorry, I thought you hadn't returned it.

- (f) Role-play a situation of a simple misunderstanding.

Masami: You ate my lunch. I'm very angry with you!

Ashley: Oh, I thought you said I could. I'm sorry.

Masami: That's ok, just a simple misunderstanding.

- (g) Have you ever been falsely accused?

- (h) Why do some people falsely accuse other people of something they didn't do?

1. Simple misunderstanding
2. Jealous of somebody
3. Feel threatened
4. Ignorant of the truth



- (g) Have you ever been falsely accused?

- (h) Why do some people falsely accuse other people of something they didn't do?

1. Simple misunderstanding
2. Jealous of somebody
3. Feel threatened
4. Ignorant of the truth

- (i) Have you ever been jealous of someone?

- (j) Do you know any stories from your culture of somebody who was falsely accused or misunderstood? For example:

**China:** Fengmeng tried to prosper by accusing Chang' E

1. Jealous of...
2. Elixir
3. Became immortal

**World:** Daniel was falsely accused and fed to the lions (Babylon 620-540 BC). (**120, best, honest, prayer, throw, sleep, close, near, overjoyed**)

# 43. Now is the Time

## Countable / Uncountable

(a) Share something about yourself by combining the following pairs, for example, **Last night (week, month, year) I ate too much food** or **I know lots of people from China.**

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. too much   | a. rice           |
| 2. lots of    | b. money          |
| 3. plenty of  | c. energy         |
| 4. too many   | d. food           |
| 5. heaps of   | e. time           |
| 6. not enough | f. water          |
| 7. enough     | g. people         |
| 8. a lot of   | h. Chinese people |

(b) Complete these sentences.

- I waste too much time... (watching television)
- I don't spend enough time...
- I should spend more time...

(c) In pairs, rate out of 10 which of these statements best describes you? (10/10- definitely, 0/10 not at all)

- |                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| 1. I am happy                        | 7/10 |
| 2. I am sad                          | 3/10 |
| 3. I am quite funny (humorous)       |      |
| 4. I am very energetic.              |      |
| 5. I am very apathetic.              |      |
| 6. I am very lazy.                   |      |
| 7. I am very laid back.              |      |
| 8. I use my time wisely.             |      |
| 9. I am very determined.             |      |
| 10. I tend to put things off.        |      |
| 11. I like to defer things.          |      |
| 12. I could use my time better.      |      |
| 13. I am a procrastinator.           |      |
| 14. I am a little bit lackadaisical. |      |

(d) Change partners and read through the following role play.

Pat: *When do you want to help me do my homework?*  
Noi: *There is no time like the present.*

(e) 'There is no time like the present' means the best time to do something is now. Role-play using this expression.

Pat: *When do you want to clean the house?*

(f) In pairs read and discuss the following role-play.

Kit: *I could fly direct to Beijing for \$800 or I could fly via Tokyo and stopover there for 7 hours for only \$550.*  
Kel: *Look, time is money, I would fly direct.*

(g) Do you know any stories from your culture where the use of time was considered to be very important? For example:

**China:** Xuan Liang Ci Gu. Sleeping or studying  
Study            nod off            tied  
dozed off        awl                    stabbed  
grind away      roof                   beam

(h) What is the best way to spend your time helping people? For example

- Teach them
- Help them with their studies
- Take them somewhere special
- Heal them physically or spiritually

(i) What does 'Cape diem' mean?

(j) Do you know the well known story of Jonah (800-750BC) which has inspired many people on how to 'Cape diem'? (**ran away, went down, got on, cried out, worship, made, pick up**)



清乾隆壬子校本

# 43. Now is the Time

## Countable / Uncountable

(a) Share something about yourself by combining the following pairs, for example, **Last night (week, month, year) I ate too much food** or **I know lots of people from China.**

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. too much   | a. rice           |
| 2. lots of    | b. money          |
| 3. plenty of  | c. energy         |
| 4. too many   | d. food           |
| 5. heaps of   | e. time           |
| 6. not enough | f. water          |
| 7. enough     | g. people         |
| 8. a lot of   | h. Chinese people |

(b) Complete these sentences.

- I waste too much time... (watching television)
- I don't spend enough time...
- I should spend more time...

(c) In pairs, rate out of 10 which of these statements best describes you? (10/10- definitely, 0/10 not at all)

- |                                      |      |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| 1. I am happy                        | 7/10 |
| 2. I am sad                          | 3/10 |
| 3. I am quite funny (humorous)       |      |
| 4. I am very energetic.              |      |
| 5. I am very apathetic.              |      |
| 6. I am very lazy.                   |      |
| 7. I am very laid back.              |      |
| 8. I use my time wisely.             |      |
| 9. I am very determined.             |      |
| 10. I tend to put things off.        |      |
| 11. I like to defer things.          |      |
| 12. I could use my time better.      |      |
| 13. I am a procrastinator.           |      |
| 14. I am a little bit lackadaisical. |      |

(d) Change partners and read through the following role play.

Pat: *When do you want to help me do my homework?*  
Noi: *There is no time like the present.*

(e) 'There is no time like the present' means the best time to do something is now. Role-play using this expression.

Pat: *When do you want to clean the house?*

(f) In pairs read and discuss the following role-play.

Kit: *I could fly direct to Beijing for \$800 or I could fly via Tokyo and stopover there for 7 hours for only \$550.*  
Kel: *Look, time is money, I would fly direct.*

(g) Do you know any stories from your culture where the use of time was considered to be very important? For example:

**China:** Xuan Liang Ci Gu. Sleeping or studying  
Study            nod off            tied  
dozed off        awl                    stabbed  
grind away      roof                   beam

(h) What is the best way to spend your time helping people? For example

- Teach them
- Help them with their studies
- Take them somewhere special
- Heal them physically or spiritually

(i) What does 'Cape diem' mean?

(j) Do you know the well known story of Jonah (800-750BC) which has inspired many people on how to 'Cape diem'? (**ran away, went down, got on, cried out, worship, made, pick up**)



清乾隆壬子校本

# 44. A Whale of a Time

# 44. A Whale of a Time

## Idioms and Animals

## Idioms and Animals

(a) What's the biggest animal you have seen? Make a **whale, crocodile** or another animal out of foil or origami paper and describe it. (**big, dangerous, cute**)

(a) What's the biggest animal you have seen? Make a **whale, crocodile** or another animal out of foil or origami paper and describe it. (**big, dangerous, cute**)

(b) "A *whale of a time*" means a great time. When was the last time you had 'a whale of a time'?

(b) "A *whale of a time*" means a great time. When was the last time you had 'a whale of a time'?

(c) Role play a party situation where the host forgot to buy ice.

(c) Role play a party situation where the host forgot to buy ice.

Tim: Oh, I forgot to buy **ice** for our party! I will quickly call Jack

Tim: Oh, I forgot to buy **ice** for our party! I will quickly call Jack

Narrator: Tim calls Jack

Narrator: Tim calls Jack

Jack: Hello, Jack speaking

Jack: Hello, Jack speaking

Tim: Hi Jack, its Tim, can you pick up some ice for me?

Tim: Hi Jack, its Tim, can you pick up some ice for me?

Jack: Sure!

Jack: Sure!

Narrator: Jack arrives at the **party** with the ice.

Narrator: Jack arrives at the **party** with the ice.

Jack: Hi Tim, here's the ice for you.

Jack: Hi Tim, here's the ice for you.

Tim: Thanks Jack. You saved my day!

Tim: Thanks Jack. You saved my day!

(d) Discuss the saying 'You saved my day'.

(d) Discuss the saying 'You saved my day'.

(e) Sometimes people have a party to help get their 'life out of a rut' (Not feeling happy or feeling helpless and bored) Have you ever felt like your life was stuck in a rut?

(e) Sometimes people have a party to help get their 'life out of a rut' (Not feeling happy or feeling helpless and bored) Have you ever felt like your life was stuck in a rut?

(f) When it's time to start something in a group, you can say, *Let's get the ball rolling*". Practice this saying in pairs.

(f) When it's time to start something in a group, you can say, *Let's get the ball rolling*". Practice this saying in pairs.

Tarzan: (Everybody chatting) What time is it?

Tarzan: (Everybody chatting) What time is it?

Jane: It's 7 o'clock.

Jane: It's 7 o'clock.

Tarzan. OK everybody 'let's get the ball rolling'. It's time for the speeches. Who's first?

Tarzan. OK everybody 'let's get the ball rolling'. It's time for the speeches. Who's first?

(g) When it's time to leave for a party we often say 'let's make tracks' Practice in pairs.

(g) When it's time to leave for a party we often say 'let's make tracks' Practice in pairs.

Luke It's 10 o'clock, time to make tracks.

Luke It's 10 o'clock, time to make tracks.

Luke's father Thanks for coming.

Luke's father Thanks for coming.

Luke: I had a great time.

Luke: I had a great time.

(h) Role play in groups what to say in a situation when you need everybody to help because you don't have enough time to do something by yourself.

(h) Role play in groups what to say in a situation when you need everybody to help because you don't have enough time to do something by yourself.

Lyn: Mum, we need to clean the house and cook the cake. We don't have much time.

Lyn: Mum, we need to clean the house and cook the cake. We don't have much time.

Mum: Ok everybody 'all hands on deck'.

Mum: Ok everybody 'all hands on deck'.

(i) When whaling ships spotted a whale it was often the case of 'all hands on deck' to try and catch the whale. When was the last time you were in a situation when it was 'all hands on deck'?

(i) When whaling ships spotted a whale it was often the case of 'all hands on deck' to try and catch the whale. When was the last time you were in a situation when it was 'all hands on deck'?

(j) In some places whales are protected animals. Are there any protected or endangered animals in your country?  
Chinese alligator Panda



(j) In some places whales are protected animals. Are there any protected or endangered animals in your country?  
Chinese alligator Panda



(k) Animals are valuable. Do you think animals (trees) are ...?  
1. the same as humans  
2. spiritual and above humans  
3. below humans and should be allowed to be eaten  
4. better than bad humans

(k) Animals are valuable. Do you think animals (trees) are ...?  
1. the same as humans  
2. spiritual and above humans  
3. below humans and should be allowed to be eaten  
4. better than bad humans

(l) Do you know the ending to the story of a man named Jonah (800-750BC) whose life became so stuck in a rut that he considered plants more valuable than some human beings? (**hot, plant, grow, shade, sun, wind, die, concerned**)

(l) Do you know the ending to the story of a man named Jonah (800-750BC) whose life became so stuck in a rut that he considered plants more valuable than some human beings? (**hot, plant, grow, shade, sun, wind, die, concerned**)

# 45. Tragic

## Dealing with Grief

- (a) What is your dream in life? (Draw and share in pairs)
- (b) What is the great (your nationality) dream? For example:  
*The great ... (nationality) dream is to ...*
1. earn a million dollars.
  2. own a own big white timber **house**.
- (c) Sometimes life does not go to plan. Draw a timeline and mark two times in your life when you experienced great disappointment or grief and share with a partner. For example:

1. Broke up with boy/girl friend
2. Lost a sports game
3. Natural disaster
4. Failed an exam
5. Missed out on a promotion
6. Lost my job
7. War
8. Death



- (d) When people suffer grief, they sometimes work through a process called 'the grief cycle'. Have you experienced this cycle?
1. Shock
  2. Anger: It's not fair/Blame
  3. Deep sadness
  4. Acceptance

- (e) Role-play in pairs comforting somebody who is grieving.

Anita *I'm having problems coping with what happened. One minute I am going ok and the next minute I am really angry, blaming everybody.*

A good friend: *It must be very difficult for you.*

Anita: *It sure is*

A good friend *Don't worry, what you are experiencing is normal. In grieving, it is normal to work through a cycle of grief; shock, anger/ blame, sadness and acceptance.*

- (f) What would cause you the most grief?
1. Somebody ignoring you
  2. Somebody stealing your wallet
  3. Somebody burning down your mansion (big house)
  4. Your spouse (wife or husband) committing adultery
  5. Somebody ruining your national monument

- (g) Share about a time when your nation experienced great grief? For example:

**China:** In 1860, the destruction of Imperial Gardens (Old Summer Palace, Yuan Ming Yuan- Pictured)

1. Bronze statues.
2. Second Opium War.
3. British and French troops.
4. Retaliation to the torture and execution of 20 prisoners.

- (h) Who could have been blamed for this event?

- (h) Discuss these ancient texts (520BC) that express how people's sin caused great grief to God like someone committing adultery against their spouse (husband or wife).

*"Give careful thought to your ways..... Because Israel committed adultery with (worshipping) stone and wood". (NLT) "Because of my house, which remains a ruin, while each of you is busy with your own paneled house".(NIV). You have lived as a prostitute with many lovers—would you now return to me?"*

# 45. Tragic

## Dealing with Grief

- (a) What is your dream in life? (Draw and share in pairs)
- (b) What is the great (your nationality) dream? For example:  
*The great ... (nationality) dream is to ...*
1. earn a million dollars.
  2. own a own big white timber **house**.
- (c) Sometimes life does not go to plan. Draw a timeline and mark two times in your life when you experienced great disappointment or grief and share with a partner. For example:

1. Broke up with boy/girl friend
2. Lost a sports game
3. Natural disaster
4. Failed an exam
5. Missed out on a promotion
6. Lost my job
7. War
8. Death



- (d) When people suffer grief, they sometimes work through a process called 'the grief cycle'. Have you experienced this cycle?
1. Shock
  2. Anger: It's not fair/Blame
  3. Deep sadness
  4. Acceptance

- (e) Role-play in pairs comforting somebody who is grieving.

Anita *I'm having problems coping with what happened. One minute I am going ok and the next minute I am really angry, blaming everybody.*

A good friend: *It must be very difficult for you.*

Anita: *It sure is*

A good friend *Don't worry, what you are experiencing is normal. In grieving, it is normal to work through a cycle of grief; shock, anger/ blame, sadness and acceptance.*

- (f) What would cause you the most grief?
1. Somebody ignoring you
  2. Somebody stealing your wallet
  3. Somebody burning down your mansion (big house)
  4. Your spouse (wife or husband) committing adultery
  5. Somebody ruining your national monument

- (g) Share about a time when your nation experienced great grief? For example:

**China:** In 1860, the destruction of Imperial Gardens (Old Summer Palace, Yuan Ming Yuan- Pictured)

1. Bronze statues.
2. Second Opium War.
3. British and French troops.
4. Retaliation to the torture and execution of 20 prisoners.

- (h) Who could have been blamed for this event?

- (h) Discuss these ancient texts (520BC) that express how people's sin caused great grief to God like someone committing adultery against their spouse (husband or wife).

*"Give careful thought to your ways..... Because Israel committed adultery with (worshipping) stone and wood". (NLT) "Because of my house, which remains a ruin, while each of you is busy with your own paneled house".(NIV). You have lived as a prostitute with many lovers—would you now return to me?"*

# 46. Well Balanced

## Traditional Clothes

- (a) Role play in pairs  
*Elle:* Love your **shirt (pants, top)**  
*Miranda:* Well thankyou  
*Elle:* What material is it made from?  
*Miranda:* It's made of **cotton (silk, wool)**



- (b) Describe a piece of material. For example  
 1. Stylish, trendy or boring  
 2. Smooth, fluffy, cool or tropical  
 3. Modern or traditional
- (c) Describe traditional clothes in your country. For example:  
**China:** The “Cheongsam” Hanau (gown)  
 Zhōngshān zhuāng Qípáo (dress)
- (d) When do people wear traditional clothes in your country and have you ever worn them?
- (e) When you were at school, did you ever ...?  
 1. wear a uniform or traditional clothes  
 2. get into trouble for not wearing a uniform  
 3. tell a (white) lie  
 4. get (hop) on a bus/train and not pay for a ticket.  
 5. exaggerate the truth about something

## Misbehaving Employee

- (f) Role-play a boss who has to be very stern with his employee who did something terribly wrong.

*Boss:* It's about last night, when you (got very drunk at the office party).

*Employee:* Yes, I am sorry about that.

*Boss:* Your behaviour was totally unacceptable. You need to be more responsible for your actions. This is your first and last warning. If it happens again, you leave us with no choice but to ask you to leave. Do you understand?

*Employee:* I understand

- (g) Are you the perfect worker or student who has never done anything wrong?
- (h) Do you know any movies that portray a dark (evil) side?
- (i) There is a perception that yin and yang is simply good and evil. This is not so as yin and yang is about balance. Share what else you know about Yin and Yang.  
 1. Everything causes everything to happen.  
 2. Interaction of two energies (continual movement) For e.g.  
 a. bright or dark, strong or weak  
 b. up or down, hot or cold  
 c. heaven & hell
- (j) Is sin (hell or heaven) a choice or acceptance (fate)?
- (k) Discuss what these quotes about an honourable man named Joshua (522-509BC) mean about choice of sin, heaven, hell and being acceptable.



<sup>3</sup> Now **Joshua** was dressed in **filthy clothes** as he stood before the angel. <sup>4</sup> The **angel** said to those who were standing before him, “**Take off** his filthy clothes.” Then he said to Joshua, “See, I **have taken** away your **sin**, and I will **put fine garments** on you.(NIV). ... Is not this **man** a burning stick **snatched** from the **fire**.(NIV)

# 46. Well Balanced

## Traditional Clothes

- (a) Role play in pairs  
*Elle:* Love your **shirt (pants, top)**  
*Miranda:* Well thankyou  
*Elle:* What material is it made from?  
*Miranda:* It's made of **cotton (silk, wool)**



- (b) Describe a piece of material. For example  
 1. Stylish, trendy or boring  
 2. Smooth, fluffy, cool or tropical  
 3. Modern or traditional
- (c) Describe traditional clothes in your country. For example:  
**China:** The “Cheongsam” Hanau (gown)  
 Zhōngshān zhuāng Qípáo (dress)
- (d) When do people wear traditional clothes in your country and have you ever worn them?
- (e) When you were at school, did you ever ...?  
 1. wear a uniform or traditional clothes  
 2. get into trouble for not wearing a uniform  
 3. tell a (white) lie  
 4. get (hop) on a bus/train and not pay for a ticket.  
 5. exaggerate the truth about something

## Misbehaving Employee

- (f) Role-play a boss who has to be very stern with his employee who did something terribly wrong.

*Boss:* It's about last night, when you (got very drunk at the office party).

*Employee:* Yes, I am sorry about that.

*Boss:* Your behaviour was totally unacceptable. You need to be more responsible for your actions. This is your first and last warning. If it happens again, you leave us with no choice but to ask you to leave. Do you understand?

*Employee:* I understand

- (g) Are you the perfect worker or student who has never done anything wrong?
- (h) Do you know any movies that portray a dark (evil) side?
- (i) There is a perception that yin and yang is simply good and evil. This is not so as yin and yang is about balance. Share what else you know about Yin and Yang.  
 1. Everything causes everything to happen.  
 2. Interaction of two energies (continual movement) For e.g.  
 a. bright or dark, strong or weak  
 b. up or down, hot or cold  
 c. heaven & hell
- (j) Is sin (hell or heaven) a choice or acceptance (fate)?
- (k) Discuss what these quotes about an honourable man named Joshua (522-509BC) mean about choice of sin, heaven, hell and being acceptable.



<sup>3</sup> Now **Joshua** was dressed in **filthy clothes** as he stood before the angel. <sup>4</sup> The **angel** said to those who were standing before him, “**Take off** his filthy clothes.” Then he said to Joshua, “See, I **have taken** away your **sin**, and I will **put fine garments** on you.(NIV). ... Is not this **man** a burning stick **snatched** from the **fire**.(NIV)

# 47. The Breath of Life

## Future Plans

- (a) Share in pairs about your plans
1. **Tonight** I am going to eat ... ( )
  2. **Tomorrow** I am going to visit ..( )
  3. **Next week/Monday** I am going to ... ( )
- (b) Have you ever resigned from a job? Which of the following are the most polite ways to tell your boss you are going to leave your job in December?
1. I'm going to resign in December.
  2. I'm thinking about doing some travelling next year.
  3. I have had enough of working in this place.
  4. I'm considering changing careers next year.
  5. I want to change jobs.

- (c) Share with a new partner what you are hoping to do next year.

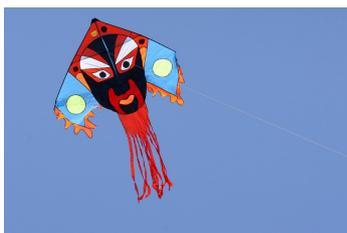
Person 1: *What are you doing next year?*

Person 2: *(choose one)*

1. I'm hoping to ...
2. I'm planning to ...
3. I'm thinking about ..
4. I'm considering ...
5. I'm going to ...

- (d) In groups of four, talk about your future plans with your partners using some of the following responses.

1. Really
2. Hmm!
3. Sounds interesting
4. That's different
5. Tell me more
6. That's great
7. Good luck
8. Wow!



- (e) Everybody wants their future to be prosperous. What does being prosperous mean for you?
- (f) In some cultures a dragon kite is symbolic for prosperity and power. When was the last time you flew a kite?

- (g) Match these symbols with their meaning:

Kite symbol	Meaning
1. tortoises, cranes, peaches	a. good luck
2. fish	b. power and prosperity
3. bats	c. harmony
4. butterflies and flowers	d. long life
5. dragon	e. wish/surplus

- (h) Explain what picture you would like on your kite.
- (i) Do you know any famous cultural stories about kites? For e.g.

**China:** "Simian Chug" "Chu songs all around" which is a phrase that means under attack from all directions

- (j) In 520 BC, there were many cities that were prosperous and powerful (dragon kite) but people wanted to go to another city (Jerusalem). Discuss the following text using kites

*"In those days **ten people** from **all languages and nations** will take **firm** hold of one Jew by the hem of his robe and say, 'Let us **go** with you, because we have **heard** that God is **with** you.'" NIV.*

# 47. The Breath of Life

## Future Plans

- (a) Share in pairs about your plans
1. **Tonight** I am going to eat ... ( )
  2. **Tomorrow** I am going to visit ..( )
  3. **Next week/Monday** I am going to ... ( )
- (b) Have you ever resigned from a job? Which of the following are the most polite ways to tell your boss you are going to leave your job in December?
1. I'm going to resign in December.
  2. I'm thinking about doing some travelling next year.
  3. I have had enough of working in this place.
  4. I'm considering changing careers next year.
  5. I want to change jobs.

- (c) Share with a new partner what you are hoping to do next year.

Person 1: *What are you doing next year?*

Person 2: *(choose one)*

1. I'm hoping to ...
2. I'm planning to ...
3. I'm thinking about ..
4. I'm considering ...
5. I'm going to ...

- (d) In groups of four, talk about your future plans with your partners using some of the following responses.

1. Really
2. Hmm!
3. Sounds interesting
4. That's different
5. Tell me more
6. That's great
7. Good luck
8. Wow!



- (e) Everybody wants their future to be prosperous. What does being prosperous mean for you?
- (f) In some cultures a dragon kite is symbolic for prosperity and power. When was the last time you flew a kite?

- (g) Match these symbols with their meaning:

Kite symbol	Meaning
1. tortoises, cranes, peaches	a. good luck
2. fish	b. power and prosperity
3. bats	c. harmony
4. butterflies and flowers	d. long life
5. dragon	e. wish/surplus

- (h) Explain what picture you would like on your kite.
- (i) Do you know any famous cultural stories about kites? For e.g.

**China:** "Simian Chug" "Chu songs all around" which is a phrase that means under attack from all directions

- (j) In 520 BC, there were many cities that were prosperous and powerful (dragon kite) but people wanted to go to another city (Jerusalem). Discuss the following text using kites

*"In those days **ten people** from **all languages and nations** will take **firm** hold of one Jew by the hem of his robe and say, 'Let us **go** with you, because we have **heard** that God is **with** you.'" NIV.*

# 48. Problems or Predictions

# 48. Problems or Predictions

## Helping Somebody

## Helping Somebody

- (a) Share with a partner about your interests
1. I like ... ( ) (playing tennis, reading books)
  2. I don't like... ( ) (watching television)
  3. Now I am ... ( ) (playing) ... ( )
  4. Yesterday I ... ( ) (played)... ( )
  5. Tonight I am going to... (play) ... ( )
  6. (Decision) On Monday I will (play) ... ( )
- (b) Role play somebody finding somebody's tennis racquet.
- Rodger: *Is this your racquet?*  
 Novac: *It's not mine. It is not **my** racquet, It must be his/hers*  
 Rodger: *Excuse me, is this **your** racquet?*  
 Kim: *Yes it is my racquet, it is **mine**. Thankyou for finding it for me. I was feeling very **sad**.*
- (c) Have four people draw four large faces on the board, one happy, sad, surprised and shocked. In groups of three, brainstorm 4 words to describe each face.
- (d) Line up in two lines (line A and line B) and discuss question one with the person opposite you. Than line A moves one place so everybody changes partner and asks question 2. etc.
1. What makes you feel **happy**? *I feel happy when... ( )*
  2. What makes you feel **sad**? *I feel sad when... ( )*
  3. Have you ever been surprised? *I felt **surprised** when ... ( )*
  4. Have you ever been **shocked**? *I felt shocked when ... ( )*
- (e) Share about a season/time in your life when you felt sad. For example; *I felt sad when I .... ( )*
1. cooked a terrible dinner, failed an exam or got lost
  2. broke up with my girlfriend/boyfriend.
- (f) How do you comfort somebody who is experiencing a problem (a difficult situation)? For example
1. I put my arm around them. I try to cheer them up. *It's ok*
  2. I try to sympathise with them. *It must be difficult for you*
- (g) In pairs, role play sympathising with your partner.
- Star: *Hi Brad, I heard you failed your last exam. I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very difficult for you.*  
 Brad: *Yes, it is Star. Thank you for your concern*  
 Star: (Choose two)
1. *Can I help you in anyway?*
  2. *Can I do anything for you?*
  3. *Is there anything I can do for you?*
  4. *Can I get you a cup of tea?*
- (h) Give some advice to a friend
- Star: *I heard you failed you last exam*  
 Brad: *Yes I did, what should I do now?*  
 Star: *If I were you, I would have a break then do the exam again*
- (i) Sometimes it is good to get outside advice to help make things better. Have you ever been helped by ....?
1. friends or family
  2. a counsellor or visitor
  3. a dream
  4. a book or a true story about someone
- 井底之
- (j) Do you know any stories from your culture where somebody received outside advice to make a situation better?
- China:** "The frog in the well" A New Perspective (A looking down at a sky in a well).
- (k) Do you know the Christmas story when Mary and Joseph received outside advice from angels, dreams and scripture? **(Do not be afraid, virgin, dream, went, had, stable)**

- (a) Share with a partner about your interests
1. I like ... ( ) (playing tennis, reading books)
  2. I don't like... ( ) (watching television)
  3. Now I am ... ( ) (playing) ... ( )
  4. Yesterday I ... ( ) (played)... ( )
  5. Tonight I am going to... (play) ... ( )
  6. (Decision) On Monday I will (play) ... ( )
- (b) Role play somebody finding somebody's tennis racquet.
- Rodger: *Is this your racquet?*  
 Novac: *It's not mine. It is not **my** racquet, It must be his/hers*  
 Rodger: *Excuse me, is this **your** racquet?*  
 Kim: *Yes it is my racquet, it is **mine**. Thankyou for finding it for me. I was feeling very **sad**.*
- (c) Have four people draw four large faces on the board, one happy, sad, surprised and shocked. In groups of three, brainstorm 4 words to describe each face.
- (d) Line up in two lines (line A and line B) and discuss question one with the person opposite you. Than line A moves one place so everybody changes partner and asks question 2. etc.
1. What makes you feel **happy**? *I feel happy when... ( )*
  2. What makes you feel **sad**? *I feel sad when... ( )*
  3. Have you ever been surprised? *I felt **surprised** when ... ( )*
  4. Have you ever been **shocked**? *I felt shocked when ... ( )*
- (e) Share about a season/time in your life when you felt sad. For example; *I felt sad when I .... ( )*
1. cooked a terrible dinner, failed an exam or got lost
  2. broke up with my girlfriend/boyfriend.
- (f) How do you comfort somebody who is experiencing a problem (a difficult situation)? For example
1. I put my arm around them. I try to cheer them up. *It's ok*
  2. I try to sympathise with them. *It must be difficult for you*
- (g) In pairs, role play sympathising with your partner.
- Star: *Hi Brad, I heard you failed your last exam. I'm sorry to hear that. It must be very difficult for you.*  
 Brad: *Yes, it is Star. Thank you for your concern*  
 Star: (Choose two)
1. *Can I help you in anyway?*
  2. *Can I do anything for you?*
  3. *Is there anything I can do for you?*
  4. *Can I get you a cup of tea?*
- (h) Give some advice to a friend
- Star: *I heard you failed you last exam*  
 Brad: *Yes I did, what should I do now?*  
 Star: *If I were you, I would have a break then do the exam again*
- (i) Sometimes it is good to get outside advice to help make things better. Have you ever been helped by ....?
1. friends or family
  2. a counsellor or visitor
  3. a dream
  4. a book or a true story about someone
- 井底之
- (j) Do you know any stories from your culture where somebody received outside advice to make a situation better?
- China:** "The frog in the well" A New Perspective (A looking down at a sky in a well).
- (k) Do you know the Christmas story when Mary and Joseph received outside advice from angels, dreams and scripture? **(Do not be afraid, virgin, dream, went, had, stable)**

# 49. You're a Star

## Welcoming a Special Guest

- (a) In pairs stand and then say where you are standing. For e.g:
- Opposite** your partner *I am opposite my partner*
  - Next to** your partner *I am next to my partner*
  - To the **left** of your partner *I am ... ( )*
  - In front of** your partner *I am ... ( )*

- (b) Role play giving a visitor directions to a good coffee shop.

*Visitor: Excuse me, Can you recommend any good coffee shops near here?*

*Chemist: 1. Sure, Jordan's Coffee Shop  
2. **Go straight** down this road (Use gestures)  
3. **Turn left** at the traffic lights (Using gestures)  
4. **Keep going** about 80 metres  
5. The coffee shop is opposite the park  
6. Just before/past the bank  
7. Next to the 7/11. You can't miss it*

- (c) Role play welcoming a visitor (Guest Speaker) to your group.

*Jim: 1. Good afternoon everybody.  
2. Today I would like to welcome ...  
3. We are greatly honoured to have him/her here today  
4. He/she is the manager/president (position) of ... ( ) (company/place) in ... ( ) (Country)  
5. He/she has worked there for ... ( )  
6. He/she is married to ... ( ) and has ... ( ) children.  
7. In his/her free time, he/she likes to ... ( )  
8. He/she is originally from ... ( ) but now he/she is ( )  
9. He/she has been in ... ( ) (place) for ... ( ) days  
10. Ladies and gentlemen, let's give him/her (Choose 1)  
a. a warm welcome (clapping).  
b. a warm round of applause  
c. a big clap.*

*Speaker: Thankyou everybody for your warm greeting*

- (d) Role play in pairs

*Eli: Who would you most like to meet and why?*

*Pa: I would most like to meet ... ( ) because he/she is very ... ( )*

- Intelligent (smart)
- Influential
- Other

- (e) Have you ever received directions or guidance from...?

- a guest speaker
- history books
- the stars
- a dream

- (f) Some people get direction from the stars. Are astrologists popular in your country? What animal star sign are you in the Chinese Zodiac?



- (g) Draw and share a famous constellation that can be seen in your country.

- (h) Do you know any astrological stories from your culture? For example

**China:** The Story of the Jade Emperor who was bored in heaven.  
1. Heavenly grandfather (*Tiān Gōng*)  
2. Bored or curious, the cat and the rat  
3. Nobody woke him up so consequently

**World:** Three Persian Astrologists sought directions from stars, history and dreams and travelled along way to welcome a very special guest born in a stable. (0AD Bethlehem) (**saw, where, come, worship**)

# 49. You're a Star

## Welcoming a Special Guest

- (a) In pairs stand and then say where you are standing. For e.g:
- Opposite** your partner *I am opposite my partner*
  - Next to** your partner *I am next to my partner*
  - To the **left** of your partner *I am ... ( )*
  - In front of** your partner *I am ... ( )*

- (b) Role play giving a visitor directions to a good coffee shop.

*Visitor: Excuse me, Can you recommend any good coffee shops near here?*

*Chemist: 1. Sure, Jordan's Coffee Shop  
2. **Go straight** down this road (Use gestures)  
3. **Turn left** at the traffic lights (Using gestures)  
4. **Keep going** about 80 metres  
5. The coffee shop is opposite the park  
6. Just before/past the bank  
7. Next to the 7/11. You can't miss it*

- (c) Role play welcoming a visitor (Guest Speaker) to your group.

*Jim: 1. Good afternoon everybody.  
2. Today I would like to welcome ...  
3. We are greatly honoured to have him/her here today  
4. He/she is the manager/president (position) of ... ( ) (company/place) in ... ( ) (Country)  
5. He/she has worked there for ... ( )  
6. He/she is married to ... ( ) and has ... ( ) children.  
7. In his/her free time, he/she likes to ... ( )  
8. He/she is originally from ... ( ) but now he/she is ( )  
9. He/she has been in ... ( ) (place) for ... ( ) days  
10. Ladies and gentlemen, let's give him/her (Choose 1)  
a. a warm welcome (clapping).  
b. a warm round of applause  
c. a big clap.*

*Speaker: Thankyou everybody for your warm greeting*

- (d) Role play in pairs

*Eli: Who would you most like to meet and why?*

*Pa: I would most like to meet ... ( ) because he/she is very ... ( )*

- Intelligent (smart)
- Influential
- Other

- (e) Have you ever received directions or guidance from...?

- a guest speaker
- history books
- the stars
- a dream

- (f) Some people get direction from the stars. Are astrologists popular in your country? What animal star sign are you in the Chinese Zodiac?



- (g) Draw and share a famous constellation that can be seen in your country.

- (h) Do you know any astrological stories from your culture? For example

**China:** The Story of the Jade Emperor who was bored in heaven.  
1. Heavenly grandfather (*Tiān Gōng*)  
2. Bored or curious, the cat and the rat  
3. Nobody woke him up so consequently

**World:** Three Persian Astrologists sought directions from stars, history and dreams and travelled along way to welcome a very special guest born in a stable. (0AD Bethlehem) (**saw, where, come, worship**)

# 50. Better

## Late for Work and Idioms

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: How do you get to **work**?

Person 2: I usually **walk** to work, and you?

Person 1: I always **catch a bus** to work.

(b) Do you usually arrive to work...? (Share in pairs)

1. very **early**
2. **always** on time
3. a little bit **late**
4. **sometimes** very late

(c) In your country, is it culturally acceptable to be late?

(d) Dramatise being late for work. The rest of the class have to guess why you are late. For example:

1. Slept in or slept through the alarm or the alarm didn't go off
2. Got caught in traffic, car broke down or missed the bus
3. Left the iron on or some other reason

(e) Role-play in pairs explaining to your boss that you are running late for work

Boss: (Telephone rings) Hello, 'boss' speaking.

Ashley: Hello boss, it's Ashley. I'm sorry I am running a little bit late this morning, I am caught in traffic.

(f) When a student arrives late for class, sometimes the teacher can say 'better late than never' so as to make the student feel less embarrassed. Role play this situation as a class.

Late Student: Sorry I'm late.

Teacher: Better late than never.

(g) A similar sounding saying is 'better safe than sorry' used when a person has to choose between two options. For example, role play in pairs the following situation.

Becky: After work, I might walk home, it's cheaper than catching a bus. (What are the two options?)

Dad: I wouldn't walk home late at night if I were you. I would catch a bus. 'Better safe than sorry'!

(h) Role play a another situation where somebody could use the expression 'better safe than sorry'.

(i) When people feel threatened, they usually take precautionary measures. Share what people did in your country to prevent catching a serious virus like SARS or bird flu. For example:

1. Some people wore a plastic bag on their head.
2. Some people kept inside their house.

(j) Do you know what precautionary measures some Kings and Emperors did with perceived threats to their reign? For example:



**China:** Emperor Qin Shi Huang . 247 BC–221 BC).Emperor Yang of Sui 604-617 AD. Yongle Emperor Zhu Di .1402-1424). Ming Dynasty

**World:** King Herod: (0-4 AD) Jerusalem: In the Christmas story, King Herod eliminated all who were a threat to his throne including infants who could have been the prophesized new born king. (**disturbed, when, star, search, kill**)

# 50. Better

## Late for Work and Idioms

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: How do you get to **work**?

Person 2: I usually **walk** to work, and you?

Person 1: I always **catch a bus** to work.

(b) Do you usually arrive to work...? (Share in pairs)

1. very **early**
2. **always** on time
3. a little bit **late**
4. **sometimes** very late

(c) In your country, is it culturally acceptable to be late?

(d) Dramatise being late for work. The rest of the class have to guess why you are late. For example:

1. Slept in or slept through the alarm or the alarm didn't go off
2. Got caught in traffic, car broke down or missed the bus
3. Left the iron on or some other reason

(e) Role-play in pairs explaining to your boss that you are running late for work

Boss: (Telephone rings) Hello, 'boss' speaking.

Ashley: Hello boss, it's Ashley. I'm sorry I am running a little bit late this morning, I am caught in traffic.

(f) When a student arrives late for class, sometimes the teacher can say 'better late than never' so as to make the student feel less embarrassed. Role play this situation as a class.

Late Student: Sorry I'm late.

Teacher: Better late than never.

(g) A similar sounding saying is 'better safe than sorry' used when a person has to choose between two options. For example, role play in pairs the following situation.

Becky: After work, I might walk home, it's cheaper than catching a bus. (What are the two options?)

Dad: I wouldn't walk home late at night if I were you. I would catch a bus. 'Better safe than sorry'!

(h) Role play a another situation where somebody could use the expression 'better safe than sorry'.

(i) When people feel threatened, they usually take precautionary measures. Share what people did in your country to prevent catching a serious virus like SARS or bird flu. For example:

1. Some people wore a plastic bag on their head.
2. Some people kept inside their house.

(j) Do you know what precautionary measures some Kings and Emperors did with perceived threats to their reign? For example:



**China:** Emperor Qin Shi Huang . 247 BC–221 BC).Emperor Yang of Sui 604-617 AD. Yongle Emperor Zhu Di .1402-1424). Ming Dynasty

**World:** King Herod: (0-4 AD) Jerusalem: In the Christmas story, King Herod eliminated all who were a threat to his throne including infants who could have been the prophesized new born king. (**disturbed, when, star, search, kill**)

# 51. What's New

## Bargaining in Department Stores

(a) What was the last thing you bought from a department store?  
**can of ... bottle of... packet of .. box of ... tin of....**

(b) Compare the items the teacher has brought in. For example.

*This one is **cheaper** than this one.*

more <b>expensive</b>	less expensive
<b>delicious</b> to eat	more delicious to eat
newer	more up to date
better quality	better value for money
more high tech	more lightweight
better looking	more appealing to the eye
more compact	more attractive looking

(c) Sometimes you can bargain down prices in a big department store. Role-play this situation in pairs.

*Sales Assistant: Can I help you with anything?*  
*Customer: Yes, I am after a TV. Do you have anything on special?*  
*Sales Assistant: This television is only 400 dollars. It's a best seller.*  
*Customer: What's the best deal you can do for me today? Can you give me a discount?*  
*Sales Assistant: Hmm! I'll have to check with my manager. We can give you 40 dollars off this new television and throw in a 3-month warranty.*  
*Customer: What if I bought a television and a DVD, could you do me a better deal?*  
*Sales Assistant: Give me a minute. I'll see what I can do.*

(d) Role-play in pairs shopping for another bargain.

## New Products/Inventions

(e) Role-play shopping for a product that has just been released.

*C: What's the latest you have in televisions?*  
*S: This one has just been released. We have a special introductory offer on this product.*

(f) To invent a new product you need to be very inventive, creative and imaginative (think outside the square). What would you like to invent?



(g) Chinese people are famous for their inventions. Match the following inventions and their peculiarities:

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. silk        | a. searching for eternal life    |
| 2. gunpowder   | b. searching for jade            |
| 3. paper       | c. invented in 105 AD            |
| 4. compass     | d. sitting under a mulberry tree |
| 5. seismograph | e. uses frogs and dragon heads   |

(h) What invention/new thing has had the greatest impact on the world? For example:

1. Steam or electricity
2. The motor car
3. Computers or The internet
4. Buddhism or another religion
5. Kingdom of God (The Lord's Prayer) (30-33AD)  
**(Heaven, Earth, our, your, us, forgive, lead us, deliver, forever)**

# 51. What's New

## Bargaining in Department Stores

(a) What was the last thing you bought from a department store?  
**can of ... bottle of... packet of .. box of ... tin of....**

(b) Compare the items the teacher has brought in. For example.

*This one is **cheaper** than this one.*

more <b>expensive</b>	less expensive
<b>delicious</b> to eat	more delicious to eat
newer	more up to date
better quality	better value for money
more high tech	more lightweight
better looking	more appealing to the eye
more compact	more attractive looking

(c) Sometimes you can bargain down prices in a big department store. Role-play this situation in pairs.

*Sales Assistant: Can I help you with anything?*  
*Customer: Yes, I am after a TV. Do you have anything on special?*  
*Sales Assistant: This television is only 400 dollars. It's a best seller.*  
*Customer: What's the best deal you can do for me today? Can you give me a discount?*  
*Sales Assistant: Hmm! I'll have to check with my manager. We can give you 40 dollars off this new television and throw in a 3-month warranty.*  
*Customer: What if I bought a television and a DVD, could you do me a better deal?*  
*Sales Assistant: Give me a minute. I'll see what I can do.*

(d) Role-play in pairs shopping for another bargain.

## New Products/Inventions

(e) Role-play shopping for a product that has just been released.

*C: What's the latest you have in televisions?*  
*S: This one has just been released. We have a special introductory offer on this product.*

(f) To invent a new product you need to be very inventive, creative and imaginative (think outside the square). What would you like to invent?



(g) Chinese people are famous for their inventions. Match the following inventions and their peculiarities:

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. silk        | a. searching for eternal life    |
| 2. gunpowder   | b. searching for jade            |
| 3. paper       | c. invented in 105 AD            |
| 4. compass     | d. sitting under a mulberry tree |
| 5. seismograph | e. uses frogs and dragon heads   |

(h) What invention/new thing has had the greatest impact on the world? For example:

1. Steam or electricity
2. The motor car
3. Computers or The internet
4. Buddhism or another religion
5. Kingdom of God (The Lord's Prayer) (30-33AD)  
**(Heaven, Earth, our, your, us, forgive, lead us, deliver, forever)**

# 52. Talk to me

## Finding a Seat / Anthems

- (a) You are outside a sports stadium, line up in two lines and ask the following questions to the person next to you
- Which **sports teams** do you support? (Choose one)
    - I support.. (Liverpool in the EPL).
    - I cheer for ...
    - I barrack for ...
    - I root for...
  - What is the most popular sports team in your country?
  - Who is the most popular sports star in your country?
  - Who is your favourite sports star?

- (b) Role playing this situation in fours. Two of you are already in a line. One person tries to push into the line (queue).

*Narrator: (One person pushes into the line between person 1 and person 3)*

*Person 1: Excuse me, there is a line (queue), you have to go to the end of the line (pointing where the line is)*

*Person 2: I'm sorry I didn't know.*

- (c) It can be very crowded at sports stadiums. Role-play in groups of six where one person (x) standing is trying to get to his/her seat (s). The other five (o) of you are seated in a row in five of the six seats. For each role play you will have to move starting positions (e = empty seat)

Role play 1: Excuse me, can I get past? x oooooo

Role play 2: Excuse me, can everybody move along one seat please? (Thanks) x oooooo

Role play 3: Excuse me, can I squeeze in here?  
x ooeooo

Role play 4: Excuse me, is anybody sitting here/there?  
x eooooo

- (d) What do supporters wear when your national team participates in a major sporting event?
- (e) What do supporters sing, chant and wave when your national team plays in an international sports event?
- (f) At most international events, the national anthem is played. Can you hum your country's or another country's national anthem?

- (g) How do you feel when you hear your national anthem?
- I feel inspired
  - I feel proud and honoured
  - I get a lump in my throat
  - I get goose bumps
  - I feel very emotional (very moved)
  - I feel very sentimental
  - I feel tired or bored



- (h) Share about a time when you felt one of the above emotions.
- (i) Some national anthems have a special meaning. Share about your national anthem. For example:
- History or prayer (South Africa)
  - Event or landscape (Australia)
  - Person or event (China: Pictured)
  - Religion or a hope (dream)
- (j) Do you know the Lord's Prayer (30-33AD) which like a national anthem has inspired many people? (**Heaven, Earth, our, your, us, forgive, lead us, deliver, forever**)

# 52. Talk to me

## Finding a Seat / Anthems

- (a) You are outside a sports stadium, line up in two lines and ask the following questions to the person next to you
- Which **sports teams** do you support? (Choose one)
    - I support.. (Liverpool in the EPL).
    - I cheer for ...
    - I barrack for ...
    - I root for...
  - What is the most popular sports team in your country?
  - Who is the most popular sports star in your country?
  - Who is your favourite sports star?

- (b) Role playing this situation in fours. Two of you are already in a line. One person tries to push into the line (queue).

*Narrator: (One person pushes into the line between person 1 and person 3)*

*Person 1: Excuse me, there is a line (queue), you have to go to the end of the line (pointing where the line is)*

*Person 2: I'm sorry I didn't know.*

- (c) It can be very crowded at sports stadiums. Role-play in groups of six where one person (x) standing is trying to get to his/her seat (s). The other five (o) of you are seated in a row in five of the six seats. For each role play you will have to move starting positions (e = empty seat)

Role play 1: Excuse me, can I get past? x oooooo

Role play 2: Excuse me, can everybody move along one seat please? (Thanks) x oooooo

Role play 3: Excuse me, can I squeeze in here?  
x ooeooo

Role play 4: Excuse me, is anybody sitting here/there?  
x eooooo

- (d) What do supporters wear when your national team participates in a major sporting event?
- (e) What do supporters sing, chant and wave when your national team plays in an international sports event?
- (f) At most international events, the national anthem is played. Can you hum your country's or another country's national anthem?

- (g) How do you feel when you hear your national anthem?
- I feel inspired
  - I feel proud and honoured
  - I get a lump in my throat
  - I get goose bumps
  - I feel very emotional (very moved)
  - I feel very sentimental
  - I feel tired or bored



- (h) Share about a time when you felt one of the above emotions.
- (i) Some national anthems have a special meaning. Share about your national anthem. For example:
- History or prayer (South Africa)
  - Event or landscape (Australia)
  - Person or event (China: Pictured)
  - Religion or a hope (dream)
- (j) Do you know the Lord's Prayer (30-33AD) which like a national anthem has inspired many people? (**Heaven, Earth, our, your, us, forgive, lead us, deliver, forever**)

# 53. Help

## Simple Past & Routine

- (a) Trace your hand and write down 5 verbs on your five fingers. In pairs, your partner has to look at the verb and guess what you can do. For example, verb: **teach, listen, learn, study** etc
1. You can **teach** Maths (No)
  2. You can teach Japanese (Correct)
- (b) Share about someone who helped you recently. For example:
1. Yesterday Lee **bought** (Simple past tense) me a coffee
  2. Last Friday Kim **took out** the garbage
- (c) Share about someone who helps you out every week
1. On Mondays, Lucy buys (Present tense-routine) me a coffee
  2. On Fridays, Um takes out the garbage (trash)
  3. On Tuesdays, Mary **looks after** my mother
- (d) What other habits do you do every day?

## Voice Projection / Worries

- (e) Some people who need help with their pronunciation visit a speech therapist. Practice these words first by vibrating your lips (Vrrrr). Secondly saying these words with no vibration.
1. Me Me Me Me
  2. May May May May
  3. My My My My
  4. Moh Moh Moh Moh
  5. Muu Muu Muu Muu
  6. My mother makes jam Mary makes merry
  7. Mary had a little lamb Meet me Peter meet me
- (f) Ask your partner to help you using one of the following sayings
1. *Jack, could you give us a hand? Could you....*
  2. *Jack, could you help me? Can you ...*
  3. *Jack, could you give me a minute? Could you ...*
  4. *Jack, could you do me a favour, I was wondering if you could ....*
- (g) Which person that has helped you out the most in the past?
1. He/she is always there when I need him/her
  2. He/she is very supportive of me.
  3. We have been friends for a long time. (since childhood)
- (h) What countries have helped out your country?
1. Our countries (we) are close allies
  2. We have a long history of helping each other
  3. Our countries have a lot in common
  4. Our countries have a lot of respect for each other
  5. We are arch rivals in sport
- (i) Our history, our world and ourselves are not perfect. What do you tend to worry about? (weather money health failure etc..)
- 
- (j) Read and discuss an ancient text that has helped many people who have felt tired and worried. The yoke represents how a weaker ox is matched with and helped by a stronger ox.

*“Come to me, all you who are **weary** and burdened, and I will give you **rest**. Take my **yoke** upon you and learn from me, for I am **gentle** and humble in **heart**, and you will find rest for your souls.<sup>30</sup> For my yoke is **easy** and my burden is **light**.” (30-33AD)*

# 53. Help

## Simple Past & Routine

- (a) Trace your hand and write down 5 verbs on your five fingers. In pairs, your partner has to look at the verb and guess what you can do. For example, verb: **teach, listen, learn, study** etc
1. You can **teach** Maths (No)
  2. You can teach Japanese (Correct)
- (b) Share about someone who helped you recently. For example:
1. Yesterday Lee **bought** (Simple past tense) me a coffee
  2. Last Friday Kim **took out** the garbage
- (c) Share about someone who helps you out every week
1. On Mondays, Lucy buys (Present tense-routine) me a coffee
  2. On Fridays, Um takes out the garbage (trash)
  3. On Tuesdays, Mary **looks after** my mother
- (d) What other habits do you do every day?

## Voice Projection / Worries

- (e) Some people who need help with their pronunciation visit a speech therapist. Practice these words first by vibrating your lips (Vrrrr). Secondly saying these words with no vibration.
1. Me Me Me Me
  2. May May May May
  3. My My My My
  4. Moh Moh Moh Moh
  5. Muu Muu Muu Muu
  6. My mother makes jam Mary makes merry
  7. Mary had a little lamb Meet me Peter meet me
- (f) Ask your partner to help you using one of the following sayings
1. *Jack, could you give us a hand? Could you....*
  2. *Jack, could you help me? Can you ...*
  3. *Jack, could you give me a minute? Could you ...*
  4. *Jack, could you do me a favour, I was wondering if you could ....*
- (g) Which person that has helped you out the most in the past?
1. He/she is always there when I need him/her
  2. He/she is very supportive of me.
  3. We have been friends for a long time. (since childhood)
- (h) What countries have helped out your country?
1. Our countries (we) are close allies
  2. We have a long history of helping each other
  3. Our countries have a lot in common
  4. Our countries have a lot of respect for each other
  5. We are arch rivals in sport
- (i) Our history, our world and ourselves are not perfect. What do you tend to worry about? (weather money health failure etc..)
- 
- (j) Read and discuss an ancient text that has helped many people who have felt tired and worried. The yoke represents how a weaker ox is matched with and helped by a stronger ox.

*“Come to me, all you who are **weary** and burdened, and I will give you **rest**. Take my **yoke** upon you and learn from me, for I am **gentle** and humble in **heart**, and you will find rest for your souls.<sup>30</sup> For my yoke is **easy** and my burden is **light**.” (30-33AD)*

# 54. I Will Waive it

## Expressing forgiveness

- (a) What is the easiest thing you can do?
1. I can **sing** well
  2. I can **speak** English
- (b) What is something difficult for you to do?
1. I can't **swim** very well
  2. I find it **difficult** to forgive
  3. **Play** the guitar. **I want to** learn how to play guitar
- (c) Share with a different partner the last time you did something wrong and you had to say **sorry**.
- (d) Role-play telling somebody you did something wrong.
- Susan: *Excuse me Julia, can I tell you something?*  
 Julia: *Can it wait?*  
 Susan: *No, I think I need to tell you now. It's not good.*  
 Julia: *Ok.*  
 Susan: *Well, you know your assignment you lent me?*  
 Julia: *Yes.*  
 Susan: *I copied it. I am really sorry. I know I did the wrong thing.*  
 Julia: *Hmmm. I am really disappointed in you Susan. I forgive you but you must go and tell the teacher.*
- (e) Role-play a similar situation with your partner.

- (f) Sometimes you can be unaware that you have hurt somebody by something you have said. Role play this situation.
- Lek: *Mat, can I talk to you for a minute. It's important.*  
 Mat: *Ok.*  
 Lek: *I'm not sure if you realised, but when you called me "Big Nose" in the meeting last night, it really hurt me.*  
 Mat: *Really! I was only joking.*  
 Lek: *I just want to say I forgive you.*  
 Mat: *I'm sorry! I didn't know it offended you.*

- (g) Role-play a similar situation with your partner.
- (h) Role play the best way to break the ice with someone after an argument even if you weren't the one (Da) who did something wrong
- Da: *Hi Benz, I'm sorry we had a disagreement yesterday*  
 Benz: *I'm sorry too*

- (i) Do you know any amazing stories of interaction and forgiveness? For example:

**China:** Zhu-ge Liang and Meng Huo Captured and released many times. Prostrated. Joined him and was appointed governor Stripped off his sleeve then pledged

*'A touch of heaven in this interaction of being forgiven and set free'. (7x)*

**World:** The story of forgiving a man 70 x 7. (30-33AD). (kingdom of heaven, tell, forgive, man)



# 54. I Will Waive it

## Expressing forgiveness

- (a) What is the easiest thing you can do?
1. I can **sing** well
  2. I can **speak** English
- (b) What is something difficult for you to do?
1. I can't **swim** very well
  2. I find it **difficult** to forgive
  3. **Play** the guitar. **I want to** learn how to play guitar
- (c) Share with a different partner the last time you did something wrong and you had to say **sorry**.
- (d) Role-play telling somebody you did something wrong.
- Susan: *Excuse me Julia, can I tell you something?*  
 Julia: *Can it wait?*  
 Susan: *No, I think I need to tell you now. It's not good.*  
 Julia: *Ok.*  
 Susan: *Well, you know your assignment you lent me?*  
 Julia: *Yes.*  
 Susan: *I copied it. I am really sorry. I know I did the wrong thing.*  
 Julia: *Hmmm. I am really disappointed in you Susan. I forgive you but you must go and tell the teacher.*
- (e) Role-play a similar situation with your partner.

- (f) Sometimes you can be unaware that you have hurt somebody by something you have said. Role play this situation.
- Lek: *Mat, can I talk to you for a minute. It's important.*  
 Mat: *Ok.*  
 Lek: *I'm not sure if you realised, but when you called me "Big Nose" in the meeting last night, it really hurt me.*  
 Mat: *Really! I was only joking.*  
 Lek: *I just want to say I forgive you.*  
 Mat: *I'm sorry! I didn't know it offended you.*

- (g) Role-play a similar situation with your partner.
- (h) Role play the best way to break the ice with someone after an argument even if you weren't the one (Da) who did something wrong
- Da: *Hi Benz, I'm sorry we had a disagreement yesterday*  
 Benz: *I'm sorry too*

- (i) Do you know any amazing stories of interaction and forgiveness? For example:

**China:** Zhu-ge Liang and Meng Huo Captured and released many times. Prostrated. Joined him and was appointed governor Stripped off his sleeve then pledged

*'A touch of heaven in this interaction of being forgiven and set free'. (7x)*

**World:** The story of forgiving a man 70 x 7. (30-33AD). (kingdom of heaven, tell, forgive, man)



# 55. Fresh is Best

## Gardening



(a) What's your favourite fruit?

*I like (lemons) It's /They are ..*

1. **yummy**
2. easy to eat
3. **sour** or **sweet**
4. good for your health
5. delicious and **juicy**  
(succulent)
6. mouth-watering (looks good to eat)

(b) Make a shape with your arms of a fruit or vegetable and your group has to guess what it is. (In 4s)

(c) Mime and teach all the following verbs to small groups. Then choose one person to mime one action from the list. Each group has only one chance to guess the mimed action.

pick	cut	mow	prune
whipper snipped	graft	weed	water
plant	spray	uproot	scatter
rake	pick up	clean	hose

(d) What activities do you like doing outside the house and why?

*Person 1: I like .... It's very ... (relaxing, fun, stimulating, good for your mind/body/health....etc)*

(e) Mark one wall as agree and one wall as disagree. Discuss

1. Coffee is better than tea

*Person 1: I think Coffee is better/not better than tea because*

2. Gardening is better than playing computers.

(f) Have you ever grown your own vegetables, herbs or fruit? Do you sometimes use or eat....?

1. home made jam or soup
2. fresh fruit you grew yourself
3. tea leaves, plants, herbs and spices from the garden.

(g) Where are the main fruit growing areas in your country?

(h) What is your favourite time of year?

1. Planting
2. Watering
3. Pruning
4. Harvesting

(i) Read through these questions and underline the key words.

1. Who was hungry?
2. What did he see?
3. How many figs were on the tree?
4. What did he do to the fig tree?
5. Why did he do it?
6. What was surprising in this story?

(j) Scan the following ancient text about a fruit tree and answer the above questions. (Can be done as a competition: Q1 Go!)

<sup>18</sup> **Early in the morning, a teacher** was on his way back to the city, he was **hungry**. <sup>19</sup> Seeing a **fig tree** by the road, he went up to it but found **nothing** on it except leaves. Then he said to it, "May you **never** bear fruit again!" Immediately the tree **withered**. <sup>20</sup> When his students saw this, they were **amazed**. "How did the fig tree wither so **quickly**?" they asked. <sup>21</sup> the teacher replied, "Truly I tell you, if you have faith and do not doubt, ..... you will receive whatever you ask for in **prayer**. (abbreviated) (NIV) (30-33AD near Jerusalem)

(k) This story is over 2000 years old. Discuss these questions.

1. Who do you think the teacher is?
2. Who does the fig tree with no fruit represent?
3. What did we learn from this story?

# 55. Fresh is Best

## Gardening



(a) What's your favourite fruit?

*I like (lemons) It's /They are ..*

1. **yummy**
2. easy to eat
3. **sour** or **sweet**
4. good for your health
5. delicious and **juicy**  
(succulent)
6. mouth-watering (looks good to eat)

(b) Make a shape with your arms of a fruit or vegetable and your group has to guess what it is. (In 4s)

(c) Mime and teach all the following verbs to small groups. Then choose one person to mime one action from the list. Each group has only one chance to guess the mimed action.

pick	cut	mow	prune
whipper snipped	graft	weed	water
plant	spray	uproot	scatter
rake	pick up	clean	hose

(d) What activities do you like doing outside the house and why?

*Person 1: I like .... It's very ... (relaxing, fun, stimulating, good for your mind/body/health....etc)*

(e) Mark one wall as agree and one wall as disagree. Discuss

1. Coffee is better than tea

*Person 1: I think Coffee is better/not better than tea because*

2. Gardening is better than playing computers.

(f) Have you ever grown your own vegetables, herbs or fruit? Do you sometimes use or eat....?

1. home made jam or soup
2. fresh fruit you grew yourself
3. tea leaves, plants, herbs and spices from the garden.

(g) Where are the main fruit growing areas in your country?

(h) What is your favourite time of year?

1. Planting
2. Watering
3. Pruning
4. Harvesting

(i) Read through these questions and underline the key words.

1. Who was hungry?
2. What did he see?
3. How many figs were on the tree?
4. What did he do to the fig tree?
5. Why did he do it?
6. What was surprising in this story?

(j) Scan the following ancient text about a fruit tree and answer the above questions. (Can be done as a competition: Q1 Go!)

<sup>18</sup> **Early in the morning, a teacher** was on his way back to the city, he was **hungry**. <sup>19</sup> Seeing a **fig tree** by the road, he went up to it but found **nothing** on it except leaves. Then he said to it, "May you **never** bear fruit again!" Immediately the tree **withered**. <sup>20</sup> When his students saw this, they were **amazed**. "How did the fig tree wither so **quickly**?" they asked. <sup>21</sup> the teacher replied, "Truly I tell you, if you have faith and do not doubt, ..... you will receive whatever you ask for in **prayer**. (abbreviated) (NIV) (30-33AD near Jerusalem)

(k) This story is over 2000 years old. Discuss these questions.

1. Who do you think the teacher is?
2. Who does the fig tree with no fruit represent?
3. What did we learn from this story?

# 56. Humiliated

## Danger of Triangles

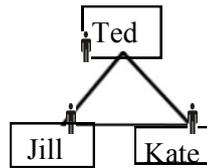
- (a) How many ways can you say *Good Morning* in another language?
- (b) In your country, demonstrate how you greet and address ...
1. your **parents**
  2. your older brother
  3. a **single lady**
  4. a **married lady**
  5. your **wife**
  6. your **sports coach**
  7. your **boss**
- (c) What are appropriate ways to greet your boss in your country?
1. Good morning Mr Smith (Surname)
  2. Good morning Tim (First name)
  3. Good morning sir/madam
  4. Good morning
  5. Hi Boss
  6. Hi Tim
- (d) Positive greetings are a sign of a positive work environment. What are the opposite meanings to these negative work environment qualities?

### Negative Qualities

1. De motivating
2. No incentive
3. Poor working environment
4. Poor working conditions
5. Terrible hours
6. Set hours (Can be positive)
7. Awful pay
8. Boring
9. Doesn't suite me

### Positive Qualities

- Very rewarding  
Lots of incentives



- (e) What's the best job you have had and why?
- (f) No job is any good when people do not communicate directly to the person who is apparently causing a problem. This builds destructive triangles (Illustrated). In groups of 5, role play the following responses that could eliminate a destructive triangle.

*Jill:* Ted always puts me down in front of people. It's very humiliating. He is so rude.

*Kate 1:* Look, Jill, I don't mind you telling me about Ted but you need to talk to him directly about this problem.

*Kate 2:* It must be difficult for you Jill but remember, this is between you and Ted.

*Kate 3:* Have you talked to Ted about this problem?

*Kate 4:* Don't build triangles Jill. They can be dangerous. You need to go and talk to Ted directly.

- (g) Have you ever felt humiliated or bullied?
- (h) Do you know any stories of somebody who caused or experienced humiliation and how they reacted to it? For e.g.

**China:** Gou Jian, King of Yue: Remembered and responded to his humiliation

1. Wo Xin Chang Dan
2. Patience and perseverance.
3. Captured by Fu Chai of King of Wu
4. Remind him of the humiliation
5. Self-imposed hardships
6. Gall and a twig
7. Internally faked submission (loyalty)



**World:** Tenants of a vineyard who caused great humiliation to the owner of the vineyard (30-33AD) (**vineyard, tenants, owner, servant, son, beat, killed**)

# 56. Humiliated

## Danger of Triangles

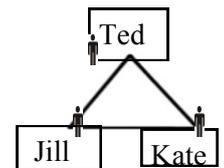
- (a) How many ways can you say *Good Morning* in another language?
- (b) In your country, demonstrate how you greet and address ...
1. your **parents**
  2. your older brother
  3. a **single lady**
  4. a **married lady**
  5. your **wife**
  6. your **sports coach**
  7. your **boss**
- (c) What are appropriate ways to greet your boss in your country?
1. Good morning Mr Smith (Surname)
  2. Good morning Tim (First name)
  3. Good morning sir/madam
  4. Good morning
  5. Hi Boss
  6. Hi Tim
- (d) Positive greetings are a sign of a positive work environment. What are the opposite meanings to these negative work environment qualities?

### Negative Qualities

1. De motivating
2. No incentive
3. Poor working environment
4. Poor working conditions
5. Terrible hours
6. Set hours (Can be positive)
7. Awful pay
8. Boring
9. Doesn't suite me

### Positive Qualities

- Very rewarding  
Lots of incentives



- (e) What's the best job you have had and why?
- (f) No job is any good when people do not communicate directly to the person who is apparently causing a problem. This builds destructive triangles (Illustrated). In groups of 5, role play the following responses that could eliminate a destructive triangle.

*Jill:* Ted always puts me down in front of people. It's very humiliating. He is so rude.

*Kate 1:* Look, Jill, I don't mind you telling me about Ted but you need to talk to him directly about this problem.

*Kate 2:* It must be difficult for you Jill but remember, this is between you and Ted.

*Kate 3:* Have you talked to Ted about this problem?

*Kate 4:* Don't build triangles Jill. They can be dangerous. You need to go and talk to Ted directly.

- (g) Have you ever felt humiliated or bullied?
- (h) Do you know any stories of somebody who caused or experienced humiliation and how they reacted to it? For e.g.

**China:** Gou Jian, King of Yue: Remembered and responded to his humiliation

1. Wo Xin Chang Dan
2. Patience and perseverance.
3. Captured by Fu Chai of King of Wu
4. Remind him of the humiliation
5. Self-imposed hardships
6. Gall and a twig
7. Internally faked submission (loyalty)



**World:** Tenants of a vineyard who caused great humiliation to the owner of the vineyard (30-33AD) (**vineyard, tenants, owner, servant, son, beat, killed**)

# 57. Kingdom Victory

## Describing/Discussing

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: *I'm going to climb the Great wall of China.*  
 Person 2: Please **be careful**. Take care. Good luck

(b) Choose one person to draw a map of China on the board and another to mark in the location of the Great Wall of China.

(c) How would you describe the Great Wall of China? (Illustrate a section on the board).

### Vocabulary

1. Amazing (**big, huge**)
2. Unbelievable (**unique**)
3. Very historical (**old**)
4. Staggering
5. Bewildering
6. Mind blowing
7. In need of repair
8. Crumbling



(d) Have you ever been to the Great Wall of China?

Person 1: **Yes** I have. I went there... ( ) (when). It was ... ( ).  
 I couldn't believe my eyes when I saw it.  
 Person 2: **No** I haven't but I would love to go there one day.

(e) Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

*I think the Great Wall of China is (one of) the most amazing structure (s) in the world!*

(f) Role-play in groups of seven discussing the above statement. One person reads the statement and three of you agree and three of you disagree in this order P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6

### Agree or mutual

Person 1: *Yes I (totally) agree.*  
 Person 3: *The Great Wall is amazing and bewildering.*  
 Person 5: *Actually, I don't really know, I haven't been there.*

### Disagree

Person 2: *Actually, I don't agree.*  
 Person 4: *I agree with what you are saying but I don't totally agree.*  
 Person 6: *I can understand what you are saying but I think ..*

(g) The Great Wall of China was built to help establish and protect a kingdom. What do you know about this long wall?

- |                        |              |               |            |
|------------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| <b>1. Age</b>          | a) 500 BC    | b) 1400 AD    | c) 33 AD   |
| <b>2. Length</b>       | a) 4400kms   | b) 5400kms    | c) 6400kms |
| <b>3. Reason</b>       | a) tourism   | b) defense    | c) power   |
| <b>4. Successful</b>   | a) yes       | b) no         | c) maybe   |
| <b>5. Condition</b>    | a) crumbling | b) reasonable | c) perfect |
| <b>6. Cost (Lives)</b> | a) 1 million | b) 3 million  | c) 5 mill  |

(h) What do you know about *Lady Mengjiang Crying on the Wall*?  
 three days buried collapse concubine revenge

(i) In history, which kingdom has been the most successful kingdom and what did it cost to establish it? (Age, reason, success, condition and cost). For example:

**World:** The Kingdom of God: The Easter story: The resurrection of the King as reported by Mary, Peter, John and Thomas. Jerusalem (30-33AD)  
 (early, tomb, empty, here, ran, remember, gardener, visit, locked, touch, gardener)

# 57. Kingdom Victory

## Describing/Discussing

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: *I'm going to climb the Great wall of China.*  
 Person 2: Please **be careful**. Take care. Good luck

(b) Choose one person to draw a map of China on the board and another to mark in the location of the Great Wall of China.

(c) How would you describe the Great Wall of China? (Illustrate a section on the board).

### Vocabulary

1. Amazing (**big, huge**)
2. Unbelievable (**unique**)
3. Very historical (**old**)
4. Staggering
5. Bewildering
6. Mind blowing
7. In need of repair
8. Crumbling



(d) Have you ever been to the Great Wall of China?

Person 1: **Yes** I have. I went there... ( ) (when). It was ... ( ).  
 I couldn't believe my eyes when I saw it.  
 Person 2: **No** I haven't but I would love to go there one day.

(e) Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

*I think the Great Wall of China is (one of) the most amazing structure (s) in the world!*

(f) Role-play in groups of seven discussing the above statement. One person reads the statement and three of you agree and three of you disagree in this order P1 P2 P3 P4 P5 P6

### Agree or mutual

Person 1: *Yes I (totally) agree.*  
 Person 3: *The Great Wall is amazing and bewildering.*  
 Person 5: *Actually, I don't really know, I haven't been there.*

### Disagree

Person 2: *Actually, I don't agree.*  
 Person 4: *I agree with what you are saying but I don't totally agree.*  
 Person 6: *I can understand what you are saying but I think ..*

(g) The Great Wall of China was built to help establish and protect a kingdom. What do you know about this long wall?

- |                        |              |               |            |
|------------------------|--------------|---------------|------------|
| <b>1. Age</b>          | a) 500 BC    | b) 1400 AD    | c) 33 AD   |
| <b>2. Length</b>       | a) 4400kms   | b) 5400kms    | c) 6400kms |
| <b>3. Reason</b>       | a) tourism   | b) defense    | c) power   |
| <b>4. Successful</b>   | a) yes       | b) no         | c) maybe   |
| <b>5. Condition</b>    | a) crumbling | b) reasonable | c) perfect |
| <b>6. Cost (Lives)</b> | a) 1 million | b) 3 million  | c) 5 mill  |

(h) What do you know about *Lady Mengjiang Crying on the Wall*?  
 three days buried collapse concubine revenge

(i) In history, which kingdom has been the most successful kingdom and what did it cost to establish it? (Age, reason, success, condition and cost). For example:

**World:** The Kingdom of God: The Easter story: The resurrection of the King as reported by Mary, Peter, John and Thomas. Jerusalem (30-33AD)  
 (early, tomb, empty, here, ran, remember, gardener, visit, locked, touch, gardener)

# 58. Just in Time

## Debriefing

- (a) Role play buying some fruit in a fruit shop in groups of four.

Shopper One: I like **those** apples  
 Shopper Two: Do you like **these** lychees?  
 Shopper Three: I like **this** pineapple  
 Shopper Four: Can you pass me **that** box so I can put the fruit in it

- (b) Do a lychee (egg) and spoon relay race in teams of four (two people from each team up each end).  
 (c) Did your team win? Share about a time when you were successful or failed.  
 1. Sports game or exam  
 2. Date or attempt at cooking  
 (d) Why is it better not to call something a *failure* but to call it a *learning experience*?  
 (e) Discuss what this phrase means “A failure to debrief is a failure to learn”.

- (f) Teacher will read through/demonstrate these basketball skills and then the students have to guess which one they are.  
 What is this?  
 1. Passing          Shooting          Guarding  
 2. Rebounding      Dribbling          Encouraging  
 3. Defence          Offence          Talking on court

- (g) A debrief usually involves three questions. Read through the following example in groups of four.

Coach: Question 1: **What went well?**  
 Player 1: Our three point shooting was great.  
 Coach: Question 2: **What didn't go (so) well?**  
 Player 2: Our defence could have been better.  
 Coach: Question 3: **How could we do better next time?**  
 Player 3: Maybe we should change formation

- (h) In groups of six, debrief a basketball team who have just lost a game. One person is the coach.

Coach: Ok, what did we do well today?  
 Player 3: Our passing was very good.

- (i) Sometimes people wait for something to arrive to try to improve their situation. Do you know any stories from your culture of people who were waiting for something to arrive or something to happen. For example:

**China:** Tang Ming Huang and Yang Guifei waited for the arrival of lychees which required a lot of teamwork.  
 1. Despatched teams of horses and boats.  
 2. Relayed the precious fruit.  
 3. Enormous expense.  
 4. Dust of horses.



**World:** In 30 AD near the Jordan River, many people went out to the desert to hear the messenger of a long awaited deliverer and King. (**someone, desert, river, stop, turn repent, near, water, Spirit, sandals, look, baptise, death, life**)

# 58. Just in Time

## Debriefing

- (a) Role play buying some fruit in a fruit shop in groups of four.

Shopper One: I like **those** apples  
 Shopper Two: Do you like **these** lychees?  
 Shopper Three: I like **this** pineapple  
 Shopper Four: Can you pass me **that** box so I can put the fruit in it

- (b) Do a lychee (egg) and spoon relay race in teams of four (two people from each team up each end).  
 (c) Did your team win? Share about a time when you were successful or failed.  
 1. Sports game or exam  
 2. Date or attempt at cooking  
 (d) Why is it better not to call something a *failure* but to call it a *learning experience*?  
 (e) Discuss what this phrase means “A failure to debrief is a failure to learn”.

- (f) Teacher will read through/demonstrate these basketball skills and then the students have to guess which one they are.  
 What is this?  
 1. Passing          Shooting          Guarding  
 2. Rebounding      Dribbling          Encouraging  
 3. Defence          Offence          Talking on court

- (g) A debrief usually involves three questions. Read through the following example in groups of four.

Coach: Question 1: **What went well?**  
 Player 1: Our three point shooting was great.  
 Coach: Question 2: **What didn't go (so) well?**  
 Player 2: Our defence could have been better.  
 Coach: Question 3: **How could we do better next time?**  
 Player 3: Maybe we should change formation

- (h) In groups of six, debrief a basketball team who have just lost a game. One person is the coach.

Coach: Ok, what did we do well today?  
 Player 3: Our passing was very good.

- (i) Sometimes people wait for something to arrive to try to improve their situation. Do you know any stories from your culture of people who were waiting for something to arrive or something to happen. For example:

**China:** Tang Ming Huang and Yang Guifei waited for the arrival of lychees which required a lot of teamwork.  
 1. Despatched teams of horses and boats.  
 2. Relayed the precious fruit.  
 3. Enormous expense.  
 4. Dust of horses.



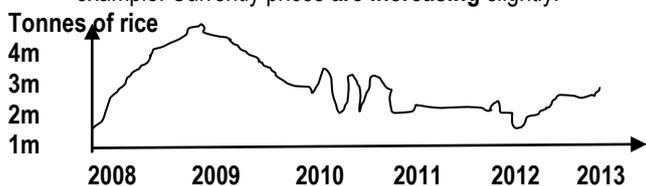
**World:** In 30 AD near the Jordan River, many people went out to the desert to hear the messenger of a long awaited deliverer and King. (**someone, desert, river, stop, turn repent, near, water, Spirit, sandals, look, baptise, death, life**)

# 59. That's Life

## Farming



- (a) Share with a partner
1. I grew up on a **farm** (in a **city**, in a **town**)
  2. I visited a ...farm (when) ...
  3. My father/uncle/friend is a **farmer**
- (b) Draw a map of your country and show where different crops are grown in your country. (**rice, wheat...**)
- (c) What do you think makes a good farmer?  
*A good farmer should be*
1. physically **strong, experienced** and mechanical
  2. knowledgeable, hardworking and persevering.
- (d) Draw a picture and label each part of a plant.  
**root stem head ear branch bud leaf**
- (e) Role play farmer George asking farmer Geoff to help him.  
*George: Can you give me a hand. I need somebody to...*
1. pull out, dig out or spray some weeds
  2. water the crop and fertilize the soil
  3. plough some ground (prepare the soil)
  4. harvest the crop
  5. drive the truck and unload the bin
  6. check the plants and keep the birds away
  7. operate a machine and plant (sow) the seed
- Geoff: That should be ok, I just have to check my diary.*
- (f) Often farmers need help, share about difficult times for farmers in your country. For example
1. Floods, droughts and lack of moisture.
  2. Disease, weeds, birds and insects.
  3. Poor soil and prices
- (g) Share, as a class, the 'ups and downs' in the life of a farmer.  
*Farmer: I planted a crop in a dry paddock (field)*  
**Fortunately** it started to rain  
*Next person: Unfortunately* many weeds germinated  
*Next person: Fortunately* Jack sprayed my weeds.
- (h) Line graphs can help show the fluctuations for production.
1. Comparing two times, use simple past. For example. From 2009 to 2010, rice production **decreased** 1m tonnes
  2. If not mentioning 2 different times, you can use present perfect. For example, over the last 5 years or since 2008, rice production **has risen** 1m tonnes
  3. If talking about present trend. Use continuous tense. For example. Currently prices **are increasing** slightly.



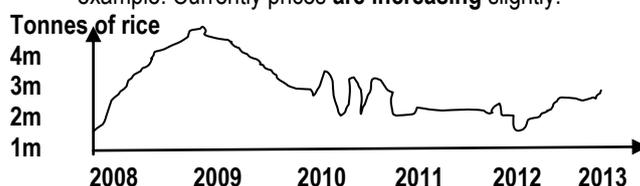
- (i) Read the following words then describe the line chart above
1. Increased: rose skyrocketed jumped improved.
  2. Decrease: dropped, fell, nosedived
  3. Levelled: remained stable, evened out, steadied
  4. Mixed: fluctuated, up and down. dipped
  5. Turning point: peaked, bottomed out, hit rock bottom
- (j) Weeds and pests can cause significant fluctuations to yields. Are there any noxious weeds/introduced species that have caused harm to farming/the environment in your country?
- (k) Is there anything in your life that is noxious (you don't like)?
- (l) Do you know the parable of a farmer who went out to sow seeds in 4 fields but unfortunately many things went wrong? 30-33AD. (**seed, scattered, hard, birds, dirt, rock, 100x**)

# 59. That's Life

## Farming



- (a) Share with a partner
1. I grew up on a **farm** (in a **city**, in a **town**)
  2. I visited a ...farm (when) ...
  3. My father/uncle/friend is a **farmer**
- (b) Draw a map of your country and show where different crops are grown in your country. (**rice, wheat...**)
- (c) What do you think makes a good farmer?  
*A good farmer should be*
1. physically **strong, experienced** and mechanical
  2. knowledgeable, hardworking and persevering.
- (d) Draw a picture and label each part of a plant.  
**root stem head ear branch bud leaf**
- (e) Role play farmer George asking farmer Geoff to help him.  
*George: Can you give me a hand. I need somebody to...*
1. pull out, dig out or spray some weeds
  2. water the crop and fertilize the soil
  3. plough some ground (prepare the soil)
  4. harvest the crop
  5. drive the truck and unload the bin
  6. check the plants and keep the birds away
  7. operate a machine and plant (sow) the seed
- Geoff: That should be ok, I just have to check my diary.*
- (f) Often farmers need help, share about difficult times for farmers in your country. For example
1. Floods, droughts and lack of moisture.
  2. Disease, weeds, birds and insects.
  3. Poor soil and prices
- (g) Share, as a class, the 'ups and downs' in the life of a farmer.  
*Farmer: I planted a crop in a dry paddock (field)*  
**Fortunately** it started to rain  
*Next person: Unfortunately* many weeds germinated  
*Next person: Fortunately* Jack sprayed my weeds.
- (h) Line graphs can help show the fluctuations for production.
1. Comparing two times, use simple past. For example. From 2009 to 2010, rice production **decreased** 1m tonnes
  2. If not mentioning 2 different times, you can use present perfect. For example, over the last 5 years or since 2008, rice production **has risen** 1m tonnes
  3. If talking about present trend. Use continuous tense. For example. Currently prices **are increasing** slightly.



- (i) Read the following words then describe the line chart above
1. Increased: rose skyrocketed jumped improved.
  2. Decrease: dropped, fell, nosedived
  3. Levelled: remained stable, evened out, steadied
  4. Mixed: fluctuated, up and down. dipped
  5. Turning point: peaked, bottomed out, hit rock bottom
- (j) Weeds and pests can cause significant fluctuations to yields. Are there any noxious weeds/introduced species that have caused harm to farming/the environment in your country?
- (k) Is there anything in your life that is noxious (you don't like)?
- (l) Do you know the parable of a farmer who went out to sow seeds in 4 fields but unfortunately many things went wrong? 30-33AD. (**seed, scattered, hard, birds, dirt, rock, 100x**)

# 60. A Storm is Brewing

## Travel: Cultural Shock

- (a) Role play being on a boat.  
*Passenger: Does this **boat** go to the city?*  
*Boat Crew: Yes it does*  
*Passenger: How much does a ticket cost?*  
*(How much is a **ticket**?)*  
*Boat Crew: 70 Baht*
- (b) Describe different types of **water transport** in your country
- (c) Share about your feelings on a journey you went on?  
*When I went to...() (place) I felt...() (adjective) because...()*
1. **happy, excited** or amazed
  2. **sad** (miserable)
  3. **tired** (exhausted)
  4. *frustrated*
  5. **surprised** (+) or shocked (-)
  6. **afraid, terrified** or anxious
- (d) Role play what to say to someone who looks a little bit down  
*Mr. Kind: You look a little bit down. Is everything ok?*  
*Mr. Sad: I'm ok.*  
*Mr. Kind: Are you sure? You can tell me, I'm your friend. I'm ready to listen to you about anything (I'm all ears).*  
*Mr. Sad: Well, actually, I am feeling a little homesick. I really miss my country and this country is crazy. The traffic is terrible and the canal boats drive too fast and they are so crowded. I'm shocked.*
- (e) Have you ever felt homesick? Role-play comforting Sarah who is experiencing homesickness.  
*Sarah: I'm feeling so homesick. I just want to go home.*  
*Friend: It must be very difficult for you.*  
*Sarah: Yes it is*  
*Friend: Don't worry Sarah, your feelings are quite normal.*  
*Sarah: What do you mean?*  
*Friend: It's called cultural shock.*  
*Sarah: Tell me more*  
*Friend: Cultural shock is a cycle everybody experiences at some time when in another culture. There are 4 stages*
1. *Honeymoon (excitement)*
  2. *Withdrawal (frustration)*
  3. *Adjustment.*
  4. *Enthusiasm (celebrate two cultures)*
- Sarah: I guess I am frustrated saying this culture is crazy.*  
*Friend: Better not to think of this country's culture as crazy, but think of it as different. Remember, this is your new culture, it's normal here for there to be a lot of traffic and for people to ride in overcrowded canal boats.*
- (f) Why would you travel to another country? Share a good reason to travel to a different place. For example:
1. To see some beautiful beaches
  2. To experience a new culture and new things
  3. To expand my horizon (broaden my experience)
  4. To find a significant or divine purpose or meaning in life
- (g) Do you know any cultural journeys that sought or revealed a significant divine purpose? For example:
- China:** Qin Shi Huang and Han Wu Di wanted immortal life. Some 500 young people were sent to Japan
- China:** 'The Eight Immortals Cross the Sea'. A story illustrating divine power in crossing the water.
- World:** A great storm (30-33AD) calmed down by a simple divine action or the story of someone who walked on water. (**sea, boat, afraid, saw, terrified, faith**)



# 60. A Storm is Brewing

## Travel: Cultural Shock

- (a) Role play being on a boat.  
*Passenger: Does this **boat** go to the city?*  
*Boat Crew: Yes it does*  
*Passenger: How much does a ticket cost?*  
*(How much is a **ticket**?)*  
*Boat Crew: 70 Baht*
- (b) Describe different types of **water transport** in your country
- (c) Share about your feelings on a journey you went on?  
*When I went to...() (place) I felt...() (adjective) because...()*
1. **happy, excited** or amazed
  2. **sad** (miserable)
  3. **tired** (exhausted)
  4. *frustrated*
  5. **surprised** (+) or shocked (-)
  6. **afraid, terrified** or anxious
- (d) Role play what to say to someone who looks a little bit down  
*Mr. Kind: You look a little bit down. Is everything ok?*  
*Mr. Sad: I'm ok.*  
*Mr. Kind: Are you sure? You can tell me, I'm your friend. I'm ready to listen to you about anything (I'm all ears).*  
*Mr. Sad: Well, actually, I am feeling a little homesick. I really miss my country and this country is crazy. The traffic is terrible and the canal boats drive too fast and they are so crowded. I'm shocked.*
- (e) Have you ever felt homesick? Role-play comforting Sarah who is experiencing homesickness.  
*Sarah: I'm feeling so homesick. I just want to go home.*  
*Friend: It must be very difficult for you.*  
*Sarah: Yes it is*  
*Friend: Don't worry Sarah, your feelings are quite normal.*  
*Sarah: What do you mean?*  
*Friend: It's called cultural shock.*  
*Sarah: Tell me more*  
*Friend: Cultural shock is a cycle everybody experiences at some time when in another culture. There are 4 stages*
1. *Honeymoon (excitement)*
  2. *Withdrawal (frustration)*
  3. *Adjustment.*
  4. *Enthusiasm (celebrate two cultures)*
- Sarah: I guess I am frustrated saying this culture is crazy.*  
*Friend: Better not to think of this country's culture as crazy, but think of it as different. Remember, this is your new culture, it's normal here for there to be a lot of traffic and for people to ride in overcrowded canal boats.*
- (f) Why would you travel to another country? Share a good reason to travel to a different place. For example:
1. To see some beautiful beaches
  2. To experience a new culture and new things
  3. To expand my horizon (broaden my experience)
  4. To find a significant or divine purpose or meaning in life
- (g) Do you know any cultural journeys that sought or revealed a significant divine purpose? For example:
- China:** Qin Shi Huang and Han Wu Di wanted immortal life. Some 500 young people were sent to Japan
- China:** 'The Eight Immortals Cross the Sea'. A story illustrating divine power in crossing the water.
- World:** A great storm (30-33AD) calmed down by a simple divine action or the story of someone who walked on water. (**sea, boat, afraid, saw, terrified, faith**)



# 61. Clean Sweep

## Delegating Cleaning Jobs

- (a) Do you like doing housework? (In pairs)
1. Yes I do
  2. No I don't
  3. Sometimes. It depends on what type of housework.
- (b) In your house, who usually does the housework?
- (c) Role play an angry Mum cleaning the house in groups of four
- Mum: *What a mess! Whose **shoes** are **these**?*  
Child 1: ***They** are mine. They are my shoes*  
Mum: *Whose rubbish is **this**?*  
Child 2: *It's not mine.*  
Mum: *Is **that** your **dirty coffee cup**?*  
Child 3: *Yes it is, sorry mum.*
- (d) Mime the following actions and the students have to guess what action the mime artist is doing.
1. **pick up** the... **mop** the ... **take out** the ...
  2. **dust** the ... **clean** and **wipe** the ..
  3. **sweep**.... **scrub** the ...
  4. **buy** some ... **prepare** the ...
  5. **set** the ... **light** the ...
  6. **blow up** the ... **put up** the..
- (e) In groups of five, role play one person delegating jobs preparing for a Chinese New Year celebration at somebody's house.
- Delegator: *Excuse me you guys, **can you** help me prepare for years' festival?*  
Everybody: *Yeh, sure.*  
Delegator: *Max, **could you** sweep the kitchen?*  
Max: *Ok. I can do that.*  
Delegator: *Shine, **can you** buy all the ingredients to make dumplings?*  
Shine: *That's fine by me.*  
Delegator: *Tom, **would you mind** buying some firecrackers?*  
Tom: *No problem.*  
Delegator: *Grace, **I was wondering if you could put up the red banners and also** tell the story of Nian*  
Grace: *Sure. I can also buy some red envelopes.*
- (f) Share with each other what you know about the traditional story behind Chinese New Year, "The Story of Nian".
1. Mythical beast
  2. Devour livestock
  3. Attack
  4. Scared
  5. Little child wearing red
  6. Firecrackers
  7. Red lanterns and red spring scrolls
- (g) What do you usually do during Chinese New Year?
- (h) Chinese New Year is not only about cleaning the house but cleaning out or appeasing (satisfying) evil spirits. Do you know any other ways or stories in your culture of how people try to get rid of or appease evil spirits? For example:
- World:** The story of the man delivered from being full of evil spirits and how the evil spirits left him and went into a herd of pigs. 30-33AD Sea of Galilee (**chains, naked, yelled, dead, met, know, out, sound mind, pleaded, went, told**)



# 61. Clean Sweep

## Delegating Cleaning Jobs

- (a) Do you like doing housework? (In pairs)
1. Yes I do
  2. No I don't
  3. Sometimes. It depends on what type of housework.
- (b) In your house, who usually does the housework?
- (c) Role play an angry Mum cleaning the house in groups of four
- Mum: *What a mess! Whose **shoes** are **these**?*  
Child 1: ***They** are mine. They are my shoes*  
Mum: *Whose rubbish is **this**?*  
Child 2: *It's not mine.*  
Mum: *Is **that** your **dirty coffee cup**?*  
Child 3: *Yes it is, sorry mum.*
- (d) Mime the following actions and the students have to guess what action the mime artist is doing.
1. **pick up** the... **mop** the ... **take out** the ...
  2. **dust** the ... **clean** and **wipe** the ..
  3. **sweep**.... **scrub** the ...
  4. **buy** some ... **prepare** the ...
  5. **set** the ... **light** the ...
  6. **blow up** the ... **put up** the..
- (e) In groups of five, role play one person delegating jobs preparing for a Chinese New Year celebration at somebody's house.
- Delegator: *Excuse me you guys, **can you** help me prepare for years' festival?*  
Everybody: *Yeh, sure.*  
Delegator: *Max, **could you** sweep the kitchen?*  
Max: *Ok. I can do that.*  
Delegator: *Shine, **can you** buy all the ingredients to make dumplings?*  
Shine: *That's fine by me.*  
Delegator: *Tom, **would you mind** buying some firecrackers?*  
Tom: *No problem.*  
Delegator: *Grace, **I was wondering if you could put up the red banners and also** tell the story of Nian*  
Grace: *Sure. I can also buy some red envelopes.*
- (f) Share with each other what you know about the traditional story behind Chinese New Year, "The Story of Nian".
1. Mythical beast
  2. Devour livestock
  3. Attack
  4. Scared
  5. Little child wearing red
  6. Firecrackers
  7. Red lanterns and red spring scrolls
- (g) What do you usually do during Chinese New Year?
- (h) Chinese New Year is not only about cleaning the house but cleaning out or appeasing (satisfying) evil spirits. Do you know any other ways or stories in your culture of how people try to get rid of or appease evil spirits? For example:
- World:** The story of the man delivered from being full of evil spirits and how the evil spirits left him and went into a herd of pigs. 30-33AD Sea of Galilee (**chains, naked, yelled, dead, met, know, out, sound mind, pleaded, went, told**)



## 62. Admiration and Shame

### Nursing and dealing with gossip

- (a) Complete this sentence.

When you go to **hospital** you need to take ... ( ) For e.g. your pajamas, toiletries and a change of clothes

- (b) In pairs, role play being a **nurse** and a **patient** in a hospital

Nurse: Good morning, how are you today?  
 Patient: I am feeling (**sick, good**) a lot **better**  
 Nurse: Is this your pillow, shirt, medicine etc?  
 Patient: Yes it is / No it isn't  
 Nurse: Are these your (pajamas, tablets, belongings)?  
 Patient: Yes they are / No they aren't  
 Nurse: Ok, I will just check your blood pressure.  
 Nurse: Can you **put your arm out** and clench your fist, now relax. Good job. Well done. Do you feel ok?  
 Patient: I feel a little bit dizzy  
 Nurse: You can **lie down**. Now **turn** onto your side  
 Patient: Can I roll over to the other side?  
 Nurse: Sure, just let me help you.  
 Patient: Thank you  
 Nurse: Remember: You **need to/have to/ must** take these pills before eating  
 Patient: I will take these tablets as soon as my meal arrives  
 Nurse: Great, just press this button if you need any help

- (c) Role play a nurse and patient chatting about themselves, other patients, doctors and nurses who are in the same room.

1. Do you...? (Yes I do / No I don't)  
 2. Does he/she..? (Yes he/she does No he/she doesn't)  
 3. Do they/the doctors..? (Yes they do / No they don't)

- (d) Sometimes people gossip about other people even if they are not sure it's 100% true. Role play this response to gossip.

Nurse 1: Did you hear Jesse is telling everybody that Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and he should retire.  
 Nurse 2: Are you sure he said that? You should go and ask Jesse and check what you are saying is true.  
 Nurse 1: Jesse, I heard you told a patient Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and should retire.  
 Jesse: That's not true! I said he is very wise and should never retire

- (e) Gossip can lead to shame for many people. Rate what things are shameful in your country. (2/10 - ok 9/10 - very shameful)

1. Blowing your nose loudly or slurping in public  
 2. Not paying for/shouting/treating overseas guests  
 3. Sending your parents to an old age home  
 4. Marrying someone from a different culture  
 5. Leaving your community  
 6. Not getting married  
 7. To be classified as unclean  
 8. Not holding down a job  
 9. Have a medical condition



- (f) In Chinese history, it was a public shame to have poor calligraphy. Demonstrate your handwriting/calligraphy

- (g) Sun Zhongshan said of calligraphy 'Everything for the public'.

Have you ever done anything that was shameful in public?

- (h) Another historic Chinese quote says *Knowing what is shame, then you will become brave*. Are you very brave?

- (i) Do you any other stories of somebody who was brave to overcome shame? For example:

**World:** A woman with great shame (bleeding problem 30AD) reached out to touch a teacher passing by. (**doctor, money, cure, who, daughter, well**)

## 62. Admiration and Shame

### Nursing and dealing with gossip

- (a) Complete this sentence.

When you go to **hospital** you need to take ... ( ) For e.g. your pajamas, toiletries and a change of clothes

- (b) In pairs, role play being a **nurse** and a **patient** in a hospital

Nurse: Good morning, how are you today?  
 Patient: I am feeling (**sick, good**) a lot **better**  
 Nurse: Is this your pillow, shirt, medicine etc?  
 Patient: Yes it is / No it isn't  
 Nurse: Are these your (pajamas, tablets, belongings)?  
 Patient: Yes they are / No they aren't  
 Nurse: Ok, I will just check your blood pressure.  
 Nurse: Can you **put your arm out** and clench your fist, now relax. Good job. Well done. Do you feel ok?  
 Patient: I feel a little bit dizzy  
 Nurse: You can **lie down**. Now **turn** onto your side  
 Patient: Can I roll over to the other side?  
 Nurse: Sure, just let me help you.  
 Patient: Thank you  
 Nurse: Remember: You **need to/have to/ must** take these pills before eating  
 Patient: I will take these tablets as soon as my meal arrives  
 Nurse: Great, just press this button if you need any help

- (c) Role play a nurse and patient chatting about themselves, other patients, doctors and nurses who are in the same room.

1. Do you...? (Yes I do / No I don't)  
 2. Does he/she..? (Yes he/she does No he/she doesn't)  
 3. Do they/the doctors..? (Yes they do / No they don't)

- (d) Sometimes people gossip about other people even if they are not sure it's 100% true. Role play this response to gossip.

Nurse 1: Did you hear Jesse is telling everybody that Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and he should retire.  
 Nurse 2: Are you sure he said that? You should go and ask Jesse and check what you are saying is true.  
 Nurse 1: Jesse, I heard you told a patient Dr Smith is too old to be a doctor and should retire.  
 Jesse: That's not true! I said he is very wise and should never retire

- (e) Gossip can lead to shame for many people. Rate what things are shameful in your country. (2/10 - ok 9/10 - very shameful)

1. Blowing your nose loudly or slurping in public  
 2. Not paying for/shouting/treating overseas guests  
 3. Sending your parents to an old age home  
 4. Marrying someone from a different culture  
 5. Leaving your community  
 6. Not getting married  
 7. To be classified as unclean  
 8. Not holding down a job  
 9. Have a medical condition



- (f) In Chinese history, it was a public shame to have poor calligraphy. Demonstrate your handwriting/calligraphy

- (g) Sun Zhongshan said of calligraphy 'Everything for the public'.

Have you ever done anything that was shameful in public?

- (h) Another historic Chinese quote says *Knowing what is shame, then you will become brave*. Are you very brave?

- (i) Do you any other stories of somebody who was brave to overcome shame? For example:

**World:** A woman with great shame (bleeding problem 30AD) reached out to touch a teacher passing by. (**doctor, money, cure, who, daughter, well**)

# 63. Food for Thought

## Restaurant

- (a) Share with a partner your favourite food/dish

Person 1: *What is your favourite food?*

Person 2: *I like (food) because it is*

flavoursome **tasty** **yummy**  
 scrumptious **spicy** delicious



- (b) Sit down if true for you when someone says a statement about eating. For example:

1. *Yesterday you ate fish.* (If yes, sit down)
2. *This morning you had toast for breakfast.* (If yes, sit down)

- (c) How do you make your favourite dish? For example **cut, slice chop, spread, mix, add, pour, heat, marinate**. Brainstorm and dramatise any verbs used for cooking.

- (d) Draw a map of your country and show which food is famous from which area or particular to an area (Local delicacy). What food in your country needs an acquired taste?

- (e) Role play a conversation between a waiter greeting a customer at a **restaurant**.

Waiter: *Good afternoon, welcome to Krabi*

Customer: *Could I have **table** for 1 please?*

Waiter: *Sure, just follow me. Is this table Ok?*

Customer: *It's great thanks.*

Waiter: *Here is the Menu, Today's special is spicy fish. (3 minutes later) Are you ready to order?*

Customer: *What would you suggest?*

Waiter: *I would suggest the Seafood Tom Yum Talay. It is very popular here. I would also recommend the clams and BBQ Prawns. Southern Thailand is known for it's seafood. Our local specialty is steamed fish with lemon sauce*

Customer: *I'll have the steamed fish with lemon sauce thanks.*

Waiter: *Ok, so that is one steamed fish with lemon sauce.*

Customer: *That's correct*

Waiter: *It won't be long (10 minutes later- (serves the meal) So that's one ....(..) (10 minutes later) How was your meal?*

Customer: *It was delicious*

Waiter: *In Thailand, we say 'Aroy Maak' which means delicious. Can you say 'Aroy Maak'*

Customer: *'Aroy Maak'*

Waiter: *Wow! Are you Thai?*

*Is this your first time to Thailand?*

Customer: *Yes it is.*

Waiter: *How long have you been in Thailand?*

Customer: *Just three days*

Waiter: *What's the best thing about Thailand so far?*

Customer: *I think the people, they are very friendly.*

*Could I have the bill please?*

- (f) Has there ever been a shortage of food in your country? Has your country ever experienced famine, drought or flood? Are there many welfare organisations to take care of those people who do not have enough money to buy food?

- (g) Is philanthropy (Individuals or companies) common in your country? Do you know anybody who has helped people in need?

- (h) Some welfare organisations take on names like '*Feeding the five thousand*'. Do you know the true story behind this saying? Sea of Galilee 30-33AD. (**lake, crowds, getting late, no shops, little boy, 2 fish, 5 bread, remote, sit down, look up**)

# 63. Food for Thought

## Restaurant

- (a) Share with a partner your favourite food/dish

Person 1: *What is your favourite food?*

Person 2: *I like (food) because it is*

flavoursome **tasty** **yummy**  
 scrumptious **spicy** delicious



- (b) Sit down if true for you when someone says a statement about eating. For example:

1. *Yesterday you ate fish.* (If yes, sit down)
2. *This morning you had toast for breakfast.* (If yes, sit down)

- (c) How do you make your favourite dish? For example **cut, slice chop, spread, mix, add, pour, heat, marinate**. Brainstorm and dramatise any verbs used for cooking.

- (d) Draw a map of your country and show which food is famous from which area or particular to an area (Local delicacy). What food in your country needs an acquired taste?

- (e) Role play a conversation between a waiter greeting a customer at a **restaurant**.

Waiter: *Good afternoon, welcome to Krabi*

Customer: *Could I have **table** for 1 please?*

Waiter: *Sure, just follow me. Is this table Ok?*

Customer: *It's great thanks.*

Waiter: *Here is the Menu, Today's special is spicy fish. (3 minutes later) Are you ready to order?*

Customer: *What would you suggest?*

Waiter: *I would suggest the Seafood Tom Yum Talay. It is very popular here. I would also recommend the clams and BBQ Prawns. Southern Thailand is known for it's seafood. Our local specialty is steamed fish with lemon sauce*

Customer: *I'll have the steamed fish with lemon sauce thanks.*

Waiter: *Ok, so that is one steamed fish with lemon sauce.*

Customer: *That's correct*

Waiter: *It won't be long (10 minutes later- (serves the meal) So that's one ....(..) (10 minutes later) How was your meal?*

Customer: *It was delicious*

Waiter: *In Thailand, we say 'Aroy Maak' which means delicious. Can you say 'Aroy Maak'*

Customer: *'Aroy Maak'*

Waiter: *Wow! Are you Thai?*

*Is this your first time to Thailand?*

Customer: *Yes it is.*

Waiter: *How long have you been in Thailand?*

Customer: *Just three days*

Waiter: *What's the best thing about Thailand so far?*

Customer: *I think the people, they are very friendly.*

*Could I have the bill please?*

- (f) Has there ever been a shortage of food in your country? Has your country ever experienced famine, drought or flood? Are there many welfare organisations to take care of those people who do not have enough money to buy food?

- (g) Is philanthropy (Individuals or companies) common in your country? Do you know anybody who has helped people in need?

- (h) Some welfare organisations take on names like '*Feeding the five thousand*'. Do you know the true story behind this saying? Sea of Galilee 30-33AD. (**lake, crowds, getting late, no shops, little boy, 2 fish, 5 bread, remote, sit down, look up**)

# 64. National Makeover

## Listening Skills

- (a) Have your students repeat these words 3 times. **Listen carefully. Speak carefully. Look carefully. Think carefully**
- (b) Teacher reads the following short story three times. The students first listen to the story. The second time they hear the story they write down only the verbs down the centre of a page. Finally they complete the sentences.

*Last night I **had** a dream, I **saw** a man dressed in white, he **was calling** my name. Have you ever **had** this dream?*

- (c) In teams of six, stand in a **line** facing the front. One person at the back of the line taps the person in front of him and mimes a sport. This continues until the last person guesses what it is.
- (d) Stay in your teams and play Chinese Whispers
- (e) Rate your communication skills on a scale of 0-10 (10 is great)
- (f) Role play in groups of three, one person starts speaking while another person is speaking.

Tim: *Blah Blah Blah Blah*

Jack: *(Starts talking while Tim is talking); blah blah blah.*

Ken: *Excuse me (finger held vertically in front of mouth)*

Ken: *One person at a time please. (Point to Tim) First Tim (point to Jack) then you.*

Ken: *Excuse me Jack, can you let Tim speak first. Jack!*

- (g) Sometimes a misunderstanding can occur because of poor communication. In pairs, read through the following role-play.

Eric: *(Ring ring) Hello Zap Electronics. Eric speaking.*

Takashi: *Hello, my name is Takashi. I think there has been a misunderstanding/mistake with my order.*

Eric: *Can you tell me what seems to be the problem?*

Takashi: *Yes, I ordered 10 DVDs but I only received 6.*

Eric: *Oh I am sorry about that.*

- (h) Did you listen to your parents when you were young?

- (i) Share about a fatherly like person from your country whom many people listened to at their time in history. For example:



**China:** Sun Yet Sen: Baptismal name is 'Rixin' which means 'daily renewal' Sun liked Abraham Lincoln's Gettysburg Address. *Government of the people, by the people, for the people*  
poor farmer older brother medical degree  
exiled (Japan) Hong Kong Hawaii

### Three principles of the people

- 1.Nationalism: (brotherhood)
- 2.Democracy: (people are important)
- 3.Livelihood: (share resources equally)

### Three stages of a revolution

- 1.Destruction (get rid of corruption).
- 2.Transition (provisional constitution)
- 3.Consolidation (constitutional government)

- (j) Do you know the story of someone who caused universal eternal change but He was often misunderstood (30AD)?
1. *(The Son of Man speaking about himself). The Son of Man will suffer terribly. He will be rejected and killed, but three days later he will rise to life."*
  2. *Peter took Him aside and told him to stop **talking** like that*
  3. *(A voice from Heaven said) "This is my Son, and I love him. **Listen** to what he says!*
- (k) Is there anything in common about this person to the person discussed above from your country?

# 64. National Makeover

## Listening Skills

- (a) Have your students repeat these words 3 times. **Listen carefully. Speak carefully. Look carefully. Think carefully**
- (b) Teacher reads the following short story three times. The students first listen to the story. The second time they hear the story they write down only the verbs down the centre of a page. Finally they complete the sentences.

*Last night I **had** a dream, I **saw** a man dressed in white, he **was calling** my name. Have you ever **had** this dream?*

- (c) In teams of six, stand in a **line** facing the front. One person at the back of the line taps the person in front of him and mimes a sport. This continues until the last person guesses what it is.
- (d) Stay in your teams and play Chinese Whispers
- (e) Rate your communication skills on a scale of 0-10 (10 is great)
- (f) Role play in groups of three, one person starts speaking while another person is speaking.

Tim: *Blah Blah Blah Blah*

Jack: *(Starts talking while Tim is talking); blah blah blah.*

Ken: *Excuse me (finger held vertically in front of mouth)*

Ken: *One person at a time please. (Point to Tim) First Tim (point to Jack) then you.*

Ken: *Excuse me Jack, can you let Tim speak first. Jack!*

- (g) Sometimes a misunderstanding can occur because of poor communication. In pairs, read through the following role-play.

Eric: *(Ring ring) Hello Zap Electronics. Eric speaking.*

Takashi: *Hello, my name is Takashi. I think there has been a misunderstanding/mistake with my order.*

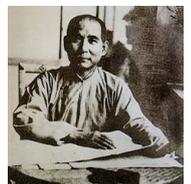
Eric: *Can you tell me what seems to be the problem?*

Takashi: *Yes, I ordered 10 DVDs but I only received 6.*

Eric: *Oh I am sorry about that.*

- (h) Did you listen to your parents when you were young?

- (i) Share about a fatherly like person from your country whom many people listened to at their time in history. For example:



**China:** Sun Yet Sen: Baptismal name is 'Rixin' which means 'daily renewal' Sun liked Abraham Lincoln's Gettysburg Address. *Government of the people, by the people, for the people*  
poor farmer older brother medical degree  
exiled (Japan) Hong Kong Hawaii

### Three principles of the people

- 1.Nationalism: (brotherhood)
- 2.Democracy: (people are important)
- 3.Livelihood: (share resources equally)

### Three stages of a revolution

- 1.Destruction (get rid of corruption).
- 2.Transition (provisional constitution)
- 3.Consolidation (constitutional government)

- (j) Do you know the story of someone who caused universal eternal change but He was often misunderstood (30AD)?
1. *(The Son of Man speaking about himself). The Son of Man will suffer terribly. He will be rejected and killed, but three days later he will rise to life."*
  2. *Peter took Him aside and told him to stop **talking** like that*
  3. *(A voice from Heaven said) "This is my Son, and I love him. **Listen** to what he says!*
- (k) Is there anything in common about this person to the person discussed above from your country?

# 65. Are you blind

## Leaving a job

- (a) Find someone who ....
1. is studying (Are you studying?)
  2. **was born** in the city (Were you born in the city?)
  3. **Live** with their family (Do you live with your family?)
  4. **likes** history (Do you like history?)
  5. likes being outside (Do you like being outside?)
  6. is a good listener (Are you a good listener?)
  7. **Grew up** in the country (Did you grow up in the country?)
- (b) Share something about yourself or somebody else in the class
1. My name is
  2. I was ...
  3. I live ...
  4. I like ..
  5. I am
- 
1. His name is
  2. He was....
  3. He is ...
  4. He likes ...
1. Her name is ...
  2. She was ...
  3. She is ....
  4. She likes ...
1. Their names are
  2. They are
  3. They like
- (c) Share some more information about changes in your life.
1. I used to .... (smoke/play football)
  2. These days I ..... (don't smoke/play golf)
  3. In the future I hope to (never smoke again/learn to play..)
- (d) Sometimes people change jobs to bring about change in their life. Share about a time you left your job or home and the reasons why.

### Reasons for leaving a job

1. for personal or for medical reasons
  2. for better opportunities or for a special person
  3. for travel reasons or to have a long holiday
  4. to study abroad and to expand my horizon
  5. for better pay or for financial reasons
  6. because of redundancy or for compulsory military service
  7. I wasn't recognized enough for my talent or abilities
  8. I want to help my family more
- (e) Do you know stories from your culture of people who experienced a major change of role in their life?
- China:** Hua Mulan (pictured) who left her home and took on a new position to help her family. She wasn't recognised for who she truly was.
1. Northern Wei Dynasty (420-589 AD)
  2. Draft order
  3. Shocked
  4. Many kingdoms
  5. Immediately
  6. Former general
  7. Fought bravely and cleverly
- World:** A blind man by the side of the road who experienced great changes in all areas of life when he realised who a passing by teacher really was. (Just outside Jericho 30-33AD). (**heard, began, shouting, Son of David, mercy, ordered, bring**)

# 65. Are you blind

## Leaving a job

- (a) Find someone who ....
1. is studying (Are you studying?)
  2. **was born** in the city (Were you born in the city?)
  3. **Live** with their family (Do you live with your family?)
  4. **likes** history (Do you like history?)
  5. likes being outside (Do you like being outside?)
  6. is a good listener (Are you a good listener?)
  7. **Grew up** in the country (Did you grow up in the country?)
- (b) Share something about yourself or somebody else in the class
1. My name is
  2. I was ...
  3. I live ...
  4. I like ..
  5. I am
- 
1. His name is
  2. He was....
  3. He is ...
  4. He likes ...
1. Her name is ...
  2. She was ...
  3. She is ....
  4. She likes ...
1. Their names are
  2. They are
  3. They like
- (c) Share some more information about changes in your life.
1. I used to .... (smoke/play football)
  2. These days I ..... (don't smoke/play golf)
  3. In the future I hope to (never smoke again/learn to play..)
- (d) Sometimes people change jobs to bring about change in their life. Share about a time you left your job or home and the reasons why.

### Reasons for leaving a job

1. for personal or for medical reasons
  2. for better opportunities or for a special person
  3. for travel reasons or to have a long holiday
  4. to study abroad and to expand my horizon
  5. for better pay or for financial reasons
  6. because of redundancy or for compulsory military service
  7. I wasn't recognized enough for my talent or abilities
  8. I want to help my family more
- (e) Do you know stories from your culture of people who experienced a major change of role in their life?
- China:** Hua Mulan (pictured) who left her home and took on a new position to help her family. She wasn't recognised for who she truly was.
1. Northern Wei Dynasty (420-589 AD)
  2. Draft order
  3. Shocked
  4. Many kingdoms
  5. Immediately
  6. Former general
  7. Fought bravely and cleverly
- World:** A blind man by the side of the road who experienced great changes in all areas of life when he realised who a passing by teacher really was. (Just outside Jericho 30-33AD). (**heard, began, shouting, Son of David, mercy, ordered, bring**)

# 66. Hail



## Hailing a Taxi

- (a) Role play giving advice to a crazy **taxi** driver in groups of 4  
*Taxi Driver: Look how **fast** I can **drive**!*  
*Passenger 1: Could you be more **careful** please?*  
*Passenger 2: Could you drive a little **slower** please?*  
*Passenger 3: Can you **stop** driving like a racing car driver!*
- (b) What motor sports or racing is **popular** in your country? Who is king of motor sport in your country?  
1. Formula 1, V8 touring cars, motocross and superbikes  
2. Drag racing, horseracing, road and track **cycling**
- (c) Role play a taxi driver and a potential customer  
*Taxi Driver: Where do you want to go?*  
*Passenger: I want to go to ...(..)*  
*Taxi Driver: Can you show me the address?*  
*Passenger: I have a map and a contact number 55552*  
*Taxi Driver: Hello, can you speak Thai? (Contact...)*  
*Taxi Driver: Ok, I know where it is. You can put your luggage in the back (**trunk/boot**). Can you put your **seatbelt** on please?*  
*Taxi Driver: (Choose **two** of the following 4 questions)*  
1. Welcome to ... My name is .... What is your name?  
2. I have lived here for ... Where are you from?  
3. How long will you stay in ... ?  
4. I have been a taxi driver for 5 years. What do you do  
*Taxi Driver: While in ... ( ) I recommend you visit/stay/see.. ( )*  
*Taxi Driver: Here is your destination. Have a nice day.*
- (d) Role play a **motorcycle** taxi rider (M) and a customer (C)  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Where do you want to go?*  
*Passenger: I want to go to ...*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Would you like to wear a helmet?*  
*Passenger: Yes please*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Hop on, Put your feet on the foot pegs.*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: You can... (Choose **one**)*  
1. put your hands here or hold on here  
2. put your arms around my waist.  
3. ride side saddle if you want  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Can you keep your knees in please? We have to weave through traffic.*
- (e) Have you ever had the following problems whilst travelling?  
1. Flat battery    Flat tyre    Tyre blew out  
2. Fan belt broke    Engine overheated    Engine blew up
- (f) Compare the different ways you can get to work/school.  
1. ... is cheaper than...  
2. ... is more comfortable (less cramped) than...  
3. ... is quicker than...  
4. ... is more reliable and safer than...
- (g) Role play giving advice to someone about public transport.  
*You should go (by train). It's (quicker) than going by (taxi)*

## Hailing a King

- (h) What transport do the leaders of your country travel by?
- (i) Do you know the story how a famous king (33AD) chose a donkey to ride from Bethany to the great city of Jerusalem? (**go, ridden, untie, road, many people, spread, Hosanna**)
- (j) How would have this king answered these questions?  
1. Where are you going?  
2. How long will you stay?  
3. What are you going to do here/there?  
4. Can you tell me about your family?

# 66. Hail



## Hailing a Taxi

- (a) Role play giving advice to a crazy **taxi** driver in groups of 4  
*Taxi Driver: Look how **fast** I can **drive**!*  
*Passenger 1: Could you be more **careful** please?*  
*Passenger 2: Could you drive a little **slower** please?*  
*Passenger 3: Can you **stop** driving like a racing car driver!*
- (b) What motor sports or racing is **popular** in your country? Who is king of motor sport in your country?  
1. Formula 1, V8 touring cars, motocross and superbikes  
2. Drag racing, horseracing, road and track **cycling**
- (c) Role play a taxi driver and a potential customer  
*Taxi Driver: Where do you want to go?*  
*Passenger: I want to go to ...(..)*  
*Taxi Driver: Can you show me the address?*  
*Passenger: I have a map and a contact number 55552*  
*Taxi Driver: Hello, can you speak Thai? (Contact...)*  
*Taxi Driver: Ok, I know where it is. You can put your luggage in the back (**trunk/boot**). Can you put your **seatbelt** on please?*  
*Taxi Driver: (Choose **two** of the following 4 questions)*  
1. Welcome to ... My name is .... What is your name?  
2. I have lived here for ... Where are you from?  
3. How long will you stay in ... ?  
4. I have been a taxi driver for 5 years. What do you do  
*Taxi Driver: While in ... ( ) I recommend you visit/stay/see.. ( )*  
*Taxi Driver: Here is your destination. Have a nice day.*
- (d) Role play a **motorcycle** taxi rider (M) and a customer (C)  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Where do you want to go?*  
*Passenger: I want to go to ...*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Would you like to wear a helmet?*  
*Passenger: Yes please*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Hop on, Put your feet on the foot pegs.*  
*Motorcycle Taxi: You can... (Choose **one**)*  
1. put your hands here or hold on here  
2. put your arms around my waist.  
3. ride side saddle if you want  
*Motorcycle Taxi: Can you keep your knees in please? We have to weave through traffic.*
- (e) Have you ever had the following problems whilst travelling?  
1. Flat battery    Flat tyre    Tyre blew out  
2. Fan belt broke    Engine overheated    Engine blew up
- (f) Compare the different ways you can get to work/school.  
1. ... is cheaper than...  
2. ... is more comfortable (less cramped) than...  
3. ... is quicker than...  
4. ... is more reliable and safer than...
- (g) Role play giving advice to someone about public transport.  
*You should go (by train). It's (quicker) than going by (taxi)*

## Hailing a King

- (h) What transport do the leaders of your country travel by?
- (i) Do you know the story how a famous king (33AD) chose a donkey to ride from Bethany to the great city of Jerusalem? (**go, ridden, untie, road, many people, spread, Hosanna**)
- (j) How would have this king answered these questions?  
1. Where are you going?  
2. How long will you stay?  
3. What are you going to do here/there?  
4. Can you tell me about your family?

# 67. An Important Meeting

## Meeting Time



- (a) When is your birthday? Everybody has to get into one single line in order from **Jan 1** to **Dec 30**
- (b) Make four groups matching peoples birthdays  
Group 1 Jan-Mar Group 2 Apr-Jun  
Group 3 Jul-Sep Group 4 Oct-Dec  
Each group has to discuss different endings to finish these sentences and then **one person** from each **group** has to share to the whole class
1. If you climb a mountain you will see ...
  2. I **dream** that one day I will ...
  3. I **believe** everybody in this company should ...
- (c) Often in the workplace people have meetings in small and large groups. How often do you have meetings in your country and where do you usually have these meetings?
- (d) Choose 11 people and role play having a meeting

Chair: Welcome everybody to this **meeting**. First thank you to Tim for setting up the **room** and providing the **snacks**. Fred, do we have any apologies?

Fred: No apologies

Chair: Fan, can you read the minutes from the last meeting?

Fan: Our last meeting was held on the ...()

Chair: This is the agenda for today, we have two major items to discuss. Kang, can the your read the first item on the agenda

Kang: Last meeting we voted for our company to buy new laptops for everybody and Lee would do some research

Chair: Lee, could you let us know what you found out.

Lee: I checked out the price and found out the best price for a good CCTT laptop was \$90

Chair: Thankyou for doing the research Lee. I open the floor to any comments or discussion.

Jess: I think \$90 for a CCTT laptop is an excellent buy.

Andy: I love computers. Computers can save the world. (He talks for a long time)

Chair: Thanks Andy.You've brought up some important issues. Let's hear from someone else. (discussion)

Anne: I propose (put forward) the motion we buy 7 laptops at \$90

Chair: Anybody to second it ? (Mary raises her hand)

Mary: I will

Chair: Thankyou Mary. All those in favour raise your hand (all) Against (zero). Motion passed

Harry: Could we all go to the watch Man U play Arsenal

Gav: I prefer to watch Chelsea

Chair: Let's keep on track (get back on track) everybody and move on to the next item on the agenda. (10 mins later)

Chair: Our time is nearly up, before we finish I would just like to present a gift to Ruth for being employee of the month

Ruth Thank you everybody, I love working here

Chair: Thank you everybody for your input into this meeting. I feel it has been very productive. The next meeting will be on.... I now declare this meeting closed

- (e) What is the most significant meeting that has brought change to your country?
- (f) One meeting or gathering that brought significant change to the whole world has been captured in the painting called the 'The Last Supper' Do you know what surprising motions were raised during this meeting (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**large room, upstairs, sad, dip, bread, cup, wine, blood, body, sang**)

# 67. An Important Meeting

## Meeting Time



- (a) When is your birthday? Everybody has to get into one single line in order from **Jan 1** to **Dec 30**
- (b) Make four groups matching peoples birthdays  
Group 1 Jan-Mar Group 2 Apr-Jun  
Group 3 Jul-Sep Group 4 Oct-Dec  
Each group has to discuss different endings to finish these sentences and then **one person** from each **group** has to share to the whole class
1. If you climb a mountain you will see ...
  2. I **dream** that one day I will ...
  3. I **believe** everybody in this company should ...
- (c) Often in the workplace people have meetings in small and large groups. How often do you have meetings in your country and where do you usually have these meetings?
- (d) Choose 11 people and role play having a meeting

Chair: Welcome everybody to this **meeting**. First thank you to Tim for setting up the **room** and providing the **snacks**. Fred, do we have any apologies?

Fred: No apologies

Chair: Fan, can you read the minutes from the last meeting?

Fan: Our last meeting was held on the ...()

Chair: This is the agenda for today, we have two major items to discuss. Kang, can the your read the first item on the agenda

Kang: Last meeting we voted for our company to buy new laptops for everybody and Lee would do some research

Chair: Lee, could you let us know what you found out.

Lee: I checked out the price and found out the best price for a good CCTT laptop was \$90

Chair: Thankyou for doing the research Lee. I open the floor to any comments or discussion.

Jess: I think \$90 for a CCTT laptop is an excellent buy.

Andy: I love computers. Computers can save the world. (He talks for a long time)

Chair: Thanks Andy.You've brought up some important issues. Let's hear from someone else. (discussion)

Anne: I propose (put forward) the motion we buy 7 laptops at \$90

Chair: Anybody to second it ? (Mary raises her hand)

Mary: I will

Chair: Thankyou Mary. All those in favour raise your hand (all) Against (zero). Motion passed

Harry: Could we all go to the watch Man U play Arsenal

Gav: I prefer to watch Chelsea

Chair: Let's keep on track (get back on track) everybody and move on to the next item on the agenda. (10 mins later)

Chair: Our time is nearly up, before we finish I would just like to present a gift to Ruth for being employee of the month

Ruth Thank you everybody, I love working here

Chair: Thank you everybody for your input into this meeting. I feel it has been very productive. The next meeting will be on.... I now declare this meeting closed

- (e) What is the most significant meeting that has brought change to your country?
- (f) One meeting or gathering that brought significant change to the whole world has been captured in the painting called the 'The Last Supper' Do you know what surprising motions were raised during this meeting (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**large room, upstairs, sad, dip, bread, cup, wine, blood, body, sang**)

# 68. It's a Boy!

## Offering to help

- (a) Do you have any **children, nephews** or **nieces**? Is there anybody in your family who is pregnant? Discuss in pairs. For e.g.:

Person 1: *I have a niece, her name is Rose, she is 4 years old, she is very cute.*

Person 2: *My **friend** Molly is 7 months pregnant.*

- (b) Role play congratulating your friend who is pregnant.

Person 1: **Congratulations**

**I heard some good news.**

*I heard you're expecting!*

*When will your **baby** be born (When is your baby due)?*

- (c) Give some advice to your friend who is 30 weeks pregnant?

*I recommend you ... ( ) (NB: Past tense–recommended)*

- (d) Share about a time somebody recommended something for you to do, for example.

Person 1: *My friend recommended I go to the **hospital** early.*

- (e) When someone has a baby, many people offer to help. Complete the following sentences and role-play in groups of four.

New Mum: *We have been so busy lately with the baby*

Friend 1: **Can I help you in anyway?**

*Can I **clean** the house?*

Friend 2: *Can I **cook** some dinner for you?*

Friend 3: *Can I **nurse** the baby?*

Friend 1: *Can I ... ?*

New Mum: *Thank you, that's very kind of you. Could you .. ( )*

**Or**

New Mum: *Thank you for offering but I think we are ok.*

- (f) Discuss what are the customs and traditions for a mother and newborn baby in your country.

For example:

1. Bathing and eating.
2. Going out in public.
3. Visiting the temple.
4. Clothing
5. Having a shower.
6. Going back to work
7. Blessing.
8. Burning incense.
9. Naming of the baby
10. First birthday celebration



## Use of incense

- (g) In India, many people light incense for protection and prosperity in having birth to a boy. When is incense used in your culture?

**China:** Dedicated incense is burned before the family shrine. It is associated with the 'yin' energies of the dead.

- (h) Do you the story when a very old man went to light incense in a temple (Jerusalem 1BC) when an angel spoke to him and said his very old wife was going to have a very special baby that had been prophesied many years before? (time, turn hearts, waiting, couldn't, vision)

# 68. It's a Boy!

## Offering to help

- (a) Do you have any **children, nephews** or **nieces**? Is there anybody in your family who is pregnant? Discuss in pairs. For e.g.:

Person 1: *I have a niece, her name is Rose, she is 4 years old, she is very cute.*

Person 2: *My **friend** Molly is 7 months pregnant.*

- (b) Role play congratulating your friend who is pregnant.

Person 1: **Congratulations**

**I heard some good news.**

*I heard you're expecting!*

*When will your **baby** be born (When is your baby due)?*

- (c) Give some advice to your friend who is 30 weeks pregnant?

*I recommend you ... ( ) (NB: Past tense–recommended)*

- (d) Share about a time somebody recommended something for you to do, for example.

Person 1: *My friend recommended I go to the **hospital** early.*

- (e) When someone has a baby, many people offer to help. Complete the following sentences and role-play in groups of four.

New Mum: *We have been so busy lately with the baby*

Friend 1: **Can I help you in anyway?**

*Can I **clean** the house?*

Friend 2: *Can I **cook** some dinner for you?*

Friend 3: *Can I **nurse** the baby?*

Friend 1: *Can I ... ?*

New Mum: *Thank you, that's very kind of you. Could you .. ( )*

**Or**

New Mum: *Thank you for offering but I think we are ok.*

- (f) Discuss what are the customs and traditions for a mother and newborn baby in your country.

For example:

1. Bathing and eating.
2. Going out in public.
3. Visiting the temple.
4. Clothing
5. Having a shower.
6. Going back to work
7. Blessing.
8. Burning incense.
9. Naming of the baby
10. First birthday celebration



## Use of incense

- (g) In India, many people light incense for protection and prosperity in having birth to a boy. When is incense used in your culture?

**China:** Dedicated incense is burned before the family shrine. It is associated with the 'yin' energies of the dead.

- (h) Do you the story when a very old man went to light incense in a temple (Jerusalem 1BC) when an angel spoke to him and said his very old wife was going to have a very special baby that had been prophesied many years before? (time, turn hearts, waiting, couldn't, vision)

# 69. What a Coincidence!

## Passing on Good News

- (a) What is the most famous newspaper in your country?
- (b) Role play **reading the newspaper** chatting (using answer, add, ask) to the person **next to** you while **waiting** for the **doctor** in the **Hospital** Waiting Room.

Person 1: My name is .... ( ) (Statement)  
What is your name? (Ask)

Person 2: My name is... ( ) (Answer)  
My wife is having a baby (Add)  
Why are you here? (Ask)

Person 1: My brother is **sick** (Answer)  
: He is 15 years old. (Add)  
How old are you? (Ask)

- (c) Role play a doctor bringing in some **good news** for you.

Doctor: Mr. Zorro?

Mr. Zorro: Yes

Doctor: Hi, I am Dr Chang, I have some good news for you  
Your wife has just had twin girls.

Mr. Zorro: I don't believe it! That is wonderful news

Doctor: Do you know what names you will call the babies?

- (d) What name would you call a baby and why?

- (e) Sit in a circle. one person stands in the middle and asks a "Have you ever" question. If you answer 'yes', move to another seat but not the seat next to you. For e.g. Have you ever...:

1. helped somebody?
2. seen a new born baby?
3. been afraid?

- (f) Have you ever run into someone you haven't seen for a long time? Role play accidentally running into an old friend

Da: Patrick

Patrick: Da, I can't believe it!. I haven't seen you for years

Da: Long time no see! What a coincidence (not accident)!

Da: What a God incident. You look great!

Patrick: So do you. What are doing here?

Da: I'm working for Kasikorn Bank

Patrick: Really, I'm working in this coffee shop  
We should catch up some time. Are you free tomorrow around 5 pm?

Da: Yes I am, we can meet at the Post Office.

Patrick: Sounds great, ok, see you tomorrow at 5.

## Great Joy

- (g) Catching up with old friends or having a baby can be a happy occasion. Explain the pictured symbolic items or things used in your culture to express happiness, joy and future prosperity.

1. Tang Dynasty
2. Poem. Emperor's challenge-find the match for
3. Student on the way to exams
4. Herbal doctor's daughter

- (h) What would bring you great happiness and joy?

1. Meeting somebody special
2. Recovery from a sickness
3. Being forgiven
4. Being able to live eternally
5. Being chosen for a special task



- (i) Do you know the story when one night some shepherds outside Bethlehem (OAB) experienced great happiness about a new born baby that would bring joy to all people ? (**angels, terrified, today, Messiah, hurried, amazed, pondered**)

# 69. What a Coincidence!

## Passing on Good News

- (a) What is the most famous newspaper in your country?
- (b) Role play **reading the newspaper** chatting (using answer, add, ask) to the person **next to** you while **waiting** for the **doctor** in the **Hospital** Waiting Room.

Person 1: My name is .... ( ) (Statement)  
What is your name? (Ask)

Person 2: My name is... ( ) (Answer)  
My wife is having a baby (Add)  
Why are you here? (Ask)

Person 1: My brother is **sick** (Answer)  
: He is 15 years old. (Add)  
How old are you? (Ask)

- (c) Role play a doctor bringing in some **good news** for you.

Doctor: Mr. Zorro?

Mr. Zorro: Yes

Doctor: Hi, I am Dr Chang, I have some good news for you  
Your wife has just had twin girls.

Mr. Zorro: I don't believe it! That is wonderful news

Doctor: Do you know what names you will call the babies?

- (d) What name would you call a baby and why?

- (e) Sit in a circle. one person stands in the middle and asks a "Have you ever" question. If you answer 'yes', move to another seat but not the seat next to you. For e.g. Have you ever...:

1. helped somebody?
2. seen a new born baby?
3. been afraid?

- (f) Have you ever run into someone you haven't seen for a long time? Role play accidentally running into an old friend

Da: Patrick

Patrick: Da, I can't believe it!. I haven't seen you for years

Da: Long time no see! What a coincidence (not accident)!

Da: What a God incident. You look great!

Patrick: So do you. What are doing here?

Da: I'm working for Kasikorn Bank

Patrick: Really, I'm working in this coffee shop  
We should catch up some time. Are you free tomorrow around 5 pm?

Da: Yes I am, we can meet at the Post Office.

Patrick: Sounds great, ok, see you tomorrow at 5.

## Great Joy

- (g) Catching up with old friends or having a baby can be a happy occasion. Explain the pictured symbolic items or things used in your culture to express happiness, joy and future prosperity.

1. Tang Dynasty
2. Poem. Emperor's challenge-find the match for
3. Student on the way to exams
4. Herbal doctor's daughter

- (h) What would bring you great happiness and joy?

1. Meeting somebody special
2. Recovery from a sickness
3. Being forgiven
4. Being able to live eternally
5. Being chosen for a special task



- (i) Do you know the story when one night some shepherds outside Bethlehem (OAB) experienced great happiness about a new born baby that would bring joy to all people ? (**angels, terrified, today, Messiah, hurried, amazed, pondered**)

# 70. I Know!

## Contacting a new client

- (a) The teacher lies some **pictures/photos** on the floor. Each student takes a picture and finds a partner and describes their picture (Without showing their partner the picture). The student retells what's in their partner's photos. Then the students show their pictures/photos to each other and try to find three things their pictures have in common. In **both** our pictures...()
- (b) Change partners and find two interests you both have in common. For example:  
 Person 1: *Do you like football?*  
 Person 2: **Yes I do No I don't**  
 Person 1: *So do I Neither do I (don't like) or I do (like)*
- (c) Share about a time you went on a first date or a **blind date** where it is good to find things in common.  
 1. It was a complete **flop** (a disaster).  
 2. It was **pretty good** I suppose.  
 3. We had so many **things in common**  
 4. We talked like old **friends**. We hit it off straight away.
- (d) Get into six groups, each group has to think of three questions to ask someone on a blind date and then choose one of these questions to write on the board.
- (e) In different pairs, practice being on a blind date
- (f) Sometimes it is difficult to talk to or contact somebody you don't know very well. In pairs, role-play Jesse who makes toys calling a new business contact called Jonty who sells toys.

Jonty: (ring ring) *Hello, Brim Toy Company, Jonty George speaking.*

Jesse: *Hello Jonty, My name is Jesse Jordan, I was wondering if I could talk to the purchasing manager.*

Jonty: *Speaking. How can I help you today*

Jesse: *Hello Jonty, you don't know me but I'm from Wuhan Kiddies toys. I was wondering if it would be possible to make a time where I could share to you more about our company and its new toy products.*

Jonty: *I'm fairly busy at the moment and we are happy with our current (existing) supplier.*

Jesse: *That's ok (fair enough) but if it's okay, could I drop off a sample of our products at your head office, as I am passing by your company's headquarters next week. Just some things to give you something to think about.*

Jonty: *Sure, just leave it at the front desk.*

Jesse: *Thanks for your time, the reason I chose to call you is because we have heard many positive reports about your company.*



- (g) Role-play calling a prospective business contact you have never met. You want to ask him/her for permission for you to send to him/her information about your company/product.
- (h) Do you know any famous stories from your culture of people meeting for the first time but it seemed like they had known each other for all of their lives? For example:

**China:** A story of two people who become instant friends. This story is responsible for the term Zhiyin (知音) which means "to know one's music" (pictured)

**World:** Some old people saw a baby at a temple for the first time and they knew everything about this baby's life. One old man said  
*'Now I can die in peace'*

**(not die, saw, one day, moved, 84, never, went)**

# 70. I Know!

## Contacting a new client

- (a) The teacher lies some **pictures/photos** on the floor. Each student takes a picture and finds a partner and describes their picture (Without showing their partner the picture). The student retells what's in their partner's photos. Then the students show their pictures/photos to each other and try to find three things their pictures have in common. In **both** our pictures...()
- (b) Change partners and find two interests you both have in common. For example:  
 Person 1: *Do you like football?*  
 Person 2: **Yes I do No I don't**  
 Person 1: *So do I Neither do I (don't like) or I do (like)*
- (c) Share about a time you went on a first date or a **blind date** where it is good to find things in common.  
 1. It was a complete **flop** (a disaster).  
 2. It was **pretty good** I suppose.  
 3. We had so many **things in common**  
 4. We talked like old **friends**. We hit it off straight away.
- (d) Get into six groups, each group has to think of three questions to ask someone on a blind date and then choose one of these questions to write on the board.
- (e) In different pairs, practice being on a blind date
- (f) Sometimes it is difficult to talk to or contact somebody you don't know very well. In pairs, role-play Jesse who makes toys calling a new business contact called Jonty who sells toys.

Jonty: (ring ring) *Hello, Brim Toy Company, Jonty George speaking.*

Jesse: *Hello Jonty, My name is Jesse Jordan, I was wondering if I could talk to the purchasing manager.*

Jonty: *Speaking. How can I help you today*

Jesse: *Hello Jonty, you don't know me but I'm from Wuhan Kiddies toys. I was wondering if it would be possible to make a time where I could share to you more about our company and its new toy products.*

Jonty: *I'm fairly busy at the moment and we are happy with our current (existing) supplier.*

Jesse: *That's ok (fair enough) but if it's okay, could I drop off a sample of our products at your head office, as I am passing by your company's headquarters next week. Just some things to give you something to think about.*

Jonty: *Sure, just leave it at the front desk.*

Jesse: *Thanks for your time, the reason I chose to call you is because we have heard many positive reports about your company.*



- (g) Role-play calling a prospective business contact you have never met. You want to ask him/her for permission for you to send to him/her information about your company/product.
- (h) Do you know any famous stories from your culture of people meeting for the first time but it seemed like they had known each other for all of their lives? For example:

**China:** A story of two people who become instant friends. This story is responsible for the term Zhiyin (知音) which means "to know one's music" (pictured)

**World:** Some old people saw a baby at a temple for the first time and they knew everything about this baby's life. One old man said  
*'Now I can die in peace'*

**(not die, saw, one day, moved, 84, never, went)**

# 71. Any Luck?

## Fishing

- (a) Do you like fishing? Share about a time you went **fishing**.  
 1. Where are the best places to go fishing in your country?  
 2. Have a competition threading a **fishing line** through a **hook**

- (b) Complete this sentence:  
 A good fishing person needs to be very ...  
 1. patient, observant and alert  
 2. **experienced**, knowledgeable and **wise**  
 3. physically **fit** and well prepared

- (c) Describe yourself and other people you know.  
 1. I am very...(patient)  
 2. He/she is a good fishing person. He/she is very ....

- (d) In a fishing competition, like any competition, you can come first, second, third or fourth. Have you ever come a place in a competition (**1st**, **2nd** (runner up) or **3rd**)?

- (e) Name, label or demonstrate these words associated with fishing (Then have a quiz to guess the correct word).

rod	reel	line	bait
net	cast	hook	sinker
bite	nibble	swivel	trace

- (f) When you see someone fishing, it is polite to ask 'Any luck?'. In pairs, practice asking this question and giving some advice.

Person 1: Any luck?  
 Fishing person: I have had a few bites  
 Person 1: Have you thought about ( ) casting over there  
 Why don't you ... ( ) (cast ...)  
 You could/Maybe you should ... ( ) (cast ...)  
 Fishing person: Thanks for the tip  
 Person 1: Keep trying, you never know what's just around the corner  
 Fishing person: Thanks for the encouragement

- (g) Which of the following fishing words are nouns (n), verbs (v), adjectives (adj) and adverbs (adv)?

fish (n)	big	quickly	reel in
bite (v)	break	line	bit
put	smelly (adj)	carefully (adv)	gently
net	slippery	hook	bait
strong	greasy	snag	hooked
thread	stick (stuck)	held	get

- (h) Circle the verbs and underline the nouns of these sentences.

- I put the worm on the hook
- The fish broke the line.
- I reeled in the fish
- The fish broke the line



- (i) Make these sentences more exciting by putting in an adjective and adverb

*I (carefully) put the (slippery) worm on the (sharp) hook.*

- (j) Do you know any amazing fishing stories from your country?

**China** Jiang Taigong: A masterful strategy and a call to volunteer

- Detested the Shang Ruler
- Went to Weishu River (Xian)
- Grandfather's prediction,
- Waited for King of Zhou

**World:** The miraculous catch of fish at Lake Galilee (30AD). A life changing story for all nations. (**morning, 2 boats, edge, clean, shallow, deep, net, master, Lord**)

# 71. Any Luck?

## Fishing

- (a) Do you like fishing? Share about a time you went **fishing**.  
 1. Where are the best places to go fishing in your country?  
 2. Have a competition threading a **fishing line** through a **hook**

- (b) Complete this sentence:  
 A good fishing person needs to be very ...  
 1. patient, observant and alert  
 2. **experienced**, knowledgeable and **wise**  
 3. physically **fit** and well prepared

- (c) Describe yourself and other people you know.  
 1. I am very...(patient)  
 2. He/she is a good fishing person. He/she is very ....

- (d) In a fishing competition, like any competition, you can come first, second, third or fourth. Have you ever come a place in a competition (**1st**, **2nd** (runner up) or **3rd**)?

- (e) Name, label or demonstrate these words associated with fishing (Then have a quiz to guess the correct word).

rod	reel	line	bait
net	cast	hook	sinker
bite	nibble	swivel	trace

- (f) When you see someone fishing, it is polite to ask 'Any luck?'. In pairs, practice asking this question and giving some advice.

Person 1: Any luck?  
 Fishing person: I have had a few bites  
 Person 1: Have you thought about ( ) casting over there  
 Why don't you ... ( ) (cast ...)  
 You could/Maybe you should ... ( ) (cast ...)  
 Fishing person: Thanks for the tip  
 Person 1: Keep trying, you never know what's just around the corner  
 Fishing person: Thanks for the encouragement

- (g) Which of the following fishing words are nouns (n), verbs (v), adjectives (adj) and adverbs (adv)?

fish (n)	big	quickly	reel in
bite (v)	break	line	bit
put	smelly (adj)	carefully (adv)	gently
net	slippery	hook	bait
strong	greasy	snag	hooked
thread	stick (stuck)	held	get

- (h) Circle the verbs and underline the nouns of these sentences.

- I put the worm on the hook
- The fish broke the line.
- I reeled in the fish
- The fish broke the line



- (i) Make these sentences more exciting by putting in an adjective and adverb

*I (carefully) put the (slippery) worm on the (sharp) hook.*

- (j) Do you know any amazing fishing stories from your country?

**China** Jiang Taigong: A masterful strategy and a call to volunteer

- Detested the Shang Ruler
- Went to Weishu River (Xian)
- Grandfather's prediction,
- Waited for King of Zhou

**World:** The miraculous catch of fish at Lake Galilee (30AD). A life changing story for all nations. (**morning, 2 boats, edge, clean, shallow, deep, net, master, Lord**)

## Conversations

- (a) Introduce yourself to another partner
1. Hello, my **name** is ... ( )
  2. I am **from** ... ( )
  3. I **am** a ... ( ) (occupation)
  4. My father/mother/parents is/are ... ( )
  5. I **can** ... ( ) (ability)
  6. I **like** ... ( )
- (b) Change partners and ask your partner the following questions. Your partner must answer in full sentences.
1. What's your name?
  2. Where are you from?
  3. What do you do?
- (c) This time add more information about yourself before you ask the question. For example:
- (Add more information) My name is ... ( )  
(Ask) What's your name?
- (d) Try this sequence of discussion. Answer, Add and Ask
- Person 1: **Add** My name is ... ( )  
**Ask** What is your name?  
Person 2: **Answer** My name is ... ( )  
**Add** I am from ... ( )  
**Ask** Where are you from?
- (e) Practice the above example using these responses
1. Really or wow
  2. Tell me more
  3. How interesting
- (f) Which person in history would you most like to meet?
1. Explorer, sportsperson or movie star
  2. Emperor or king
  3. Angelic or divine person
- (g) How would you know if somebody really was divine?
1. Perform some miracles
  2. Is very rich
  3. Unusual birth or death
  4. Very good looking
  5. Can fly
  6. 100 per cent pure
- (h) Discuss what things represent purity in your culture. For example.
1. Jade: "Gold has a value; jade is invaluable".
  2. Lotus flower: "The Lotus rises out of the muddy waters yet itself is not soiled".
  3. White: White marble is used to show a connection to heaven.
- (i) Share about people in history who have claimed or been claimed as being divine. For example:
- China:** Hong Xiuquan (pictured). Called himself brother of Jesus. Tried to set up a heavenly kingdom
- World:** A man who claimed to be divine, verbally healed a paralytic man from his sins and disability in front of many witnesses (Galilee 30-33AD). (**everywhere, power, full, middle, who, immediately, amazed**)
- (j) How would these persons introduce themselves?



## Conversations

- (a) Introduce yourself to another partner
1. Hello, my **name** is ... ( )
  2. I am **from** ... ( )
  3. I **am** a ... ( ) (occupation)
  4. My father/mother/parents is/are ... ( )
  5. I **can** ... ( ) (ability)
  6. I **like** ... ( )
- (b) Change partners and ask your partner the following questions. Your partner must answer in full sentences.
1. What's your name?
  2. Where are you from?
  3. What do you do?
- (c) This time add more information about yourself before you ask the question. For example:
- (Add more information) My name is ... ( )  
(Ask) What's your name?
- (d) Try this sequence of discussion. Answer, Add and Ask
- Person 1: **Add** My name is ... ( )  
**Ask** What is your name?  
Person 2: **Answer** My name is ... ( )  
**Add** I am from ... ( )  
**Ask** Where are you from?
- (e) Practice the above example using these responses
1. Really or wow
  2. Tell me more
  3. How interesting
- (f) Which person in history would you most like to meet?
1. Explorer, sportsperson or movie star
  2. Emperor or king
  3. Angelic or divine person
- (g) How would you know if somebody really was divine?
1. Perform some miracles
  2. Is very rich
  3. Unusual birth or death
  4. Very good looking
  5. Can fly
  6. 100 per cent pure
- (h) Discuss what things represent purity in your culture. For example.
1. Jade: "Gold has a value; jade is invaluable".
  2. Lotus flower: "The Lotus rises out of the muddy waters yet itself is not soiled".
  3. White: White marble is used to show a connection to heaven.
- (i) Share about people in history who have claimed or been claimed as being divine. For example:
- China:** Hong Xiuquan (pictured). Called himself brother of Jesus. Tried to set up a heavenly kingdom
- World:** A man who claimed to be divine, verbally healed a paralytic man from his sins and disability in front of many witnesses (Galilee 30-33AD). (**everywhere, power, full, middle, who, immediately, amazed**)
- (j) How would these persons introduce themselves?



# 73. Who's the Boss?

## Leaving work (Asking for permission)

- (a) What is today's date? Write down three important dates in your life. For example, your birth date. Your partner has to guess why each date is important.
- (b) In your last job, did you ...?
1. **enjoy your work**
  2. go to **sleep** at work
  3. work long hours (**work hard**)
  4. burn the midnight oil (work late)
  5. get along well with your boss
- (c) Read through these possible reasons for leaving a job.
1. I was sacked / I was fired
  2. I was retrenched or made redundant
  3. My visa expired (ran out)
  4. I wanted a change
  5. I resigned
  6. I wanted to broaden my experience
  7. I received a better offer
  8. I wanted to explore new possibilities
- (d) Discuss why you left your last job
- (e) In pairs share about the best boss you have ever had.

*The best boss I ever have had was ... He/she was very ...*

1. **friendly, kind and helpful**
2. encouraging and hardworking
3. passionate and optimistic
4. considerate and open minded
5. honest and loyal



- (f) Share about people who could have been or were excellent bosses from your culture. For example:

**China:** Liu Bei (pictured)  
**China:** Sun Shuilin and Sun Donglin. 'Honesty brothers'.

- (g) Discuss the pressures of time spent at work or studying in your country. For example:
- Japan:** *Nomikai*: Expectations of what to do and "Osaki ni shitsurei shimasu",
- Korea:** University Study in Korea and exam days for high school students
- (h) Circle and share which of the following you think you need to spend more time doing. *I should spend more time ...*
1. exercising or meditating
  2. being at home or being with my family
  3. socialising or taking more time out
- (i) Role play asking your boss a difficult request.
- Employee: Excuse me Boss, can I talk to you for a minute*  
*Boss: Sure, come in sit down.*  
*Employee: I know it's not usual for workers to leave work before their boss but I was wondering if I could go home earlier today?*
- (j) If you were a boss, how would you advise your employees on how to use their time more wisely?
- (k) Do you know *the sermon of the plain* that can help guide people on how to use their time more wisely (Near Jerusalem 30-33AD)? (You can illustrate your answer into three sections of a mountain) (**mountain alone, called small group, plain, many people**)

# 73. Who's the Boss?

## Leaving work (Asking for permission)

- (a) What is today's date? Write down three important dates in your life. For example, your birth date. Your partner has to guess why each date is important.
- (b) In your last job, did you ...?
1. **enjoy your work**
  2. go to **sleep** at work
  3. work long hours (**work hard**)
  4. burn the midnight oil (work late)
  5. get along well with your boss
- (c) Read through these possible reasons for leaving a job.
1. I was sacked / I was fired
  2. I was retrenched or made redundant
  3. My visa expired (ran out)
  4. I wanted a change
  5. I resigned
  6. I wanted to broaden my experience
  7. I received a better offer
  8. I wanted to explore new possibilities
- (d) Discuss why you left your last job
- (e) In pairs share about the best boss you have ever had.

*The best boss I ever have had was ... He/she was very ...*

1. **friendly, kind and helpful**
2. encouraging and hardworking
3. passionate and optimistic
4. considerate and open minded
5. honest and loyal



- (f) Share about people who could have been or were excellent bosses from your culture. For example:

**China:** Liu Bei (pictured)  
**China:** Sun Shuilin and Sun Donglin. 'Honesty brothers'.

- (g) Discuss the pressures of time spent at work or studying in your country. For example:
- Japan:** *Nomikai*: Expectations of what to do and "Osaki ni shitsurei shimasu",
- Korea:** University Study in Korea and exam days for high school students
- (h) Circle and share which of the following you think you need to spend more time doing. *I should spend more time ...*
1. exercising or meditating
  2. being at home or being with my family
  3. socialising or taking more time out
- (i) Role play asking your boss a difficult request.
- Employee: Excuse me Boss, can I talk to you for a minute*  
*Boss: Sure, come in sit down.*  
*Employee: I know it's not usual for workers to leave work before their boss but I was wondering if I could go home earlier today?*
- (j) If you were a boss, how would you advise your employees on how to use their time more wisely?
- (k) Do you know *the sermon of the plain* that can help guide people on how to use their time more wisely (Near Jerusalem 30-33AD)? (You can illustrate your answer into three sections of a mountain) (**mountain alone, called small group, plain, many people**)

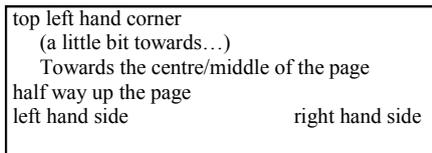
# 74. What a House!

# 74. What a House!

## House and Furniture



- (a) Teacher labels the room **north, south, east and west**. Students have to listen to the teacher and run to the correct direction.
- (b) What is your address? My **address** is ... (**road, street**) ( )
- (c) Where do you live? I live **North of here, about 20 min's by train**
- (d) Have you ever **rented a house, flat, unit, bedsitter, apartment or condominium?**
- (e) Explain how to rent accommodation in your country. For e.g.
1. Fill out a form
  2. Have some referees
  3. Pay **4 weeks** bond and **2 weeks** rent in advance.
- (f) Role play trying to rent a house from a real estate agent
- Renter: *I'm interested in renting a house (I want to rent..)*  
 Agent: *How many **bedrooms** are you after? (do you want)*  
 Renter: *I'm after a 3 bedroom house. (3 occupants).*  
 Renter: *How much are you willing to pay?*  
 Renter: *Up to 300 dollars per week*  
 Agent: *Do you have any references?*  
 Renter: *Yes we do*  
 Agent: *We don't have anything at the moment but we will let you know if something comes up.*
- (g) In your present (current) accommodation, do you have ...?
1. a bookshelf, walk in wardrobe or drawers
  2. a passage way, en suite or backyard
  3. a kitchen **cupboard** or hanging rack
  4. a kitchen **bench** or pantry
  5. a balcony, patio, deck or verandah
  6. any paintings or wall hangings
- (h) Put some post it notes or pictures on a wall and have the class describe what position they are in.



- (i) Give the class some pictures/post it notes and they have to listen to instructions and put them on the wall. You can then give them instructions to move the picture to a different location.
- (j) Describe a traditional house in your country? (Match descriptions to reason).

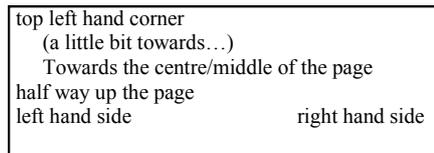
Description	Reason
1. On stilts (elevated)	a. to cope with floods
2. Timber floor	b. to ensure maximum air flow
3. Thatched roof	c. to keep away evil spirits
4. Stained window	d. to allow a breeze
5. Spirit house	e. to cope with the weather
6. Fire place	f. to allow or use natural sunlight
7. Curvature of roof	

- (k) There is a famous parable (30-33AD) of two houses where one of the houses keeps away evil spirits forever. Do you know this parable? (**come, dig, deep, build, move, rain, gone**)

## House and Furniture



- (a) Teacher labels the room **north, south, east and west**. Students have to listen to the teacher and run to the correct direction.
- (b) What is your address? My **address** is ... (**road, street**) ( )
- (c) Where do you live? I live **North of here, about 20 min's by train**
- (d) Have you ever **rented a house, flat, unit, bedsitter, apartment or condominium?**
- (e) Explain how to rent accommodation in your country. For e.g.
1. Fill out a form
  2. Have some referees
  3. Pay **4 weeks** bond and **2 weeks** rent in advance.
- (f) Role play trying to rent a house from a real estate agent
- Renter: *I'm interested in renting a house (I want to rent..)*  
 Agent: *How many **bedrooms** are you after? (do you want)*  
 Renter: *I'm after a 3 bedroom house. (3 occupants).*  
 Renter: *How much are you willing to pay?*  
 Renter: *Up to 300 dollars per week*  
 Agent: *Do you have any references?*  
 Renter: *Yes we do*  
 Agent: *We don't have anything at the moment but we will let you know if something comes up.*
- (g) In your present (current) accommodation, do you have ...?
1. a bookshelf, walk in wardrobe or drawers
  2. a passage way, en suite or backyard
  3. a kitchen **cupboard** or hanging rack
  4. a kitchen **bench** or pantry
  5. a balcony, patio, deck or verandah
  6. any paintings or wall hangings
- (h) Put some post it notes or pictures on a wall and have the class describe what position they are in.



- (i) Give the class some pictures/post it notes and they have to listen to instructions and put them on the wall. You can then give them instructions to move the picture to a different location.
- (j) Describe a traditional house in your country? (Match descriptions to reason).

Description	Reason
1. On stilts (elevated)	a. to cope with floods
2. Timber floor	b. to ensure maximum air flow
3. Thatched roof	c. to keep away evil spirits
4. Stained window	d. to allow a breeze
5. Spirit house	e. to cope with the weather
6. Fire place	f. to allow or use natural sunlight
7. Curvature of roof	

- (k) There is a famous parable (30-33AD) of two houses where one of the houses keeps away evil spirits forever. Do you know this parable? (**come, dig, deep, build, move, rain, gone**)

# 75. Seeing is Believing

## Something's Disappeared

- (a) Role play in small groups discussing amazing things. For e.g.

*Ann: What's the most amazing thing you have seen?*  
*Hugh: I saw a **sunset/storm** at the **beach**. It was **amazing!***  
*Mo: I saw a baby being born. It was incredible (**exciting!**)*  
*Nick: I saw this magic trick. It was miraculous. I couldn't believe my eyes when I saw it*

- (b) Demonstrate any amazing magic tricks you can do.  
 (c) In magic, some things can disappear. What are some things you always lose? Role play in pairs looking for something.

*Person 1: Has anybody seen my...( )?*  
*Have you seen my...( )?*  
*I seemed to have lost (misplaced) my...( )*  
*I last saw it...( )*

*Person 2: It has to be somewhere It couldn't have mysteriously disappeared.*

- (d) Some things get lost in communication. Role play in pairs.

*Kim: Good morning, Tax Office, Kim speaking*  
*Roy: Hello, my name is Roy Dugong, last week I applied for a tax file number but it hasn't arrived yet.*  
*Kim: Do you have a reference number?*  
*Roy: Yes I do, it is 007007*  
*Kim: Let me check, here it is, March 29, Roy Dugong.*

- (e) Some things get lost in transit, Role play in different pairs.

*Gillian: (Telephone ringing) Hello Victor's Bookshop, Gillian speaking.*  
*Marcos: Hello Gillian, my name is Marcos. Three months ago I ordered a book titled "Man verses Wild" but it hasn't arrived yet*  
*Gillian: Do you have a reference number?*

- (f) Sometimes we doubt something will arrive because of past 'negative' experiences.

*Franko: Do you think the book will arrive on time?*  
*Marcos: I doubt it because the last book never arrived until late*

- (g) Sometimes we doubt things that other people have reportedly seen. Do you believe in ...?

1. the Abominable snowman (Yeti)
2. the Loch Ness monster
3. The Bermuda triangle
4. UFO's
5. God



- (h) In your country do you have any other mysteries that some people doubt to be true? For example:

**China** The creature in Tianchi lake (Pictured-Korea-Heaven lake) or the creature in Qinghai lake.

- (i) Do you know the story of the Roman centurion (Capernaum 30AD) who had no doubts (believed) a man from another culture could heal his dying servant even though this man didn't physically visit or touch this person? (**sick, come, love, time, heal**)

- (j) What was the Roman Centurion (servant) or another official (daughter John 4) certain of? Complete these sentences:

1. They had (I have) no doubts that ...( )
2. They are (I am) certain that ...( )

# 75. Seeing is Believing

## Something's Disappeared

- (a) Role play in small groups discussing amazing things. For e.g.

*Ann: What's the most amazing thing you have seen?*  
*Hugh: I saw a **sunset/storm** at the **beach**. It was **amazing!***  
*Mo: I saw a baby being born. It was incredible (**exciting!**)*  
*Nick: I saw this magic trick. It was miraculous. I couldn't believe my eyes when I saw it*

- (b) Demonstrate any amazing magic tricks you can do.  
 (c) In magic, some things can disappear. What are some things you always lose? Role play in pairs looking for something.

*Person 1: Has anybody seen my...( )?*  
*Have you seen my...( )?*  
*I seemed to have lost (misplaced) my...( )*  
*I last saw it...( )*

*Person 2: It has to be somewhere It couldn't have mysteriously disappeared.*

- (d) Some things get lost in communication. Role play in pairs.

*Kim: Good morning, Tax Office, Kim speaking*  
*Roy: Hello, my name is Roy Dugong, last week I applied for a tax file number but it hasn't arrived yet.*  
*Kim: Do you have a reference number?*  
*Roy: Yes I do, it is 007007*  
*Kim: Let me check, here it is, March 29, Roy Dugong.*

- (e) Some things get lost in transit, Role play in different pairs.

*Gillian: (Telephone ringing) Hello Victor's Bookshop, Gillian speaking.*  
*Marcos: Hello Gillian, my name is Marcos. Three months ago I ordered a book titled "Man verses Wild" but it hasn't arrived yet*  
*Gillian: Do you have a reference number?*

- (f) Sometimes we doubt something will arrive because of past 'negative' experiences.

*Franko: Do you think the book will arrive on time?*  
*Marcos: I doubt it because the last book never arrived until late*

- (g) Sometimes we doubt things that other people have reportedly seen. Do you believe in ...?

1. the Abominable snowman (Yeti)
2. the Loch Ness monster
3. The Bermuda triangle
4. UFO's
5. God



- (h) In your country do you have any other mysteries that some people doubt to be true? For example:

**China** The creature in Tianchi lake (Pictured-Korea-Heaven lake) or the creature in Qinghai lake.

- (i) Do you know the story of the Roman centurion (Capernaum 30AD) who had no doubts (believed) a man from another culture could heal his dying servant even though this man didn't physically visit or touch this person? (**sick, come, love, time, heal**)

- (j) What was the Roman Centurion (servant) or another official (daughter John 4) certain of? Complete these sentences:

1. They had (I have) no doubts that ...( )
2. They are (I am) certain that ...( )

# 76. Welcome Corner

## Welcome to the Office

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: *Tomorrow we are going for a day trip to the beach. Do you want to come?*

New Friend: *Sure, do I need to bring anything?*

(b) What things could you take on **day trip**? Write the alphabet on the board and complete as a class a word for each letter.

<b>A</b> pples	<b>C</b> amera	<b>E</b>	<b>G</b>
<b>B</b> each ball	<b>D</b>	<b>F</b> riend	<b>H</b>

(c) Role play travelling on a bus asking the person next to you these questions. (Draw a map to illustrate your answers)

- Where are you from *I am from*
- Where were you born? *I was born in....*
- Where did you grow up? *I grew up in...*
- Where** do you live now? *I now live in .....*
- How long** have you been/lived/worked here?

(d) Change partners but this time share information about yourself before you ask a question. For example.

- Information about yourself: *I was born in .....*
- Question: *Where were you born?*

(e) Mr T arrives at your office from another country. Role play in threes welcoming him/her to your workplace.

Xi: *Good morning Mr T. Welcome to Changsha*

Mr T: *Thankyou*

Xi: *My name is Xi and this is my colleague Xu*

Xu: *Nice to meet you*

Mr T: *Nice to meet you too*

Xu: *Is this your first time to China?*

Mr T: *Yes it is. I'm so excited to be here.*

Xi: *Would you like a drink?*

Mr T: *Water please*

Xu: *Please, make yourself at home*

Xi: *Let us know if you need anything*

Xu: *Please don't hesitate to ask us if you need anything*

(f) Welcome Mr T on his second trip to Changsha.

Xi: *Welcome back Mr T. Nice to see you again. How is your family?*

(g) Role play taking out an overseas visitor for a welcome meal.

Visitor: *I'm a little bit peckish, I feel like a bite to eat*

Host: *What would you like for lunch, any preference? Do you like spicy food? Have you ever tried Japanese?*

(h) In your country, what do people do when a customer enters a shop? Is this similar to other countries?

- Say a special greeting or say hello
- Give some water or wash their feet
- Bow or do nothing

(i) How do you welcome special visitors to your country/town?

- Role out the red carpet
- Line the road with children
- Put up banners/lots of flags
- Have a special banquet
- Form a guard of honor
- The brass band plays
- Give a special gift



(j) Have you ever been part of welcoming somebody special?

(k) Do you know the story of a woman, who had had a terrible life, welcomed a special guest with non stop **kissing, washing of feet** and an anointing with a special perfume (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**house, drink, wipe, know, forgive, a lot**)

# 76. Welcome Corner

## Welcome to the Office

(a) Role play in pairs

Person 1: *Tomorrow we are going for a day trip to the beach. Do you want to come?*

New Friend: *Sure, do I need to bring anything?*

(b) What things could you take on **day trip**? Write the alphabet on the board and complete as a class a word for each letter.

<b>A</b> pples	<b>C</b> amera	<b>E</b>	<b>G</b>
<b>B</b> each ball	<b>D</b>	<b>F</b> riend	<b>H</b>

(c) Role play travelling on a bus asking the person next to you these questions. (Draw a map to illustrate your answers)

- Where are you from *I am from*
- Where were you born? *I was born in....*
- Where did you grow up? *I grew up in...*
- Where** do you live now? *I now live in .....*
- How long** have you been/lived/worked here?

(d) Change partners but this time share information about yourself before you ask a question. For example.

- Information about yourself: *I was born in .....*
- Question: *Where were you born?*

(e) Mr T arrives at your office from another country. Role play in threes welcoming him/her to your workplace.

Xi: *Good morning Mr T. Welcome to Changsha*

Mr T: *Thankyou*

Xi: *My name is Xi and this is my colleague Xu*

Xu: *Nice to meet you*

Mr T: *Nice to meet you too*

Xu: *Is this your first time to China?*

Mr T: *Yes it is. I'm so excited to be here.*

Xi: *Would you like a drink?*

Mr T: *Water please*

Xu: *Please, make yourself at home*

Xi: *Let us know if you need anything*

Xu: *Please don't hesitate to ask us if you need anything*

(f) Welcome Mr T on his second trip to Changsha.

Xi: *Welcome back Mr T. Nice to see you again. How is your family?*

(g) Role play taking out an overseas visitor for a welcome meal.

Visitor: *I'm a little bit peckish, I feel like a bite to eat*

Host: *What would you like for lunch, any preference? Do you like spicy food? Have you ever tried Japanese?*

(h) In your country, what do people do when a customer enters a shop? Is this similar to other countries?

- Say a special greeting or say hello
- Give some water or wash their feet
- Bow or do nothing

(i) How do you welcome special visitors to your country/town?

- Role out the red carpet
- Line the road with children
- Put up banners/lots of flags
- Have a special banquet
- Form a guard of honor
- The brass band plays
- Give a special gift



(j) Have you ever been part of welcoming somebody special?

(k) Do you know the story of a woman, who had had a terrible life, welcomed a special guest with non stop **kissing, washing of feet** and an anointing with a special perfume (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**house, drink, wipe, know, forgive, a lot**)

# 77. Somewhere to Stay

## Booking Accommodation



- (a) Dramatise a problem in your hotel room
- (b) In pairs, share about a time you **stayed** or **worked** in a ...
1. **hotel/motel**, backpackers, hostel, **tent** or **resort**
  2. home stay or **farm** stay (woofing)

*I stayed in a ... ( ), it had a twin bed and garden view (see below) The accommodation included ... ( )*

- a. Twin single or double **bed**, spa, sauna or en suite
- b. Sea or **garden** view. Swimming **pool**
- c. Buffet or continental **breakfast**. Cooking facilities
- d. Complimentary champagne. **Room** service

- (c) Role-play a hotel receptionist (HW) welcoming guests (G).

*Front Desk: Good afternoon sir/madam. Welcome to .. ( ). Can I help you in anyway?*

*Guest: Yes I would like a room for tonight please.*

*Front Desk: Do you have a (booking) reservation?*

*Guest: Yes I do*

*Front Desk: What name is it?*

*Guest: Audrey Hood and I have booked for 2 nights*

*Front Desk: Let me check. Oh yes, here it is. We can offer you a free upgrade to a superior room that includes a buffet breakfast.*

*Guest: That would be great. Thankyou very much*

*Front Desk: You are room number 007. Checkout is at 10 am. Here is your key, we can take your luggage up for you.*

*Guest: Is it possible to have a late check out?*

*Front Desk: I will see what I can arrange. Have a great stay Mrs Hood.*

- (d) Role play somebody calling to book a hotel room.

*Front Desk: Hello Bangkok Hilton, Lee speaking*

*Caller: Hello, I would like to book a room for 2 nights*

*Front Desk: What nights and type of room are you after? (do you want)*

*Caller: A family room for 2 adults and 2 children for this Thursday/Friday 5th and 6th of May*

*Front Desk: Ok let me check, yes we do have some rooms available. The price is ... ( )*

*Caller: Could I book a family room please?*

*Front Desk: What name would you like the booking?*

*Caller: Smith, Jim Smith*

*Front Desk: Could I have your credit card number please Mr Smith?*

*Caller: Sure, it is 9999*

*Front Desk: Ok Mr Smith. May 5th and 6th, one family room. Is that correct?*

*Caller: That's correct*

*Front Desk: We look forward to seeing you Mr Smith. Thankyou for calling.*

- (e) What is the most unique place you can stay in your country?
1. In a castle, temple or historical home
  2. In a lighthouse, cave, igloo, train or teepee
  3. On the cliffs edge, in the desert, outback or icehouse
  4. In a zoo, aquarium, jungle or a heaven like beach paradise

- (f) Have you ever stayed in a place which was just like heaven? What accommodation do you think is in heaven and how do you book and confirm a booking for a room in heaven?

- (g) Do you know the story of 72 travellers who went as instructed, on a journey with no food, money or booked accommodation (Jerusalem 33AD)? (They already knew they had a room booked in heaven). (**lamb, wolves, welcome, house, eat, stay**)

# 77. Somewhere to Stay

## Booking Accommodation



- (a) Dramatise a problem in your hotel room
- (b) In pairs, share about a time you **stayed** or **worked** in a ...
1. **hotel/motel**, backpackers, hostel, **tent** or **resort**
  2. home stay or **farm** stay (woofing)

*I stayed in a ... ( ), it had a twin bed and garden view (see below) The accommodation included ... ( )*

- a. Twin single or double **bed**, spa, sauna or en suite
- b. Sea or **garden** view. Swimming **pool**
- c. Buffet or continental **breakfast**. Cooking facilities
- d. Complimentary champagne. **Room** service

- (c) Role-play a hotel receptionist (HW) welcoming guests (G).

*Front Desk: Good afternoon sir/madam. Welcome to .. ( ). Can I help you in anyway?*

*Guest: Yes I would like a room for tonight please.*

*Front Desk: Do you have a (booking) reservation?*

*Guest: Yes I do*

*Front Desk: What name is it?*

*Guest: Audrey Hood and I have booked for 2 nights*

*Front Desk: Let me check. Oh yes, here it is. We can offer you a free upgrade to a superior room that includes a buffet breakfast.*

*Guest: That would be great. Thankyou very much*

*Front Desk: You are room number 007. Checkout is at 10 am. Here is your key, we can take your luggage up for you.*

*Guest: Is it possible to have a late check out?*

*Front Desk: I will see what I can arrange. Have a great stay Mrs Hood.*

- (d) Role play somebody calling to book a hotel room.

*Front Desk: Hello Bangkok Hilton, Lee speaking*

*Caller: Hello, I would like to book a room for 2 nights*

*Front Desk: What nights and type of room are you after? (do you want)*

*Caller: A family room for 2 adults and 2 children for this Thursday/Friday 5th and 6th of May*

*Front Desk: Ok let me check, yes we do have some rooms available. The price is ... ( )*

*Caller: Could I book a family room please?*

*Front Desk: What name would you like the booking?*

*Caller: Smith, Jim Smith*

*Front Desk: Could I have your credit card number please Mr Smith?*

*Caller: Sure, it is 9999*

*Front Desk: Ok Mr Smith. May 5th and 6th, one family room. Is that correct?*

*Caller: That's correct*

*Front Desk: We look forward to seeing you Mr Smith. Thankyou for calling.*

- (e) What is the most unique place you can stay in your country?
1. In a castle, temple or historical home
  2. In a lighthouse, cave, igloo, train or teepee
  3. On the cliffs edge, in the desert, outback or icehouse
  4. In a zoo, aquarium, jungle or a heaven like beach paradise

- (f) Have you ever stayed in a place which was just like heaven? What accommodation do you think is in heaven and how do you book and confirm a booking for a room in heaven?

- (g) Do you know the story of 72 travellers who went as instructed, on a journey with no food, money or booked accommodation (Jerusalem 33AD)? (They already knew they had a room booked in heaven). (**lamb, wolves, welcome, house, eat, stay**)

## Giving Feedback

- (a) Can you **sing**? In pairs rate and share your singing ability from 0 to 10. 0 is **terrible**, 5 is good, 8 is great, 10 is **excellent**.
- (b) In groups of four, take turns rolling a dice and doing an action.
- If you roll 1 or 4, you have to sing a song.
  - If you roll 2 or 5, you have to do a **dance** style.
  - If you roll 3 or 6, you have to make a bird or animal noise.
- (c) Brainstorm what makes a good singer.
- (d) When giving someone feedback on speaking, singing etc, you can ask two basic questions. Read the following example in groups of four.

Judge 1: (Question one) **How do you think you went?**

Singer: *I think I connected with the audience well.*

Judge 2: **I particularly like the way you maintained good eye contact. Well done ... (name.)!**

Judge 1: (Question two). **How could you do better next time?**

Singer: *I need to improve my high notes.*

Judge 3: **One area you could work on is your tone. I think it would be helpful if you got some more voice lessons to improve your pitch.**

- (e) In groups of four, role-play giving some constructive feedback to a performer. For example; singer, dancer, magician, actor, whistler etc...
- (f) Are you good at helping people? Rate your helping ability from 0 to 10 (0 is terrible, 10 is excellent) and tell your partner
- (g) Discuss which of the following statements define a godly helpful person. Agree (A) or disagree (DA).

*A godly person is someone who.*

- is always helping people. (DA or A)
- wears wings. (DA or A)
- always goes to the temple/church.
- is from a particular culture.
- never complains.
- is not hot headed.
- looks like an angel.
- prays everyday.



- (h) Who is the most godly person you know and why?

- (g) Do you know any amazing love stories or stories of commitment from your culture? For example:

**China:** Opium War and Boxer rebellion: The Chinese would have rated the British very lowly in terms of godliness during these times

- Results were devastating
- Trading ports and Tracts of land (Yi he tuan)
- Inaction and corruption
- Frustrated (fed up)
- Abide

**World:** The story behind the well known phrase *The Good Samaritan*. Samaritans were considered by Jewish people to be the least godly people in the world. (On the road from Jerusalem to Jericho 30AD) (**life, read, robbed, beaten, stripped, saw, went, helped, paid**)

## Giving Feedback

- (a) Can you **sing**? In pairs rate and share your singing ability from 0 to 10. 0 is **terrible**, 5 is good, 8 is great, 10 is **excellent**.
- (b) In groups of four, take turns rolling a dice and doing an action.
- If you roll 1 or 4, you have to sing a song.
  - If you roll 2 or 5, you have to do a **dance** style.
  - If you roll 3 or 6, you have to make a bird or animal noise.
- (c) Brainstorm what makes a good singer.
- (d) When giving someone feedback on speaking, singing etc, you can ask two basic questions. Read the following example in groups of four.

Judge 1: (Question one) **How do you think you went?**

Singer: *I think I connected with the audience well.*

Judge 2: **I particularly like the way you maintained good eye contact. Well done ... (name.)!**

Judge 1: (Question two). **How could you do better next time?**

Singer: *I need to improve my high notes.*

Judge 3: **One area you could work on is your tone. I think it would be helpful if you got some more voice lessons to improve your pitch.**

- (e) In groups of four, role-play giving some constructive feedback to a performer. For example; singer, dancer, magician, actor, whistler etc...
- (f) Are you good at helping people? Rate your helping ability from 0 to 10 (0 is terrible, 10 is excellent) and tell your partner
- (g) Discuss which of the following statements define a godly helpful person. Agree (A) or disagree (DA).

*A godly person is someone who.*

- is always helping people. (DA or A)
- wears wings. (DA or A)
- always goes to the temple/church.
- is from a particular culture.
- never complains.
- is not hot headed.
- looks like an angel.
- prays everyday.



- (h) Who is the most godly person you know and why?

- (g) Do you know any amazing love stories or stories of commitment from your culture? For example:

**China:** Opium War and Boxer rebellion: The Chinese would have rated the British very lowly in terms of godliness during these times

- Results were devastating
- Trading ports and Tracts of land (Yi he tuan)
- Inaction and corruption
- Frustrated (fed up)
- Abide

**World:** The story behind the well known phrase *The Good Samaritan*. Samaritans were considered by Jewish people to be the least godly people in the world. (On the road from Jerusalem to Jericho 30AD) (**life, read, robbed, beaten, stripped, saw, went, helped, paid**)

# 79. You Love Me

## Possible relationships

(a) Role play in pairs

Wayne: Here are some **flowers** for you

Megan: Wow, they are so **beautiful**.

Wayne: Here is a **card** for you

Megan: Thankyou, you shouldn't have, that is very kind of you

(b) In pairs, share about a time ... (Choose two)

1. you had a crush on somebody (**classmate, fellow worker**)
2. you wrote or received a **love letter**
3. someone **sleazy** (not oily) asked you for a dance.
4. you asked someone **friendly** out on a date
5. you said no to someone who asked you out on a date.
6. somebody **kind** gave you flowers **chocolates** or a **gift**

(c) Practice letting someone know you are interested in them.

(You can use a toy bear as the potential boyfriend or girlfriend)

1. I just thought I would tell you I'm interested in you
2. I would like to be more than friends
3. How about you and me?
4. I would like to get to know you better
5. I want you to know I find you to be very special.

(d) In pairs, practice telling a person that you are not interested in becoming their girlfriend or boyfriend.

Elvis: I want to get to know you better

Celine: I'm sorry I don't feel the same way

or

Elvis: I just thought I would tell you I'm interested in you

Celine: That's very nice of you but I just want to be friends

(e) In **Japan**, people do Ikebana flower arranging (pictured) so as to spend time recognising something beautiful. Who do you like to spend time with? What makes a person beautiful to you?

A beautiful person is a person who...()

1. is caring
2. is honest
3. is rich (wealthy)
4. is committed to a relationship
5. has good looks
6. has muscles
7. has a sense of humour



(f) Discuss the following expressions about love. Do you agree or disagree?

1. You fall in and out of love with people
2. Love is not a feeling but an act of the will
3. Love is not easy

(g) Do you know any amazing love stories or stories of commitment from your culture? For example:

**China:** A story of commitment and discovery: Liu Guljiang and Xu Calquing

1. eloped and escaped
2. gossip and scorn
3. carved out 6000 plus steps
4. 19 year and 29 year old widow
5. Jiangjin County (Chongqing Municipality).
6. seclusion until 2001 ( in a cave for 50 years)

**World:** Mary and Martha and how one of them appreciated more the beauty of their guest and the beauty of themselves by spending time with Him (30-33AD) (**listened, worried, many, best, never**)

(h) Who do you want to spend more time with in the future to appreciate their beauty?

# 79. You Love Me

## Possible relationships

(a) Role play in pairs

Wayne: Here are some **flowers** for you

Megan: Wow, they are so **beautiful**.

Wayne: Here is a **card** for you

Megan: Thankyou, you shouldn't have, that is very kind of you

(b) In pairs, share about a time ... (Choose two)

1. you had a crush on somebody (**classmate, fellow worker**)
2. you wrote or received a **love letter**
3. someone **sleazy** (not oily) asked you for a dance.
4. you asked someone **friendly** out on a date
5. you said no to someone who asked you out on a date.
6. somebody **kind** gave you flowers **chocolates** or a **gift**

(c) Practice letting someone know you are interested in them.

(You can use a toy bear as the potential boyfriend or girlfriend)

1. I just thought I would tell you I'm interested in you
2. I would like to be more than friends
3. How about you and me?
4. I would like to get to know you better
5. I want you to know I find you to be very special.

(d) In pairs, practice telling a person that you are not interested in becoming their girlfriend or boyfriend.

Elvis: I want to get to know you better

Celine: I'm sorry I don't feel the same way

or

Elvis: I just thought I would tell you I'm interested in you

Celine: That's very nice of you but I just want to be friends

(e) In **Japan**, people do Ikebana flower arranging (pictured) so as to spend time recognising something beautiful. Who do you like to spend time with? What makes a person beautiful to you?

A beautiful person is a person who...()

1. is caring
2. is honest
3. is rich (wealthy)
4. is committed to a relationship
5. has good looks
6. has muscles
7. has a sense of humour



(f) Discuss the following expressions about love. Do you agree or disagree?

1. You fall in and out of love with people
2. Love is not a feeling but an act of the will
3. Love is not easy

(g) Do you know any amazing love stories or stories of commitment from your culture? For example:

**China:** A story of commitment and discovery: Liu Guljiang and Xu Calquing

1. eloped and escaped
2. gossip and scorn
3. carved out 6000 plus steps
4. 19 year and 29 year old widow
5. Jiangjin County (Chongqing Municipality).
6. seclusion until 2001 ( in a cave for 50 years)

**World:** Mary and Martha and how one of them appreciated more the beauty of their guest and the beauty of themselves by spending time with Him (30-33AD) (**listened, worried, many, best, never**)

(h) Who do you want to spend more time with in the future to appreciate their beauty?

# 80. Peace Man

## Pets and Flowers



(a) Describe your pet.

Person 1: Do you have a **pet**?

Person 2: I have a ..(**dog/cat**)  
His/her name is ...()  
He/she is very ..()

1. **cute**, cuddly, **playful** or **hairy/fluffy**
2. **naughty** but adorable

(b) What are the most common pets in your country? What is the most unusual pet you have seen? (**hind legs, fur, eyes, tail**)

(c) Mark in and practice the intonations to these statement/questions.

1. What is your favourite flower? (Wh question-falling intonation)
2. Do you like ants? (Yes/No question-rising intonation)
3. My dog likes eating **chicken, beef** and **pork**. (List-rising, rising, falling intonation)
4. I want to be a vet. (Information statement, falling intonation)
5. Do you like ravens? (Yes/no question)
6. I play with my cat to reduce my stress (statement)

(d) Hum these intonations to your partner and see if they can guess which one you are humming.

(e) Some people reduce their stress by playing with pets or doing gardening. What do you do to gain relief from stress?

1. I occasionally ...()
2. I sometimes ..()
3. I usually..()
4. I always ...()

(f) Do you have a national 'symbolic' flower, bird or animal?

(g) What's your favourite flower? *My favourite flower is... It...*

1. is very pretty and blooms all year round
2. is beautiful looking and is easy to grow
3. is very fragrant and closes up at night
4. is very symbolic, delicious to eat and grows in the wild

(h) Where are the main wildflower areas in your country?

(i) What flower are you like? For example

1. I am like a red rose because I am special
2. I am like a lily because I am specially made

(j) People can reduce their worries by thinking about what was written in 30-33AD about wild flowers, birds (ravens) and even ants. Divide into 3 groups, read and discuss your groups information and then share this information in other groups (3)

### Group One: Ravens

*"Therefore I tell you, **do not worry** about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear. <sup>23</sup>For **life** is ore than food, and the body more than clothes. <sup>24</sup>**Consider** the ravens: They do not sow or reap, they have no storeroom or barn; yet **God feeds them**. And how much more valuable you are than birds! <sup>25</sup>Who of you by worrying can add a single hour to your life?"*

### Group Two: Wildflowers

<sup>27</sup>*"**Consider** how the wild flowers grow. They do not labor or spin. Yet I tell you, not even Solomon in all his splendor was **dressed** like one of these. <sup>31</sup>But seek his kingdom, and these things will be given to you as well."*

### Group Three: Ants

*Go to the ant, you sluggard; **consider** its ways and be **wise!** <sup>7</sup>It has no commander, no overseer or ruler, <sup>8</sup>yet it stores its provisions in summer and gathers its food at harvest."*

# 80. Peace Man

## Pets and Flowers



(a) Describe your pet.

Person 1: Do you have a **pet**?

Person 2: I have a ..(**dog/cat**)  
His/her name is ...()  
He/she is very ..()

1. **cute**, cuddly, **playful** or **hairy/fluffy**
2. **naughty** but adorable

(b) What are the most common pets in your country? What is the most unusual pet you have seen? (**hind legs, fur, eyes, tail**)

(c) Mark in and practice the intonations to these statement/questions.

1. What is your favourite flower? (Wh question-falling intonation)
2. Do you like ants? (Yes/No question-rising intonation)
3. My dog likes eating **chicken, beef** and **pork**. (List-rising, rising, falling intonation)
4. I want to be a vet. (Information statement, falling intonation)
5. Do you like ravens? (Yes/no question)
6. I play with my cat to reduce my stress (statement)

(d) Hum these intonations to your partner and see if they can guess which one you are humming.

(e) Some people reduce their stress by playing with pets or doing gardening. What do you do to gain relief from stress?

1. I occasionally ...()
2. I sometimes ..()
3. I usually..()
4. I always ...()

(f) Do you have a national 'symbolic' flower, bird or animal?

(g) What's your favourite flower? *My favourite flower is... It...*

1. is very pretty and blooms all year round
2. is beautiful looking and is easy to grow
3. is very fragrant and closes up at night
4. is very symbolic, delicious to eat and grows in the wild

(h) Where are the main wildflower areas in your country?

(i) What flower are you like? For example

1. I am like a red rose because I am special
2. I am like a lily because I am specially made

(j) People can reduce their worries by thinking about what was written in 30-33AD about wild flowers, birds (ravens) and even ants. Divide into 3 groups, read and discuss your groups information and then share this information in other groups (3)

### Group One: Ravens

*"Therefore I tell you, **do not worry** about your life, what you will eat; or about your body, what you will wear. <sup>23</sup>For **life** is ore than food, and the body more than clothes. <sup>24</sup>**Consider** the ravens: They do not sow or reap, they have no storeroom or barn; yet **God feeds them**. And how much more valuable you are than birds! <sup>25</sup>Who of you by worrying can add a single hour to your life?"*

### Group Two: Wildflowers

<sup>27</sup>*"**Consider** how the wild flowers grow. They do not labor or spin. Yet I tell you, not even Solomon in all his splendor was **dressed** like one of these. <sup>31</sup>But seek his kingdom, and these things will be given to you as well."*

### Group Three: Ants

*Go to the ant, you sluggard; **consider** its ways and be **wise!** <sup>7</sup>It has no commander, no overseer or ruler, <sup>8</sup>yet it stores its provisions in summer and gathers its food at harvest."*

# 81. Exchange Rate

# 81. Exchange Rate

## Coffee Shop

- (a) Role play in pairs at a coffee shop.

Barista: Here is your **coffee**?  
(Here are your coffees)

Customer 1: Hmm! It taste **delicious!**

Customer 2: This coffee is just right!

Customer 3: This coffee is **too sweet**  
(**cold/hot/frothy**)



- (b) What's your favorite hot drink? Compare the price of a cup of coffee in your country to other countries.
- (c) Describe how peoples drinking habits have changed over time
- 40 years ago, people used to **drink** a lot of milk but **nowadays** (these days) people don't drink as much.
  - Drinking coffee has become more **popular**.
  - Drinking green tea is becoming more popular
- (d) Role play a coffee shop barista serving a customer.

Barista: Hello, how are you today?

Customer: Fine thanks

Barista: What would you like to drink?

Customer: I'll have a cappuccino thanks.

Barista: Would you like chocolate sprinkle on top?

Customer: Yes please

Barista: Would you like anything else, something to eat?

Customer: No thanks. Do I pay you now?

Barista: No, you can pay me later. Please take a seat. I'll bring the coffee to you

Barista: Here you are, one cappuccino. I hope you enjoy your coffee.

Customer: (Customer drinks and finishes the coffee and comes to the counter to pay the bill.)

Barista: How was your coffee?

Customer: It was delicious thanks.

Barista: That will be one dollar and 50 cents

Customer: Here is two dollars, you can keep the change.

Barista: Thankyou very much. Have a good day.

- (e) Role play this common question asked at a shop

Customer: Are you busy today? (Choose one)

Barista: 1. So so, pretty quiet, up and down.

2. Not bad, pretty good, pretty busy .

3. Flat out, today we are doing a roaring trade

## Lost and Found

- (f) Have you ever left anything in a coffee shop and where did you leave it in the coffee shop? (demonstrate each position)

1. **Behind** the door or left **hanging** on a hook

2. **Under, on** or **on top of** something

3. **Next to** or **in** something

- (g) Role play looking for something you have lost at a coffee shop

Person 1: Excuse me, has anybody seen a black umbrella? I can't find/have lost (I seemed to have lost/ misplaced) my umbrella. I think I left it here yesterday. I last saw it on that chair

- (g) Share about a time you lost, found or discovered something? Do you know any stories in your culture of something that was either lost or found (discovered)? For example:

**Thailand:** Lampang Man (Udon Thani Province)

- (h) Share in pairs the last time you felt lost.

- (i) Do you know the story of the lost silver coin where many things were discovered (30-33AD)? (**light, sweep, search, find, calls, rejoice**)

## Coffee Shop

- (a) Role play in pairs at a coffee shop.

Barista: Here is your **coffee**?  
(Here are your coffees)

Customer 1: Hmm! It taste **delicious!**

Customer 2: This coffee is just right!

Customer 3: This coffee is **too sweet**  
(**cold/hot/frothy**)



- (b) What's your favorite hot drink? Compare the price of a cup of coffee in your country to other countries.
- (c) Describe how peoples drinking habits have changed over time
- 40 years ago, people used to **drink** a lot of milk but **nowadays** (these days) people don't drink as much.
  - Drinking coffee has become more **popular**.
  - Drinking green tea is becoming more popular
- (d) Role play a coffee shop barista serving a customer.

Barista: Hello, how are you today?

Customer: Fine thanks

Barista: What would you like to drink?

Customer: I'll have a cappuccino thanks.

Barista: Would you like chocolate sprinkle on top?

Customer: Yes please

Barista: Would you like anything else, something to eat?

Customer: No thanks. Do I pay you now?

Barista: No, you can pay me later. Please take a seat. I'll bring the coffee to you

Barista: Here you are, one cappuccino. I hope you enjoy your coffee.

Customer: (Customer drinks and finishes the coffee and comes to the counter to pay the bill.)

Barista: How was your coffee?

Customer: It was delicious thanks.

Barista: That will be one dollar and 50 cents

Customer: Here is two dollars, you can keep the change.

Barista: Thankyou very much. Have a good day.

- (e) Role play this common question asked at a shop

Customer: Are you busy today? (Choose one)

Barista: 1. So so, pretty quiet, up and down.

2. Not bad, pretty good, pretty busy .

3. Flat out, today we are doing a roaring trade

## Lost and Found

- (f) Have you ever left anything in a coffee shop and where did you leave it in the coffee shop? (demonstrate each position)

1. **Behind** the door or left **hanging** on a hook

2. **Under, on** or **on top of** something

3. **Next to** or **in** something

- (g) Role play looking for something you have lost at a coffee shop

Person 1: Excuse me, has anybody seen a black umbrella? I can't find/have lost (I seemed to have lost/ misplaced) my umbrella. I think I left it here yesterday. I last saw it on that chair

- (g) Share about a time you lost, found or discovered something? Do you know any stories in your culture of something that was either lost or found (discovered)? For example:

**Thailand:** Lampang Man (Udon Thani Province)

- (h) Share in pairs the last time you felt lost.

- (i) Do you know the story of the lost silver coin where many things were discovered (30-33AD)? (**light, sweep, search, find, calls, rejoice**)

# 82. What's the Problem

## Counselling

- (a) Give a brief description of yourself to your partner
1. I am ..... cm (s) tall
  2. I have fair **skin**/complexion
  3. I have ... **hair**
  4. I am medium **height**
- (b) Do you look similar to your father?
1. We are similar height
  2. We both have the same **eyes**.
- (c) Do you have similar personalities or the same hobbies as your father? *We both are..... We both like ...*
1. **Kind** and generous
  2. **Helpful** but sometimes **angry**
  3. **Friendly, hard working**
  4. Encouraging and persevering
  5. Outgoing or shy/reserved
  6. Quick tempered or patient
- (d) How do you celebrate father's day in your country?
- (e) Role play showing appreciation to your father/someone else.

Child: *Excuse me dad, can I say something to you*

Father: *What is it?*

Child: *I just want to say thank you for being my father.*

- (f) Practice being an observant father

Father: *Hi.....(name), you look a little sad, is everything ok, you can tell me, I am your father.*

Child: *I'm ok dad, thanks for noticing*

- (g) Our fathers are not perfect. Sometimes brave families need to visit a counselor to work through issues. Choose the best response from the counselor.

1. Client: *I am having a problem with my dad*  
Counselor: **a.** *You are having problems with your dad... (Parroting)*  
**b.** *You and your father don't have the best relationship. (Paraphrasing)*
2. Client: *I'm having problems at home.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Tell me more? (Keep the client talking)*  
**b.** *You are having problems at home. (Parroting)*
3. Client: *My dad keeps bothering me.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Sounds like a terrible father! (Judgemental)*  
**b.** *In what way? (make the client be specific)*
4. Client: *My dad always eats my lunch.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Always? (check absolutes. Don't give opinions)*  
**b.** *What a pig! (judgemental)*
5. Client: *I don't get along with my dad.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Nobody would like your father. (opinion)*  
**b.** *At home your father does some things that really annoy you. He sometimes accuses you of something you didn't do, he sometimes never says hello and sometimes he eats your lunch (Summarise)*
6. Client: *What should I do counsellor?*  
Counselor: **a.** *You should leave home! (provide solution)*  
**b.** *Let's look at what options you can take. (Empower the client to solve the problem).*

- (h) Complete: A good counsellor shouldn't/should ...(..)

- (i) Do you know any stories that illustrate different ways people dealt (positive or negative) with problems. For example:

**China:** Wang Yang Bu Lao  
*It's not too late to fix a problem*  
neglected repair fix mend advised

**World:** The Prodigal (lost) Son (30-33AD). (**sold, far, divided, everything, think, everyday, ran, lost, dead, but**)



# 82. What's the Problem

## Counselling

- (a) Give a brief description of yourself to your partner
1. I am ..... cm (s) tall
  2. I have fair **skin**/complexion
  3. I have ... **hair**
  4. I am medium **height**
- (b) Do you look similar to your father?
1. We are similar height
  2. We both have the same **eyes**.
- (c) Do you have similar personalities or the same hobbies as your father? *We both are..... We both like ...*
1. **Kind** and generous
  2. **Helpful** but sometimes **angry**
  3. **Friendly, hard working**
  4. Encouraging and persevering
  5. Outgoing or shy/reserved
  6. Quick tempered or patient
- (d) How do you celebrate father's day in your country?
- (e) Role play showing appreciation to your father/someone else.

Child: *Excuse me dad, can I say something to you*

Father: *What is it?*

Child: *I just want to say thank you for being my father.*

- (f) Practice being an observant father

Father: *Hi.....(name), you look a little sad, is everything ok, you can tell me, I am your father.*

Child: *I'm ok dad, thanks for noticing*

- (g) Our fathers are not perfect. Sometimes brave families need to visit a counselor to work through issues. Choose the best response from the counselor.

1. Client: *I am having a problem with my dad*  
Counselor: **a.** *You are having problems with your dad... (Parroting)*  
**b.** *You and your father don't have the best relationship. (Paraphrasing)*
2. Client: *I'm having problems at home.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Tell me more? (Keep the client talking)*  
**b.** *You are having problems at home. (Parroting)*
3. Client: *My dad keeps bothering me.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Sounds like a terrible father! (Judgemental)*  
**b.** *In what way? (make the client be specific)*
4. Client: *My dad always eats my lunch.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Always? (check absolutes. Don't give opinions)*  
**b.** *What a pig! (judgemental)*
5. Client: *I don't get along with my dad.*  
Counselor: **a.** *Nobody would like your father. (opinion)*  
**b.** *At home your father does some things that really annoy you. He sometimes accuses you of something you didn't do, he sometimes never says hello and sometimes he eats your lunch (Summarise)*
6. Client: *What should I do counsellor?*  
Counselor: **a.** *You should leave home! (provide solution)*  
**b.** *Let's look at what options you can take. (Empower the client to solve the problem).*

- (h) Complete: A good counsellor shouldn't/should ...(..)

- (i) Do you know any stories that illustrate different ways people dealt (positive or negative) with problems. For example:

**China:** Wang Yang Bu Lao  
*It's not too late to fix a problem*  
neglected repair fix mend advised

**World:** The Prodigal (lost) Son (30-33AD). (**sold, far, divided, everything, think, everyday, ran, lost, dead, but**)



# 83 Double or Nothing

## Returning Faulty Items

- (a) Share what is the most special thing in your wallet or bag.  
*I chose this .....() because...()*
- (b) Share about a time you had to return something to a shop.  
*I returned something (cup/jug..etc) because ...(reason)*  
1. it didn't work properly, it was **faulty/broken**  
2. it had a **crack (chip)** in it or it had a mark on it  
3. it was the **wrong size**, it didn't fit properly  
4. I didn't like it, I changed my mind
- (c) Role play 3 customers returning television each.  
*Customer 1.2.3: Excuse me sales assistant.*  
*Sales Assistant: Yes, can I help you.*  
*Customer 1: I bought this television the other day but it's faulty.*  
*Customer 2: I would like to exchange (swap) this TV for another one.*  
*Customer 3: Could I get a refund for this TV, it doesn't seem to work properly.*

## Performance Appraisal

- (d) When there is a problem with the performance of a store or company, the manager (M) might do a performance appraisal of each department. Read through the following role-play.  
*Manager: How are our sales (retail figures)?*  
*Sales Manager: In terms of the electrical department, televisions are selling quite well, however our microwaves are not doing so well. The sales of DVDs could be better.*
- (e) In pairs, do a performance appraisal (situational analysis) of your English learning in terms of speaking, listening, writing and grammar.  
*Person 1: How's your study of English going at the moment?*  
*Person 2: In terms of my ... (reading), it's improving however my ...(speaking) could be better My ...(grammar) is not going so well*

## Situational Analysis

- (f) In what areas of your life could you do a situational analysis on? (health, finance relationships, future outlook)
- (g) We all know death is worst problem somebody can have. What do you think happens to you when you die?
- (h) Explain how people use the money pictured to help their ancestors who are in a difficult situation.
- China:** Burning of Spirit Money (Escape Diyu): No one pays off their debts entirely while they are alive.
- (i) Do you know any other stories that could help explain what happens to people when they die? For example:  
**World:** The story of the rich man and Lazarus 33AD. (Do a situational analysis (wealth, health, future outlook) on the two men before and after they died. (**far away, near, look, cool, hot, you, remember, beg, listen, rises from the dead**))



# 83 Double or Nothing

## Returning Faulty Items

- (a) Share what is the most special thing in your wallet or bag.  
*I chose this .....() because...()*
- (b) Share about a time you had to return something to a shop.  
*I returned something (cup/jug..etc) because ...(reason)*  
1. it didn't work properly, it was **faulty/broken**  
2. it had a **crack (chip)** in it or it had a mark on it  
3. it was the **wrong size**, it didn't fit properly  
4. I didn't like it, I changed my mind
- (c) Role play 3 customers returning television each.  
*Customer 1.2.3: Excuse me sales assistant.*  
*Sales Assistant: Yes, can I help you.*  
*Customer 1: I bought this television the other day but it's faulty.*  
*Customer 2: I would like to exchange (swap) this TV for another one.*  
*Customer 3: Could I get a refund for this TV, it doesn't seem to work properly.*

## Performance Appraisal

- (d) When there is a problem with the performance of a store or company, the manager (M) might do a performance appraisal of each department. Read through the following role-play.  
*Manager: How are our sales (retail figures)?*  
*Sales Manager: In terms of the electrical department, televisions are selling quite well, however our microwaves are not doing so well. The sales of DVDs could be better.*
- (e) In pairs, do a performance appraisal (situational analysis) of your English learning in terms of speaking, listening, writing and grammar.  
*Person 1: How's your study of English going at the moment?*  
*Person 2: In terms of my ... (reading), it's improving however my ...(speaking) could be better My ...(grammar) is not going so well*

## Situational Analysis

- (f) In what areas of your life could you do a situational analysis on? (health, finance relationships, future outlook)
- (g) We all know death is worst problem somebody can have. What do you think happens to you when you die?
- (h) Explain how people use the money pictured to help their ancestors who are in a difficult situation.
- China:** Burning of Spirit Money (Escape Diyu): No one pays off their debts entirely while they are alive.
- (i) Do you know any other stories that could help explain what happens to people when they die? For example:  
**World:** The story of the rich man and Lazarus 33AD. (Do a situational analysis (wealth, health, future outlook) on the two men before and after they died. (**far away, near, look, cool, hot, you, remember, beg, listen, rises from the dead**))



# 84. Give me some Light

## Leaving a Message

(a) Do you know anybody who is visually impaired (**blind**)? Get into pairs, one of you puts on a blindfold. The other person leads you around the room giving you instructions and then share with the class how you felt during this exercise.

(b) Role this conversation about lighting

Fred: The lighting in this room is not good for your eyes, it is very **dull (dark)**, it needs to be **brighter**.

Jack: Yes, the lighting could be better

Tim: We need to **replace** the light bulbs, with brighter ones especially this one. Jack, could you go and **buy** some?

Jack: Sure, but it very dark outside, the streets lighting is terrible, actually abysmal! I might go tomorrow.



(c) What is the lighting like where you live or come from?

1. in the room you are in? (bright, dull)
2. in your house or in your bedroom?
3. in your city, street or neighbourhood?

(d) Role play calling somebody to come to your house to check the fuse box and try to reconnect the electricity.

Dave: Hello. This is David

Sam: Hello David. My name is Sam, I'm a friend of Jacky. Can I speak to Jacky please?

Dave: I'm afraid he is not home at the moment. Can I **pass on/take** a message?

Sam: Thanks David. Can you ask/tell Jacky to come around to our house and check the fuse box.

Dave: So you want Jacky to come around and check your fuse box

Sam: That's right.

Dave: Ok. I will let him know.

Sam: Thanks David. Bye.

Dave: Bye.

(e) Practice calling and leaving a different message.

## Being a Light

(f) Ask some participants to draw and describe a lantern from their country on the board. When do you display lanterns in your country?

(g) Discuss the origins of purpose of lanterns and lantern festivals in your country. For example:

**China:** A light that saved a village from judgment. The Jade Emperor in Heaven and his favourite goose

### Vocabulary

townsfolk	killed his goose	vengeance
storm of fire	light lanterns	good
hearted	faury	ablaze

(h) A **Chinese proverb** says:

*A good teacher is like a candle: it consumes itself to light the way for others.*

Who is the best teacher you have ever had?

(i) Do you know the story of the good teacher who helped be a bright light for 10 lepers (33AD) who were in an abysmal situation as they were in physical, social and spiritual darkness? (**stood, loud, one, threw, thank, faith, well**)

# 84. Give me some Light

## Leaving a Message

(a) Do you know anybody who is visually impaired (**blind**)? Get into pairs, one of you puts on a blindfold. The other person leads you around the room giving you instructions and then share with the class how you felt during this exercise.

(b) Role this conversation about lighting

Fred: The lighting in this room is not good for your eyes, it is very **dull (dark)**, it needs to be **brighter**.

Jack: Yes, the lighting could be better

Tim: We need to **replace** the light bulbs, with brighter ones especially this one. Jack, could you go and **buy** some?

Jack: Sure, but it very dark outside, the streets lighting is terrible, actually abysmal! I might go tomorrow.



(c) What is the lighting like where you live or come from?

1. in the room you are in? (bright, dull)
2. in your house or in your bedroom?
3. in your city, street or neighbourhood?

(d) Role play calling somebody to come to your house to check the fuse box and try to reconnect the electricity.

Dave: Hello. This is David

Sam: Hello David. My name is Sam, I'm a friend of Jacky. Can I speak to Jacky please?

Dave: I'm afraid he is not home at the moment. Can I **pass on/take** a message?

Sam: Thanks David. Can you ask/tell Jacky to come around to our house and check the fuse box.

Dave: So you want Jacky to come around and check your fuse box

Sam: That's right.

Dave: Ok. I will let him know.

Sam: Thanks David. Bye.

Dave: Bye.

(e) Practice calling and leaving a different message.

## Being a Light

(f) Ask some participants to draw and describe a lantern from their country on the board. When do you display lanterns in your country?

(g) Discuss the origins of purpose of lanterns and lantern festivals in your country. For example:

**China:** A light that saved a village from judgment. The Jade Emperor in Heaven and his favourite goose

### Vocabulary

townsfolk	killed his goose	vengeance
storm of fire	light lanterns	good
hearted	faury	ablaze

(h) A **Chinese proverb** says:

*A good teacher is like a candle: it consumes itself to light the way for others.*

Who is the best teacher you have ever had?

(i) Do you know the story of the good teacher who helped be a bright light for 10 lepers (33AD) who were in an abysmal situation as they were in physical, social and spiritual darkness? (**stood, loud, one, threw, thank, faith, well**)

# 85. Heart Language

## Leaving a Message

(a) Do you know anybody who is visually impaired (**blind**)? Get into pairs, one of you puts on a blindfold. The other person leads you around the room giving you instructions and then share with the class how you felt during this exercise.

(b) Role this conversation about lighting

Fred: The lighting in this room is not good for your eyes, it is very **dull (dark)**, it needs to be **brighter**.

Jack: Yes, the lighting could be better

Tim: We need to **replace** the light bulbs, with brighter ones especially this one. Jack, could you go and **buy** some?

Jack: Sure, but it very dark outside, the streets lighting is terrible, actually abysmal! I might go tomorrow.

(c) What is the lighting like where you live or come from?

1. in the room you are in? (bright, dull)
2. in your house or in your bedroom?
3. in your city, street or neighbourhood?

(d) Role play calling somebody to come to your house to check the fuse box and try to reconnect the electricity.

Dave: Hello. This is David

Sam: Hello David. My name is Sam, I'm a friend of Jacky. Can I speak to Jacky please?

Dave: I'm afraid he is not home at the moment. Can I **pass on/take** a message?

Sam: Thanks David. Can you ask/tell Jacky to come around to our house and check the fuse box.

Dave: So you want Jacky to come around and check your fuse box

Sam: That's right.

Dave: Ok. I will let him know.

Sam: Thanks David. Bye.

Dave: Bye.

## Inside Cleanliness

(h) What is important is not what we have physically (outside the body) but where our heart is spiritually. How do people in your country try to get spiritually clean on the inside (the heart)?

1. Burn or give money or make a sacrifice
2. Cut themselves or carry a cross.
3. Smile and ignore it. (Thailand) Don't get angry. It won't get you to middle ground
4. Climb a mountain or go to a temple.

For example:

**China:** Climbing Mount Tai: Pay homage to heaven



(i) Do you know the story (30AD) of two men who went to a temple and one man incorrectly boasted how much ethically and spiritually cleaner he was compared to another man? (**look down, glad, very sorry, that man, this man**)

# 85. Heart Language

## Leaving a Message

(a) Do you know anybody who is visually impaired (**blind**)? Get into pairs, one of you puts on a blindfold. The other person leads you around the room giving you instructions and then share with the class how you felt during this exercise.

(b) Role this conversation about lighting

Fred: The lighting in this room is not good for your eyes, it is very **dull (dark)**, it needs to be **brighter**.

Jack: Yes, the lighting could be better

Tim: We need to **replace** the light bulbs, with brighter ones especially this one. Jack, could you go and **buy** some?

Jack: Sure, but it very dark outside, the streets lighting is terrible, actually abysmal! I might go tomorrow.

(c) What is the lighting like where you live or come from?

1. in the room you are in? (bright, dull)
2. in your house or in your bedroom?
3. in your city, street or neighbourhood?

(d) Role play calling somebody to come to your house to check the fuse box and try to reconnect the electricity.

Dave: Hello. This is David

Sam: Hello David. My name is Sam, I'm a friend of Jacky. Can I speak to Jacky please?

Dave: I'm afraid he is not home at the moment. Can I **pass on/take** a message?

Sam: Thanks David. Can you ask/tell Jacky to come around to our house and check the fuse box.

Dave: So you want Jacky to come around and check your fuse box

Sam: That's right.

Dave: Ok. I will let him know.

Sam: Thanks David. Bye.

Dave: Bye.

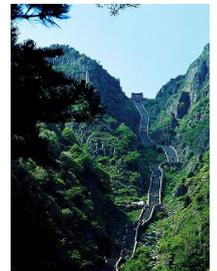
## Inside Cleanliness

(h) What is important is not what we have physically (outside the body) but where our heart is spiritually. How do people in your country try to get spiritually clean on the inside (the heart)?

1. Burn or give money or make a sacrifice
2. Cut themselves or carry a cross.
3. Smile and ignore it. (Thailand) Don't get angry. It won't get you to middle ground
4. Climb a mountain or go to a temple.

For example:

**China:** Climbing Mount Tai: Pay homage to heaven



(i) Do you know the story (30AD) of two men who went to a temple and one man incorrectly boasted how much ethically and spiritually cleaner he was compared to another man? (**look down, glad, very sorry, that man, this man**)

# 86. Show me the Way

## Words of Encouragement

- (a) In groups of three, share
1. I am good at ... (+ing) (**running, skiing**)
  2. I'm not good at ... but I am getting better.
  3. I can't ... but I am wanting/willing to learn.
  4. I don't know how to... but I want to **learn**.
  5. ... (+ing) is not my forte.



- (b) How do you like to be encouraged?

*I like to be encouraged by someone giving me ...*

1. a pat on the back
2. **chocolates**, a bunch of **flowers** or a **gift**
3. a compliment, a word of encouragement
4. a pay increase or more time off

- (c) Role-play encouraging somebody (boss-employee, mother-son, coach-player, friend-friend etc..) For example:

Bill Gates: Excuse me, So Young, can I have a quick word?

So Young: Sure Bill

Bill Gates: I just want to say So Young

I really appreciate your **hard work**

I am really impressed by your attitude and the quality of your work

**You have helped** so many people

I'm really glad you work for my company

You are **amazing. Well done** and **keep going**

So Young: Thank you Bill for your comments. They mean a lot to me.

- (d) Confucius (551-479BC) said many words of encouragement. Which of the following are Confucian type thinking?

1. You should be very materialistic. (Not Confucian)
2. The goal is to be a morally good person. (Confucian)
3. Family relationships are not very important.
4. Aristocracy doesn't mean good leadership.
5. I am the saviour or the way.
6. It is more about social responsibility and not religion.

- (e) How do you think Confucian thinking has influenced your country? (Education, ancestral world, face, etc)

- (f) Do you agree with the following Confucius sayings?

1. 'It is better to play than do nothing'.
2. 'It does not matter how slowly you go as long as you do not stop'.
3. 'If you shoot for the stars and hit the moon, it's ok. But you've got to shoot for something. A lot of people don't even shoot'.

- (g) In your life, what are you shooting for?

1. In the short term I am aiming to ...
2. In the long time I am hoping to ...

- (h) In many cultures it is the aim of a lot of people to earn enough merit for themselves and their ancestors to go to heaven. Is this true in your culture. For example:

- (i) Do you think it is possible to earn enough merit or end up being a morally good man/woman?

- (j) Do you know the story of the rich young ruler whom everybody thought would have enough merit to go to heaven (Jerusalem 30-33AD)? (**boy, man, good, father, mother, sell, sad, hard, enter, possible, everything**)

# 86. Show me the Way

## Words of Encouragement

- (a) In groups of three, share
1. I am good at ... (+ing) (**running, skiing**)
  2. I'm not good at ... but I am getting better.
  3. I can't ... but I am wanting/willing to learn.
  4. I don't know how to... but I want to **learn**.
  5. ... (+ing) is not my forte.



- (b) How do you like to be encouraged?

*I like to be encouraged by someone giving me ...*

1. a pat on the back
2. **chocolates**, a bunch of **flowers** or a **gift**
3. a compliment, a word of encouragement
4. a pay increase or more time off

- (c) Role-play encouraging somebody (boss-employee, mother-son, coach-player, friend-friend etc..) For example:

Bill Gates: Excuse me, So Young, can I have a quick word?

So Young: Sure Bill

Bill Gates: I just want to say So Young

I really appreciate your **hard work**

I am really impressed by your attitude and the quality of your work

**You have helped** so many people

I'm really glad you work for my company

You are **amazing. Well done** and **keep going**

So Young: Thank you Bill for your comments. They mean a lot to me.

- (d) Confucius (551-479BC) said many words of encouragement. Which of the following are Confucian type thinking?

1. You should be very materialistic. (Not Confucian)
2. The goal is to be a morally good person. (Confucian)
3. Family relationships are not very important.
4. Aristocracy doesn't mean good leadership.
5. I am the saviour or the way.
6. It is more about social responsibility and not religion.

- (e) How do you think Confucian thinking has influenced your country? (Education, ancestral world, face, etc)

- (f) Do you agree with the following Confucius sayings?

1. 'It is better to play than do nothing'.
2. 'It does not matter how slowly you go as long as you do not stop'.
3. 'If you shoot for the stars and hit the moon, it's ok. But you've got to shoot for something. A lot of people don't even shoot'.

- (g) In your life, what are you shooting for?

1. In the short term I am aiming to ...
2. In the long time I am hoping to ...

- (h) In many cultures it is the aim of a lot of people to earn enough merit for themselves and their ancestors to go to heaven. Is this true in your culture. For example:

- (i) Do you think it is possible to earn enough merit or end up being a morally good man/woman?

- (j) Do you know the story of the rich young ruler whom everybody thought would have enough merit to go to heaven (Jerusalem 30-33AD)? (**boy, man, good, father, mother, sell, sad, hard, enter, possible, everything**)

# 87. Something seems wrong

## Is the deal trustworthy

- (a) Role play the teacher as a traffic policeman and the students are the cars  
**stop come** this way brake slow down **turn left**
- (b) One person goes out of the room and adjusts his clothes or hair etc. When he/she comes back into the classroom. The rest of the class have to guess what he or she has altered.
- (c) If you were successful in the above activity, you might make a good detective in solving crimes. Which of the following crimes are common in your country?  
 1. Pick pocketing, **lying** (not **honest**) or robbery  
 2. **Stealing** from the till or being short changed  
 3. Plagiarism, fraud or corruption
- (d) Share about a time you experienced a crime against yourself.
- (e) Practice in pairs what to say when receiving the wrong change  
*Customer: Excuse me, I don't think you gave me the right change. I gave you \$20.*
- (f) Role play in groups of three looking at a potential business deal that looks sound

Mum: *It looks like a good opportunity*  
 Dad: *I feel I could trust him/her*  
 Son: *Everything looks above board*

- (g) Role play in groups of four a potential business deal buying a 22 seater bus but the seller seems suspicious.

Seller: *\$30,000. You won't get a better deal than that.*  
 Son: *Can we have a bit more time to think about it.*  
 Seller: *Ok, but you will have to decide today. I have 3 other people who are interested in this van. I tell you what, don't tell my boss but If you pay me cash today. I will give you a \$2000 discount. (Son and Parents discuss the deal in private)*  
 Son: *Something seems **wrong/not right***  
 Mum: *Things just don't add up, big discount, don't tell the boss.*  
 Dad: *Things are a bit under the table for my liking I like to do things above board*  
 Son: *Me too. I like to deal fair and square*  
 Dad: *It seems too good to be true. Nice looking bus but... Maybe things don't look as they seem. I wasn't sure if he/she is telling the truth. Maybe the bus is stolen or the motor is no good.*  
 Mum: *I smell a rat (corruption or lies)*  
 Son: *He seems a little bit dodgy. Let's give it a miss.*

- (h) Have you ever felt suspicious about something, somebody or some place?  
 (i) Discuss cultural stories where people were very suspicious or surprised by the actions of someone. For example:

**China:** Zhuge Liang's (Chu-Ko's) Empty Fort Strategy  
 Sima Yi sensed something seemed suspicious!

1. began panicking
2. Zhuge Liang: Reverse psychology
3. 2500 soldiers beheaded
4. Sima Yi 150,000
5. frightened
6. Banners and drumming
7. Feathers, lute and incense
8. set up for an ambush



**World:** Zacchaeus (Jericho 30-33AD): Everyone knew he was corrupt and were surprised by what happened in this story. (**enter, pass, bad, short, tall, up, come, house x4, not x2, great**)

# 87. Something seems wrong

## Is the deal trustworthy

- (a) Role play the teacher as a traffic policeman and the students are the cars  
**stop come** this way brake slow down **turn left**
- (b) One person goes out of the room and adjusts his clothes or hair etc. When he/she comes back into the classroom. The rest of the class have to guess what he or she has altered.
- (c) If you were successful in the above activity, you might make a good detective in solving crimes. Which of the following crimes are common in your country?  
 1. Pick pocketing, **lying** (not **honest**) or robbery  
 2. **Stealing** from the till or being short changed  
 3. Plagiarism, fraud or corruption
- (d) Share about a time you experienced a crime against yourself.
- (e) Practice in pairs what to say when receiving the wrong change  
*Customer: Excuse me, I don't think you gave me the right change. I gave you \$20.*
- (f) Role play in groups of three looking at a potential business deal that looks sound

Mum: *It looks like a good opportunity*  
 Dad: *I feel I could trust him/her*  
 Son: *Everything looks above board*

- (g) Role play in groups of four a potential business deal buying a 22 seater bus but the seller seems suspicious.

Seller: *\$30,000. You won't get a better deal than that.*  
 Son: *Can we have a bit more time to think about it.*  
 Seller: *Ok, but you will have to decide today. I have 3 other people who are interested in this van. I tell you what, don't tell my boss but If you pay me cash today. I will give you a \$2000 discount. (Son and Parents discuss the deal in private)*  
 Son: *Something seems **wrong/not right***  
 Mum: *Things just don't add up, big discount, don't tell the boss.*  
 Dad: *Things are a bit under the table for my liking I like to do things above board*  
 Son: *Me too. I like to deal fair and square*  
 Dad: *It seems too good to be true. Nice looking bus but... Maybe things don't look as they seem. I wasn't sure if he/she is telling the truth. Maybe the bus is stolen or the motor is no good.*  
 Mum: *I smell a rat (corruption or lies)*  
 Son: *He seems a little bit dodgy. Let's give it a miss.*

- (h) Have you ever felt suspicious about something, somebody or some place?  
 (i) Discuss cultural stories where people were very suspicious or surprised by the actions of someone. For example:

**China:** Zhuge Liang's (Chu-Ko's) Empty Fort Strategy  
 Sima Yi sensed something seemed suspicious!

1. began panicking
2. Zhuge Liang: Reverse psychology
3. 2500 soldiers beheaded
4. Sima Yi 150,000
5. frightened
6. Banners and drumming
7. Feathers, lute and incense
8. set up for an ambush



**World:** Zacchaeus (Jericho 30-33AD): Everyone knew he was corrupt and were surprised by what happened in this story. (**enter, pass, bad, short, tall, up, come, house x4, not x2, great**)

# 88. Long Live the King

## Voice Projection/Idioms

- (a) What does *Can you speak the Queens English* mean?
- (b) Normally the Queens English would contain few idioms or slang words, Read through the following conversation at a party. Underline and guess the meaning of the idioms.
- Melissa: *There's that guy/girl*  
 Richard: *Do you **remember** his/her name?*  
 Melissa: *He told me but I have **forgotten**. In one ear and out the other*  
 Melissa: *Do you want some more party food. Are you **hungry**?*  
 Richard: *No, I'm as **full** as a boot. I am really **enjoying** this party. I have **met a lot/many** of people*  
 Melissa: *Look at the time. It's 11 o'clock.*  
 Richard: *Wow, time flies when you are having fun*  
 Richard: *It's time to hit the road. **Let's go!***  
 Melissa: *Do you have an umbrella? It's pouring outside. It's raining cats and dogs.*

- (c) One way to improve your speaking is to visit a speech therapist and do some voice exercises. For example
1. Take a deep breath, While breathing out, say from your stomach (not throat) the words *Momma poppa Momma poppa*
  2. Breath out and say in a flat tone *Momma Poppa ....*
  3. Breath out and say in a rising falling tone *Momma Poppa...*
- (d) Try practicing a glottal stroke. Hold your breath briefly and release and click (no sound). Now get into giggle position, hold your breath and say ah and feel the click. Now practice with these sounds  
 ah ah    ai ai    ee ee    oo oo    uu uu
- (e) Say the following words while using the above technique and try to project your voice
1. each   aim   at   every   even   over   only   up
  2. under   only   also   egg   apple   aim   even   out
  3. ice   egg   apple   eighty   81   82   83   84

## Royalty and Loyalty

- (f) The Queens English comes from the Queen of England. Does your country have any royalty?
- (g) Share the good qualities and stories of your kings, queens, emperors or leaders from your country.
1. Are your leaders mentioned in your national anthem?
  2. Where are pictures of royalty or leaders used or displayed in your country? For example: On currency or on billboards
- (h) Sometimes we use words in vain which can be very disrespectful to leaders. For example.
1. God: *For God's sake!*
  2. Jesus: *Jesus Christ!*
- What other things are disrespectful to the king or queen, leader, emperor or God in your country?
- (i) Discuss this response to paying taxes to the Roman Emperor Caesar in Jerusalem 33AD whose face was on the back of coins. (**close, kind, bad, out**)
- "So **give** back to Caesar what is Caesar's, and to God what is God's"*



# 88. Long Live the King

## Voice Projection/Idioms

- (a) What does *Can you speak the Queens English* mean?
- (b) Normally the Queens English would contain few idioms or slang words, Read through the following conversation at a party. Underline and guess the meaning of the idioms.
- Melissa: *There's that guy/girl*  
 Richard: *Do you **remember** his/her name?*  
 Melissa: *He told me but I have **forgotten**. In one ear and out the other*  
 Melissa: *Do you want some more party food. Are you **hungry**?*  
 Richard: *No, I'm as **full** as a boot. I am really **enjoying** this party. I have **met a lot/many** of people*  
 Melissa: *Look at the time. It's 11 o'clock.*  
 Richard: *Wow, time flies when you are having fun*  
 Richard: *It's time to hit the road. **Let's go!***  
 Melissa: *Do you have an umbrella? It's pouring outside. It's raining cats and dogs.*

- (c) One way to improve your speaking is to visit a speech therapist and do some voice exercises. For example
1. Take a deep breath, While breathing out, say from your stomach (not throat) the words *Momma poppa Momma poppa*
  2. Breath out and say in a flat tone *Momma Poppa ....*
  3. Breath out and say in a rising falling tone *Momma Poppa...*
- (d) Try practicing a glottal stroke. Hold your breath briefly and release and click (no sound). Now get into giggle position, hold your breath and say ah and feel the click. Now practice with these sounds  
 ah ah    ai ai    ee ee    oo oo    uu uu
- (e) Say the following words while using the above technique and try to project your voice
1. each   aim   at   every   even   over   only   up
  2. under   only   also   egg   apple   aim   even   out
  3. ice   egg   apple   eighty   81   82   83   84

## Royalty and Loyalty

- (f) The Queens English comes from the Queen of England. Does your country have any royalty?
- (g) Share the good qualities and stories of your kings, queens, emperors or leaders from your country.
1. Are your leaders mentioned in your national anthem?
  2. Where are pictures of royalty or leaders used or displayed in your country? For example: On currency or on billboards
- (h) Sometimes we use words in vain which can be very disrespectful to leaders. For example.
1. God: *For God's sake!*
  2. Jesus: *Jesus Christ!*
- What other things are disrespectful to the king or queen, leader, emperor or God in your country?
- (i) Discuss this response to paying taxes to the Roman Emperor Caesar in Jerusalem 33AD whose face was on the back of coins. (**close, kind, bad, out**)
- "So **give** back to Caesar what is Caesar's, and to God what is God's"*



# 89. It Breaks my Heart

## Reaction to Sadness

- (a) What is your favourite sport or sports team?
- (b) Practice yelling out support for your team (**football, hockey**)
- Class: **Keep going**  
 Class: **You can do it**  
 Class: **Good job**  
 Class: **Well done**  
 Class: *You are a champion!*
- (c) In teams of **four**, have a relay race. The **first person** runs and picks up a straw and then sucks up a pea with the straw. Then he/she runs back to the **second person**. Now it's the second person's turn to run and pick up a straw and suck up a pea
- (d) How did your team go in the above event?
- (e) Winners like to celebrate. How do you like to celebrate?
1. Let my hair down, splurge or pig out
  2. Shop until I drop
  3. Enjoy the moment and have a few drinks
  4. Praise God
- (f) Not everybody can be a winner. What do you do when you lose or feel sad? Share with a partner.
1. Have a big lunch, **eat spicy food** (*Yes I do/ No I don't*)
  2. Go for a **run**
  3. Get blind **drunk**
  4. Have a **cry**, sob or mope around
  5. **Talk** to somebody
  6. Pray
- (g) Role-play in pairs comforting a friend who feels sad.

Ben: *Excuse me Dave, I heard you broke up with your girlfriend. It must be difficult for you.*

Dave: *Yes it is.*

- (h) Role play in groups of four responding to Jim, who is still moping around seven weeks after his girlfriend Denise broke up with him. (Which is the best response?)

Jim: *I don't want to do anything. I really miss Denise.*

Tim: *Don't worry Jim, there are plenty of fish in the sea.*

Kim: *Take a look on the bright side. You have more free time.*

Pim: *It's your choice Jim. You can mope around all you like or you can accept it, move on but you have to take on responsibility for your actions. It's not fair on others*

- (i) Do you know any stories from your culture of how people reacted to sad situations?

**India/World:** A prince called Siddhartha Gautama reacted to sadness of life by his great departure and separation that led to the formation of *Buddhism*

### Vocabulary

palace      disturbed      human suffering  
 under a tree   49 days      cause of

**World:** Dealing with sin and death. One man's sweat turned to blood knowing full well what He had to endure in order to free people from going to hell. (Garden of Gethsemane 33AD). (**a stones throw, kneel, prayer, my will, your will, more**)



# 89. It Breaks my Heart

## Reaction to Sadness

- (a) What is your favourite sport or sports team?
- (b) Practice yelling out support for your team (**football, hockey**)
- Class: **Keep going**  
 Class: **You can do it**  
 Class: **Good job**  
 Class: **Well done**  
 Class: *You are a champion!*
- (c) In teams of **four**, have a relay race. The **first person** runs and picks up a straw and then sucks up a pea with the straw. Then he/she runs back to the **second person**. Now it's the second person's turn to run and pick up a straw and suck up a pea
- (d) How did your team go in the above event?
- (e) Winners like to celebrate. How do you like to celebrate?
1. Let my hair down, splurge or pig out
  2. Shop until I drop
  3. Enjoy the moment and have a few drinks
  4. Praise God
- (f) Not everybody can be a winner. What do you do when you lose or feel sad? Share with a partner.
1. Have a big lunch, **eat spicy food** (*Yes I do/ No I don't*)
  2. Go for a **run**
  3. Get blind **drunk**
  4. Have a **cry**, sob or mope around
  5. **Talk** to somebody
  6. Pray
- (g) Role-play in pairs comforting a friend who feels sad.

Ben: *Excuse me Dave, I heard you broke up with your girlfriend. It must be difficult for you.*

Dave: *Yes it is.*

- (h) Role play in groups of four responding to Jim, who is still moping around seven weeks after his girlfriend Denise broke up with him. (Which is the best response?)

Jim: *I don't want to do anything. I really miss Denise.*

Tim: *Don't worry Jim, there are plenty of fish in the sea.*

Kim: *Take a look on the bright side. You have more free time.*

Pim: *It's your choice Jim. You can mope around all you like or you can accept it, move on but you have to take on responsibility for your actions. It's not fair on others*

- (i) Do you know any stories from your culture of how people reacted to sad situations?

**India/World:** A prince called Siddhartha Gautama reacted to sadness of life by his great departure and separation that led to the formation of *Buddhism*

### Vocabulary

palace      disturbed      human suffering  
 under a tree   49 days      cause of

**World:** Dealing with sin and death. One man's sweat turned to blood knowing full well what He had to endure in order to free people from going to hell. (Garden of Gethsemane 33AD). (**a stones throw, kneel, prayer, my will, your will, more**)



# 90. General Alert

## Making a Point

- (a) Complete this saying: *Some people say I am good at ..*
- (b) In groups of three, **try** to balance an **egg** on its end. Don't let it **roll** and **fall off** the **edge**.
- (c) To balance an egg on its end requires a person to be ...
1. patient (a steady hand)
  2. **Determined (Keep going)**
  3. persistent (persevering)
- Which of these characteristics best describes you?
- (d) Which of these qualities are you good at doing? (in pairs)
1. Keeping your word/**promise**
  2. Arriving on time. (being punctual)
  3. Keeping your room spotless.
  4. Being **honest** and very loyal
  5. Writing good essays.

- (e) In groups of four, read through the following four points (The PREP method) on how to write a perfect paragraph.

Person 1: **(P) MAIN POINT**- *Topic (interesting) sentence.*  
*"Kim is one of the best English teachers in the world!"*

Person 2: **(R) REASON** - (Broad- all good teachers).  
*"Students need a teacher who gives them a chance to talk at any opportunity."*

Person 3: **(E) EXAMPLE**- (Specific- Kim the good teacher).  
*In every lesson, teacher Kim gets us involved in greetings, debates, practicing requests and doing short presentations.*

Person 4: **(P) POINT** repeated one more time, using different words to say the same thing. Every one of Kim's lessons is full of conversations. No wonder every student chooses her class to improve their English.

- (f) Cover your work and share how to write a good paragraph.

*To write a good essay, first you need a topic. For example. Kim is one of ... ( )*

- (g) In different groups of four, make up a verbal paragraph

( )...*(city) is one of the best cities in the world* or  
 ( )...*(name) is one of the best generals or loyal followers in my country's history*

- (h) To be the perfect general, you need to be patient, determined, persistent, courageous, loyal amongst other things. Share about a famous general in your culture's history. For example:

**China:** General Qi Jiguang A man of courage and leadership. A true warrior.



### Vocabulary

*Records of Military training* founded the army  
 32 method fist form Japanese pirates  
 mandarin duck array guang bing pancake  
 16 years in Jizhou watchtowers  
 "first pass under the heaven" Shanhaiguan wall

*For three hundred sixty days a year, I hold my weapon ready atop my steed*

- (i) Do you know the story of a leader who was very loyal to his master but as foretold, denied his master three times in one evening before a rooster crowed (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**die, warm, know, don't know, who, what, alone**)

# 90. General Alert

## Making a Point

- (a) Complete this saying: *Some people say I am good at ..*
- (b) In groups of three, **try** to balance an **egg** on its end. Don't let it **roll** and **fall off** the **edge**.
- (c) To balance an egg on its end requires a person to be ...
1. patient (a steady hand)
  2. **Determined (Keep going)**
  3. persistent (persevering)
- Which of these characteristics best describes you?
- (d) Which of these qualities are you good at doing? (in pairs)
1. Keeping your word/**promise**
  2. Arriving on time. (being punctual)
  3. Keeping your room spotless.
  4. Being **honest** and very loyal
  5. Writing good essays.

- (e) In groups of four, read through the following four points (The PREP method) on how to write a perfect paragraph.

Person 1: **(P) MAIN POINT**- *Topic (interesting) sentence.*  
*"Kim is one of the best English teachers in the world!"*

Person 2: **(R) REASON** - (Broad- all good teachers).  
*"Students need a teacher who gives them a chance to talk at any opportunity."*

Person 3: **(E) EXAMPLE**- (Specific- Kim the good teacher).  
*In every lesson, teacher Kim gets us involved in greetings, debates, practicing requests and doing short presentations.*

Person 4: **(P) POINT** repeated one more time, using different words to say the same thing. Every one of Kim's lessons is full of conversations. No wonder every student chooses her class to improve their English.

- (f) Cover your work and share how to write a good paragraph.

*To write a good essay, first you need a topic. For example. Kim is one of ... ( )*

- (g) In different groups of four, make up a verbal paragraph

( )...*(city) is one of the best cities in the world* or  
 ( )...*(name) is one of the best generals or loyal followers in my country's history*

- (h) To be the perfect general, you need to be patient, determined, persistent, courageous, loyal amongst other things. Share about a famous general in your culture's history. For example:

**China:** General Qi Jiguang A man of courage and leadership. A true warrior.



### Vocabulary

*Records of Military training* founded the army  
 32 method fist form Japanese pirates  
 mandarin duck array guang bing pancake  
 16 years in Jizhou watchtowers  
 "first pass under the heaven" Shanhaiguan wall

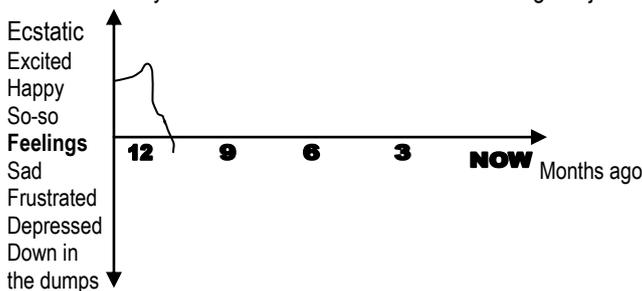
*For three hundred sixty days a year, I hold my weapon ready atop my steed*

- (i) Do you know the story of a leader who was very loyal to his master but as foretold, denied his master three times in one evening before a rooster crowed (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**die, warm, know, don't know, who, what, alone**)

# 91. Roller Coaster Emotions

## Presentation of your life

- (a) Have people guess 3 important dates in your life? For e.g.  
 25.06.1962.      **1st** Sept 1989      **10th** August 2002  
*(I was born, I came to know God, My first son was born etc)*
- (b) Share more about your life using this grammatical pattern
- Facts/habits about you. (grammar-present simple)  
*My name is ..(.) I am ...(.) I like ....(.)*
  - Your history. (completed actions: simple past)  
*I was born in..(.) In 2009 (5 years ago/When I was 17) I ..(.)*
  - Current/temporary situations. (present continuous)  
*Nowadays/present/currently I am working as..(.)*
  - Life experiences and recent news. (present perfect)  
*I have just started/finished studying Chinese.*
  - Future plans/dreams (Date-present cont / future simple)  
**Next month/year I am going to visit ...(.)**  
*In the future I hope to live in another culture.*
- (c) Life can be like a roller coaster, Share about your feelings in the last 12 months of your life. For e.g, complete this graph
- 12 months **ago** I was excited because I moved cities. .
  - After two months I felt sad because I missed my mother
  - After six months I felt happier when I made a new friend
  - One month later I felt down in the dumps. I got very sick
  - Lately I have felt ecstatic because I found a great job.



- (d) Share any stories from your culture where people experienced a roller coaster ride of emotions. For example:

**China:** Olympic hurdler Liu Xiang 2004/2008 Olympics.

1. Pinned their hopes
2. Optimistic but then let down
3. Jaws dropped (shocked)
4. People were despondent

photo– Erik van Leeuwen

**World:** The Easter Story  
(See below)

- (e) Do you celebrate Easter in your country? What do you know about the Easter Story? Share about the fluctuating feelings experienced by many people.  
**(night, crowd, ear, who, king, friend, nothing wrong, led, save, loud, sun, tear, think)**



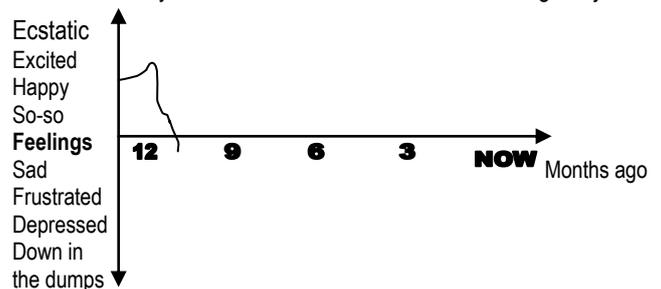
- (f) Why did the Easter story happen? (The following cultural story can be used to help explain why).

**China:** Han Qi sacrificed his life so others would live.

# 91. Roller Coaster Emotions

## Presentation of your life

- (a) Have people guess 3 important dates in your life? For e.g.  
 25.06.1962.      **1st** Sept 1989      **10th** August 2002  
*(I was born, I came to know God, My first son was born etc)*
- (b) Share more about your life using this grammatical pattern
- Facts/habits about you. (grammar-present simple)  
*My name is ..(.) I am ...(.) I like ....(.)*
  - Your history. (completed actions: simple past)  
*I was born in..(.) In 2009 (5 years ago/When I was 17) I ..(.)*
  - Current/temporary situations. (present continuous)  
*Nowadays/present/currently I am working as..(.)*
  - Life experiences and recent news. (present perfect)  
*I have just started/finished studying Chinese.*
  - Future plans/dreams (Date-present cont / future simple)  
**Next month/year I am going to visit ...(.)**  
*In the future I hope to live in another culture.*
- (c) Life can be like a roller coaster, Share about your feelings in the last 12 months of your life. For e.g, complete this graph
1. 12 months **ago** I was excited because I moved cities. .
  - After two months I felt sad because I missed my mother
  - After six months I felt happier when I made a new friend
  - One month later I felt down in the dumps. I got very sick
  - Lately I have felt ecstatic because I found a great job.



- (d) Share any stories from your culture where people experienced a roller coaster ride of emotions. For example:

**China:** Olympic hurdler Liu Xiang 2004/2008 Olympics.

1. Pinned their hopes
2. Optimistic but then let down
3. Jaws dropped (shocked)
4. People were despondent

photo– Erik van Leeuwen

**World:** The Easter Story  
(See below)

- (e) Do you celebrate Easter in your country? What do you know about the Easter Story? Share about the fluctuating feelings experienced by many people.  
**(night, crowd, ear, who, king, friend, nothing wrong, led, save, loud, sun, tear, think)**



- (f) Why did the Easter story happen? (The following cultural story can be used to help explain why).

**China:** Han Qi sacrificed his life so others would live.

# 92. Tea for Two

## Tea Ceremonies

- (a) Do a tea tasting test and discuss the taste in pairs
- Person 1: Do you like your **cup** of tea?  
 Person 2: Yes, it's very flavoursome **or** it's very unusual  
 Person 1: Can you guess what type of tea it is?  
 Person 2: I think it's ... ( ). Do you have any sugar?  
 Person 1: Sure, and I **also** have a **teaspoon**.  
 Person 2: Can you pass me the sugar?
- (b) What is your favourite type of tea?. Share what your family's tea drinking habits are and how they have changed over time?
- (c) Role-play, in fours, asking people how they like their black tea.
- Host: What type of tea do you want, green or black tea?  
 Bob: I would like **black tea** with one sugar please.  
 Lee: Could I have a (**hot**) black tea too please  
 Host: How do you like your tea?  
 Lee: White (**milk**) with two **sugars** please.  
 Xi: Can I have **green tea** please?
- (d) Some people believe you can foretell your future by reading your tea leaves. What are their future dreams? (In pairs).
- In the future I hope to...()
- (e) Share your short term goals for the next few weeks. For e.g..
- Person 1: What are you doing for the next few weeks.  
 Person 2: I will go to Yunnan province in two weeks time. (not later). Two weeks later I will go to Dalian.
- (f) You are excited about visiting tea plantations in Yunnan Province Which of the following sentences are correct?
1. I am expecting going to Yunnan Province...
  2. I am really looking forward to going to Yunnan Province.
- (g) The beginnings of drinking tea in **China** began with Emperor Shen Nong. Put these sentences into the correct order
1. He tasted the water mixed with leaves
  2. A breeze blew some leaves from a nearby tree into the pot.
  3. He said it tasted delicious and invigorating
  4. The emperor was boiling some water in a pot
- (h) Share about traditions of drinking tea and tea ceremonies in your country. For example:
1. Folding the napkin (Qi energy)
  2. Newly weds-acceptance.



## Identity Revealed at a Ceremony

- (i) Do you know the story how one Chinese Emperor's true identity was recognised and then secretly acknowledged while he was serving tea?
1. Emperor Qian Long (Qing Dynasty)
  2. Express thanks, bent finger, gratitude, respect.
- (j) Do you know the story how another great king's identity was revealed to two men by His actions (He **broke** bread) at a dinner table in Emmaus (33AD)? (**walk, 7 miles, home, sad, don't know, gone, told, no surprise, night, eyes, heart, ran**)



# 92. Tea for Two

## Tea Ceremonies

- (a) Do a tea tasting test and discuss the taste in pairs
- Person 1: Do you like your **cup** of tea?  
 Person 2: Yes, it's very flavoursome **or** it's very unusual  
 Person 1: Can you guess what type of tea it is?  
 Person 2: I think it's ... ( ). Do you have any sugar?  
 Person 1: Sure, and I **also** have a **teaspoon**.  
 Person 2: Can you pass me the sugar?
- (b) What is your favourite type of tea?. Share what your family's tea drinking habits are and how they have changed over time?
- (c) Role-play, in fours, asking people how they like their black tea.
- Host: What type of tea do you want, green or black tea?  
 Bob: I would like **black tea** with one sugar please.  
 Lee: Could I have a (**hot**) black tea too please  
 Host: How do you like your tea?  
 Lee: White (**milk**) with two **sugars** please.  
 Xi: Can I have **green tea** please?
- (d) Some people believe you can foretell your future by reading your tea leaves. What are their future dreams? (In pairs).
- In the future I hope to...()
- (e) Share your short term goals for the next few weeks. For e.g..
- Person 1: What are you doing for the next few weeks.  
 Person 2: I will go to Yunnan province in two weeks time. (not later). Two weeks later I will go to Dalian.
- (f) You are excited about visiting tea plantations in Yunnan Province Which of the following sentences are correct?
1. I am expecting going to Yunnan Province...
  2. I am really looking forward to going to Yunnan Province.
- (g) The beginnings of drinking tea in **China** began with Emperor Shen Nong. Put these sentences into the correct order
1. He tasted the water mixed with leaves
  2. A breeze blew some leaves from a nearby tree into the pot.
  3. He said it tasted delicious and invigorating
  4. The emperor was boiling some water in a pot
- (h) Share about traditions of drinking tea and tea ceremonies in your country. For example:
1. Folding the napkin (Qi energy)
  2. Newly weds-acceptance.



## Identity Revealed at a Ceremony

- (i) Do you know the story how one Chinese Emperor's true identity was recognised and then secretly acknowledged while he was serving tea?
1. Emperor Qian Long (Qing Dynasty)
  2. Express thanks, bent finger, gratitude, respect.
- (j) Do you know the story how another great king's identity was revealed to two men by His actions (He **broke** bread) at a dinner table in Emmaus (33AD)? (**walk, 7 miles, home, sad, don't know, gone, told, no surprise, night, eyes, heart, ran**)



# 93. Everything is Organised

## Daily Schedule

- (a) Paste on a wall some copies (secretly) of the daily routine below of 'a boss' (see below). Divide the class into groups of three, person one goes and reads the first sentence of the daily routine and then runs and tells person two who then runs and tells person three who has to listen and accurately write down on a piece of paper. This keeps going until the first team finishes.

### Daily Routine

My boss **arrives** at work at 8:00 am. He checks his emails at 8:30 am. He spends time in the staff room at 9:00 am checking how the staff are going and asking if they need any help. He briefs his department heads at 9:30 am. He has **morning tea** at 10:30 am. He **visits** his clients at 11:30 am. He has **lunch** at around 12:30 pm.

- (b) Write and share a typical daily schedule for yourself  
(c) In pairs, try to arrange a time when you can meet your partner.

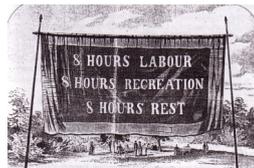
Clay: Are you free at 2:00?

Stan: No I have something on at that time. How about 4pm?

Clay: That's okay/fine by me. 4 o'clock is good for me, Great

- (d) Some people think you are more organised if you have a neat and tidy desk. How would you describe your desk?

1. It is well organised.(Neat and tidy)
2. Things are everywhere (Everything is everywhere)
3. Organised chaos
4. Very homely



- (e) What is your attitude to your work?

1. You should always be on time
2. You should always be early
3. You must wear a tie
4. If you are going to do something, do it well
5. Near enough is good enough

- (f) Role play sharing important information to the new employee (Lee).

Jim: Lee, here are some things to remember.

Our morning briefing is at 8am. Please be 5 minutes early and make sure you bring a pen and some paper. Lunch time is between 1 and 2 pm.

Ted: You can collect your lunch vouchers from the office.

You have to fill out form 3 when you borrow a computer

Pat: On Friday you can wear casual clothes

: If you are sick, you have to call Jack before 7am

Lee: Thanks guys, that's really helpful information

## Wedding Schedule

- (g) If your job is a wedding planner, you have to be well organised

1. Do you have wedding planners in your country and how much does it cost to have a wedding?
2. Who usually pays for a wedding in your country?
3. What was the last wedding you went to?
4. What do you like to eat and drink at weddings?
5. What makes a wedding in your country different from weddings in other countries?
6. What are the 5 worst things that could happen on a wedding day?

- (h) Do you know the story of a wedding in Cana (30AD) that was experiencing extreme chaos (a shemozzle!) until a miraculous rescue was performed by one of the guests? (**not yet, none, delicious, where, purify, believe**).

# 93. Everything is Organised

## Daily Schedule

- (a) Paste on a wall some copies (secretly) of the daily routine below of 'a boss' (see below). Divide the class into groups of three, person one goes and reads the first sentence of the daily routine and then runs and tells person two who then runs and tells person three who has to listen and accurately write down on a piece of paper. This keeps going until the first team finishes.

### Daily Routine

My boss **arrives** at work at 8:00 am. He checks his emails at 8:30 am. He spends time in the staff room at 9:00 am checking how the staff are going and asking if they need any help. He briefs his department heads at 9:30 am. He has **morning tea** at 10:30 am. He **visits** his clients at 11:30 am. He has **lunch** at around 12:30 pm.

- (b) Write and share a typical daily schedule for yourself

- (c) In pairs, try to arrange a time when you can meet your partner.

Clay: Are you free at 2:00?

Stan: No I have something on at that time. How about 4pm?

Clay: That's okay/fine by me. 4 o'clock is good for me, Great

- (d) Some people think you are more organised if you have a neat and tidy desk. How would you describe your desk?

1. It is well organised.(Neat and tidy)
2. Things are everywhere (Everything is everywhere)
3. Organised chaos
4. Very homely



- (e) What is your attitude to your work?

1. You should always be on time
2. You should always be early
3. You must wear a tie
4. If you are going to do something, do it well
5. Near enough is good enough

- (f) Role play sharing important information to the new employee (Lee).

Jim: Lee, here are some things to remember.

Our morning briefing is at 8am. Please be 5 minutes early and make sure you bring a pen and some paper. Lunch time is between 1 and 2 pm.

Ted: You can collect your lunch vouchers from the office.

You have to fill out form 3 when you borrow a computer

Pat: On Friday you can wear casual clothes

: If you are sick, you have to call Jack before 7am

Lee: Thanks guys, that's really helpful information

## Wedding Schedule

- (g) If your job is a wedding planner, you have to be well organised

1. Do you have wedding planners in your country and how much does it cost to have a wedding?
2. Who usually pays for a wedding in your country?
3. What was the last wedding you went to?
4. What do you like to eat and drink at weddings?
5. What makes a wedding in your country different from weddings in other countries?
6. What are the 5 worst things that could happen on a wedding day?

- (h) Do you know the story of a wedding in Cana (30AD) that was experiencing extreme chaos (a shemozzle!) until a miraculous rescue was performed by one of the guests? (**not yet, none, delicious, where, purify, believe**).

# 94. Authentic

## Markets and Shopping

- (a) Draw a supermarket with aisles, checkouts and the food you can buy. What do you like to buy at the supermarket? What's your favourite market or shopping centre?
- (b) Collect 7 items from a supermarket and ask students in groups of three to place them in order from lowest to highest **price**. Practice describing the seven objects
- 
1. ... is the most expensive item
  2. ... is the **cheapest** item
  3. ... is more **expensive** than ..( )
  4. ... is the second most expensive item
  5. ... is cheaper (less expensive) than.( )
- (c) Students (in groups) have to guess the price of a shopping item held up by the teacher: Teacher responds-higher/lower
- (d) Haggling means bargaining down the price or maybe getting 2 items for the price of one. Demonstrate your haggling skills.
- (e) At the market, have you ever ... ( )? (Discuss in pairs)
1. bought a bargain or something at a reasonable price
  2. been ripped off
- (f) Role play a **stall holder** and a potential **customer**.
- Stall Holder: Hello, how are you today?*  
*Customer: Good thanks*  
*Stall Holder: Where are you from?*  
*Customer: I'm from New Zealand*  
*Stall Holder: Wow! New Zealand. I heard it is so beautiful.*  
*Stall Holder: Are you hungry? These oranges are very delicious. This shirt is very good quality. \$6 for one or two for \$10.*  
*Customer: Could you do me a special deal?*  
*Stall Holder: I can make you a special offer. I will sell you this shirt for 4 dollars, that is my lowest price.*  
*Customer: I'll take it*  
*Stall Holder: How long will you stay in ...*  
*Customer: I will stay here for 2 weeks*  
*Stall Holder: I hope you have a great stay.*
- (g) How has shopping changed in your country? For example:
1. ... years ago, people used to ....( )
  2. These days people ... ( )
  3. In the future I think people will shop...( )
- (h) What are the major shopping centres/markets in your country?
1. Does your country have it's own famous store?
  2. Can you sell items that are not authentic in your country?
- (i) Discuss why you go to shopping centres/markets
1. To socialize and meet people (Yes/no/sometimes)
  2. To buy things and eat something
  3. To have fun and to check out the scene
  4. To sell things and make some money
  5. To have time out or to fill in time
  6. To keep cool, warm or dry
  7. To use the prayer room
- (j) Why do people go to temples? Is it the same as going to shopping centres?
- (k) Do you know in story how one man (Jerusalem 30AD) was so angry a temple had been turned into a market place (people were being ripped off) that this man caused a riot? (**found, watch, made, out, fathers house**)

# 94. Authentic

## Markets and Shopping

- (a) Draw a supermarket with aisles, checkouts and the food you can buy. What do you like to buy at the supermarket? What's your favourite market or shopping centre?
- (b) Collect 7 items from a supermarket and ask students in groups of three to place them in order from lowest to highest **price**. Practice describing the seven objects
- 
1. ... is the most expensive item
  2. ... is the **cheapest** item
  3. ... is more **expensive** than ..( )
  4. ... is the second most expensive item
  5. ... is cheaper (less expensive) than.( )
- (c) Students (in groups) have to guess the price of a shopping item held up by the teacher: Teacher responds-higher/lower
- (d) Haggling means bargaining down the price or maybe getting 2 items for the price of one. Demonstrate your haggling skills.
- (e) At the market, have you ever ... ( )? (Discuss in pairs)
1. bought a bargain or something at a reasonable price
  2. been ripped off
- (f) Role play a **stall holder** and a potential **customer**.
- Stall Holder: Hello, how are you today?*  
*Customer: Good thanks*  
*Stall Holder: Where are you from?*  
*Customer: I'm from New Zealand*  
*Stall Holder: Wow! New Zealand. I heard it is so beautiful.*  
*Stall Holder: Are you hungry? These oranges are very delicious. This shirt is very good quality. \$6 for one or two for \$10.*  
*Customer: Could you do me a special deal?*  
*Stall Holder: I can make you a special offer. I will sell you this shirt for 4 dollars, that is my lowest price.*  
*Customer: I'll take it*  
*Stall Holder: How long will you stay in ...*  
*Customer: I will stay here for 2 weeks*  
*Stall Holder: I hope you have a great stay.*
- (g) How has shopping changed in your country? For example:
1. ... years ago, people used to ....( )
  2. These days people ... ( )
  3. In the future I think people will shop...( )
- (h) What are the major shopping centres/markets in your country?
1. Does your country have it's own famous store?
  2. Can you sell items that are not authentic in your country?
- (i) Discuss why you go to shopping centres/markets
1. To socialize and meet people (Yes/no/sometimes)
  2. To buy things and eat something
  3. To have fun and to check out the scene
  4. To sell things and make some money
  5. To have time out or to fill in time
  6. To keep cool, warm or dry
  7. To use the prayer room
- (j) Why do people go to temples? Is it the same as going to shopping centres?
- (k) Do you know in story how one man (Jerusalem 30AD) was so angry a temple had been turned into a market place (people were being ripped off) that this man caused a riot? (**found, watch, made, out, fathers house**)

# 95. The Tower of Power

## Negotiating / Building



(a) Are you good at fixing/building things and using your hands?

(b) Get into 5 groups and give each group some resources. For example

Group 1: **Ice cream** sticks and **string**

Group 2: **Paper cups** and **plates**

Group 3: Masking **tape** and ....

Group 4: Drinking **straws** and ...

Group 5: **Scissors** and pipe cleaners

1. Each group has five minutes to build the tallest tower

2. Each group can freely exchange items. For example:

*I'll give you 4 paper cups if you give me 10 drinking straws.*

(c) Which job you would choose if you were building a house?

1. **paint** the walls or tile the floor
2. cement the path or **plant** (sow) the lawn
3. put in the ceiling or build the foundation
4. **build** the fence or laminate the bench

(d) Complete the following phrases that are used in negotiations.

Ken: I'll .. ( ) (paint the walls) if you ... ( ) (tile the floor)

Lin: I'll .. ( ) (build the fence) providing you .. ( ) paint) it.

Ken: Why don't you ... ( ) and I will ... ( )

Lin: I would like to propose that I .. as long as you ( )

(e) Read the following ways to show agreement and disagreement to proposals. (In groups of four)

1. I think we (I) can agree on that.
2. We (I) don't entirely agree on the proposal.
3. We'll (I'll) have to check with our (my) boss.
4. We'll (I'll) get back to you on that proposal.

(f) Practice negotiating the jobs in building a house in groups of four. (Two teams of two)

Team One: We'll paint the walls if you tile the floor.

Team Two: We don't actually agree with that proposal.

(g) What's the most famous tower or pagoda you have visited and how would you describe it?

1. Big, huge or tall
2. Historical or ancient (old)
3. Inspiring
4. Spiritual
5. In need of repair

(h) Symbolic or unique How long would it take to build the temple pictured?

(i) Have you ever visited the famous pagodas located in Mount Wutai, Shanxi province? Pagodas are known as places to expel evil spirits

(j) What do you know about Leifang pagoda and the legend of the white snake? :

1. Young scholar
2. Unaware
3. Monk
4. Deep well
5. Soul

(k) Do you know the story how a man quoted to some Jewish leaders that he would rebuild a temple in 3 days that took decades to build. This story came true in 33 AD

**"Destroy this temple, and I will raise it again in three days".**

# 95. The Tower of Power

## Negotiating / Building



(a) Are you good at fixing/building things and using your hands?

(b) Get into 5 groups and give each group some resources. For example

Group 1: **Ice cream** sticks and **string**

Group 2: **Paper cups** and **plates**

Group 3: Masking **tape** and ....

Group 4: Drinking **straws** and ...

Group 5: **Scissors** and pipe cleaners

1. Each group has five minutes to build the tallest tower

2. Each group can freely exchange items. For example:

*I'll give you 4 paper cups if you give me 10 drinking straws.*

(c) Which job you would choose if you were building a house?

1. **paint** the walls or tile the floor
2. cement the path or **plant** (sow) the lawn
3. put in the ceiling or build the foundation
4. **build** the fence or laminate the bench

(d) Complete the following phrases that are used in negotiations.

Ken: I'll .. ( ) (paint the walls) if you ... ( ) (tile the floor)

Lin: I'll .. ( ) (build the fence) providing you .. ( ) paint) it.

Ken: Why don't you ... ( ) and I will ... ( )

Lin: I would like to propose that I .. as long as you ( )

(e) Read the following ways to show agreement and disagreement to proposals. (In groups of four)

1. I think we (I) can agree on that.
2. We (I) don't entirely agree on the proposal.
3. We'll (I'll) have to check with our (my) boss.
4. We'll (I'll) get back to you on that proposal.

(f) Practice negotiating the jobs in building a house in groups of four. (Two teams of two)

Team One: We'll paint the walls if you tile the floor.

Team Two: We don't actually agree with that proposal.

(g) What's the most famous tower or pagoda you have visited and how would you describe it?

1. Big, huge or tall
2. Historical or ancient (old)
3. Inspiring
4. Spiritual
5. In need of repair

(h) Symbolic or unique How long would it take to build the temple pictured?

(i) Have you ever visited the famous pagodas located in Mount Wutai, Shanxi province? Pagodas are known as places to expel evil spirits

(j) What do you know about Leifang pagoda and the legend of the white snake? :

1. Young scholar
2. Unaware
3. Monk
4. Deep well
5. Soul

(k) Do you know the story how a man quoted to some Jewish leaders that he would rebuild a temple in 3 days that took decades to build. This story came true in 33 AD

**"Destroy this temple, and I will raise it again in three days".**

# 96. Call Me



## Making a New Contact

- (a) How many **calls** would you make in one day and who do you call the most?  
**Once a day. twice day. Three times a day**
- (b) If a visitor came to your country, what advice would you give them on what **mobile phone**, call plan to use etc....?
- (c) How many ways can you answer a **phone** in a different language?
- (d) Put your class into 3 teams in single lines facing the board. Read out a 6 digit telephone number, the first person on each team has to run to the board and write the number correctly.
- (e) In pairs, read through and complete the following role play than role play calling a contact person requesting their email.

*Tim Tam: Hello, Cookie Company, Tim Tam speaking*  
*Oreo: Hello, Tim Tam, This is Oreo from Hawaii Biscuits I was just wondering if I could I have your email address. I need to send you a document*  
*Tim Tam: Sure, no problems. It's crummy@ymail.com*  
*Oreo: Sorry, I didn't quite catch (understand) what you said, could you speak a little slower please.*  
*Tim Tam: My email is crummy@ymail.com c r u m b y*  
*Oreo: Let me check, is it crummy@ymail.com?*  
*Tim Tam: Yes that's right .*

- (f) Read through the following telephone discussion in threes

*Sue: Hello my name is Sue from Banana Corporation Could I speak to Tim?*  
*Bob: I'm sorry Tim is in a meeting*  
*Sue: Could you tell Tim that I called.*  
*Bob: Sure Sue.*  
*Sue: Could I speak to Ken please?*  
*Bob: I'm afraid Ken is busy, can I take a message?*  
*Sue: It's ok, I will call Ken later. Could I speak to Pan?*  
*Bob: I'm sorry Pan is not here at the moment, she is on holidays. We are not having much luck are we?*  
*Sue: Is there anybody I could talk to who is interested in purchasing computers?*  
*Bob: Lee has just come into the office.*  
*Sue: Can I speak to Lee please?*  
*Lee: Lee speaking*  
*Sue: Hello, Lee, I have met your once before, my name is Sue from Banana Corporation. I was wondering if I could let you know about the new computers we have just got in stock, is now a good time to talk?*  
*Lee: Could you call me back in 5 minutes I'm on another call.*

- (g) Have you ever called a radio station or TV talk show? What are the main media channels in your country? What TV shows, celebrities are the most popular in your country?
- (h) Who is the most important person you have ever seen live?
- (i) If you could call anyone in the world, who would you call and what questions would you ask them?
- (j) Do you know the late night conversation between a well respected man named Nicodemus (Jerusalem 30AD) and a revered man where Nicodemus had the right to say  
*I'm sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said, did you say we have to be 'born again' to enter the Kingdom of God?*  
**(night, know, from, no one, water, spirit, surprised)**

# 96. Call Me



## Making a New Contact

- (a) How many **calls** would you make in one day and who do you call the most?  
**Once a day. twice day. Three times a day**
- (b) If a visitor came to your country, what advice would you give them on what **mobile phone**, call plan to use etc....?
- (c) How many ways can you answer a **phone** in a different language?
- (d) Put your class into 3 teams in single lines facing the board. Read out a 6 digit telephone number, the first person on each team has to run to the board and write the number correctly.
- (e) In pairs, read through and complete the following role play than role play calling a contact person requesting their email.

*Tim Tam: Hello, Cookie Company, Tim Tam speaking*  
*Oreo: Hello, Tim Tam, This is Oreo from Hawaii Biscuits I was just wondering if I could I have your email address. I need to send you a document*  
*Tim Tam: Sure, no problems. It's crummy@ymail.com*  
*Oreo: Sorry, I didn't quite catch (understand) what you said, could you speak a little slower please.*  
*Tim Tam: My email is crummy@ymail.com c r u m b y*  
*Oreo: Let me check, is it crummy@ymail.com?*  
*Tim Tam: Yes that's right .*

- (f) Read through the following telephone discussion in threes

*Sue: Hello my name is Sue from Banana Corporation Could I speak to Tim?*  
*Bob: I'm sorry Tim is in a meeting*  
*Sue: Could you tell Tim that I called.*  
*Bob: Sure Sue.*  
*Sue: Could I speak to Ken please?*  
*Bob: I'm afraid Ken is busy, can I take a message?*  
*Sue: It's ok, I will call Ken later. Could I speak to Pan?*  
*Bob: I'm sorry Pan is not here at the moment, she is on holidays. We are not having much luck are we?*  
*Sue: Is there anybody I could talk to who is interested in purchasing computers?*  
*Bob: Lee has just come into the office.*  
*Sue: Can I speak to Lee please?*  
*Lee: Lee speaking*  
*Sue: Hello, Lee, I have met your once before, my name is Sue from Banana Corporation. I was wondering if I could let you know about the new computers we have just got in stock, is now a good time to talk?*  
*Lee: Could you call me back in 5 minutes I'm on another call.*

- (g) Have you ever called a radio station or TV talk show? What are the main media channels in your country? What TV shows, celebrities are the most popular in your country?
- (h) Who is the most important person you have ever seen live?
- (i) If you could call anyone in the world, who would you call and what questions would you ask them?
- (j) Do you know the late night conversation between a well respected man named Nicodemus (Jerusalem 30AD) and a revered man where Nicodemus had the right to say  
*I'm sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said, did you say we have to be 'born again' to enter the Kingdom of God?*  
**(night, know, from, no one, water, spirit, surprised)**

# 97. Excuse Me!

## Tourism / Cross Culture

(a) Role play in pairs

Local: Hello, how are you?  
 Visitor: Fine thank you.  
 Local: Where are you **from**?  
 Visitor: I am from ....



(b) Have you ever met someone from a **different** country? Which country would you most like to visit?

(c) How well do you know the world. (Have a quiz)

1. What is the **capital city** of ...?
2. Who is the **president** of ...?
3. This is the **flag** of which country?
4. What **nationality** is ... ?

(d) How do you feel when you first **meet** someone from another culture?

1. **Happy, excited** or jubilant.
2. **Surprised**, curious or interested
3. Anxious, fearful, tentative, a bit worried or **nervous** at first
4. Stuck for words, on edge or scared
5. Apprehensive, suspicious or cautious

(e) When working cross culturally, you may receive many invitations/requests. Role play accepting/declining a request.

Person One: Would you like to join us for dinner tonight?

**Accepting** (Choose one)

1. Yes, I would love to. Thank you.
2. Great. That would be fantastic

**Declining** (Choose one)

1. Thank you for asking but I have to say no.
2. No, not this time, maybe another time.
3. I'm sorry, but I have another engagement.

(f) Role play an effective response to an inappropriate request (Two people who have only just met)

Stranger: Can you give me \$500

John 1: Excuse me! I don't think your request/question is appropriate **or**

John 2: Funny guy or funny girl.

(g) Sometimes you can do something culturally inappropriate and be completely unaware you have done something wrong. Have you ever done anything culturally inappropriate?

(h) Role-play a culturally inappropriate action in pairs. For e.g.

Tex: (Starts playing with chopsticks)

Poo: Excuse me Tex, in our culture, it's not appropriate to play with chopsticks at the table.

Tex: Thanks for telling me. I didn't know!

(i) In many cultures, it is very important to respect the national flag. Illustrate your flag and explain what the colours and emblems on your flag mean?

**Vocabulary**

revolution classes of people blood

(j) What are the cultural "no no's" in your country?

(k) Complete this statement.

You are not really Chinese if you...



(l) There is one story where many cross cultural incidents occurred at a well in Samaria (30-33AD) that led a woman who was full of shame to become free. (**what, no, give, when, 5, left, ran, knew, believe**)

# 97. Excuse Me!

## Tourism / Cross Culture

(a) Role play in pairs

Local: Hello, how are you?  
 Visitor: Fine thank you.  
 Local: Where are you **from**?  
 Visitor: I am from ....



(b) Have you ever met someone from a **different** country? Which country would you most like to visit?

(c) How well do you know the world. (Have a quiz)

1. What is the **capital city** of ...?
2. Who is the **president** of ...?
3. This is the **flag** of which country?
4. What **nationality** is ... ?

(d) How do you feel when you first **meet** someone from another culture?

1. **Happy, excited** or jubilant.
2. **Surprised**, curious or interested
3. Anxious, fearful, tentative, a bit worried or **nervous** at first
4. Stuck for words, on edge or scared
5. Apprehensive, suspicious or cautious

(e) When working cross culturally, you may receive many invitations/requests. Role play accepting/declining a request.

Person One: Would you like to join us for dinner tonight?

**Accepting** (Choose one)

1. Yes, I would love to. Thank you.
2. Great. That would be fantastic

**Declining** (Choose one)

1. Thank you for asking but I have to say no.
2. No, not this time, maybe another time.
3. I'm sorry, but I have another engagement.

(f) Role play an effective response to an inappropriate request (Two people who have only just met)

Stranger: Can you give me \$500

John 1: Excuse me! I don't think your request/question is appropriate **or**

John 2: Funny guy or funny girl.

(g) Sometimes you can do something culturally inappropriate and be completely unaware you have done something wrong. Have you ever done anything culturally inappropriate?

(h) Role-play a culturally inappropriate action in pairs. For e.g.

Tex: (Starts playing with chopsticks)

Poo: Excuse me Tex, in our culture, it's not appropriate to play with chopsticks at the table.

Tex: Thanks for telling me. I didn't know!

(i) In many cultures, it is very important to respect the national flag. Illustrate your flag and explain what the colours and emblems on your flag mean?

**Vocabulary**

revolution classes of people blood

(j) What are the cultural "no no's" in your country?

(k) Complete this statement.

You are not really Chinese if you...



(l) There is one story where many cross cultural incidents occurred at a well in Samaria (30-33AD) that led a woman who was full of shame to become free. (**what, no, give, when, 5, left, ran, knew, believe**)

# 98. Give me a Break

## Dealing with Stress

- (a) Choose one thing from the box of things (buttons, toys etc.) that describes how you feel at the moment. (In pairs).

*I chose this...() because at the moment I feel ...()*

- (b) Maybe you are feeling stressed, What makes you feel stressed? (Discuss in pairs) *I feel stressed when ...()*

1. I am caught in traffic
2. I am doing the daily grind
3. I don't have enough money
4. I have to make a decision
5. I feel out of control
6. I have too much on my plate. (work,etc..)

- (c) Which of these thoughts and actions are helpful (H) or unhelpful (U) when dealing with stress?

### I tell

1. I tell myself "The best I can do in this situation is.. (H)
2. I have to tell everybody 'I feel stressed'. (U)
3. I just tell one or two people "I feel stressed". (U & H)

### I feel

1. I feel I can't do my best so I get more stressed.
2. I feel I am still in control.
3. I feel helpless and out of control.

### I see

1. I see this event as a challenge and an opportunity to learn.
2. I see this event as a threat.

- (d) Role-play what you should say to a friend who often says "I feel stressed".

*Mr Stress: I feel stressed! I feel stressed! I feel stressed!*

*Cool guy: Saying I feel stressed all the time is not going to help. You could think and say...*

1. *the best I can do in this situation is to do the little things I can do well today. For example, clean the house, write an email, cook dinner etc*
2. *I have to think and say I am still in control. The situation is not hopeless. I can still make decisions.*
3. *I have to see this event as a challenge and an opportunity to learn.*

*Mr. Stress: Thanks for the advice, I have to think and say*

1. *I am still in control. I can still make decisions*
2. *I have some jobs to do today. I have to do them well.*
3. *This is a challenge and an opportunity to learn.*

- (e) These are good questions to ask when you feel stressed

1. What are your goals in life?
2. What relationships are you committed to in your life?
3. Which things in life can you control and can't control?

- (f) Do you visit hot springs or spas which can help relieve stress?

Show on a map where the most famous hot springs are located in your country and discuss the **rules** for bathing. Share also what you know about Yang Guifei (719-756 AD) who used to frequent Huaqing Hot Spring.

plump husband to please her  
enlarged lounged around bathing

- (g) Why else do people visit hot springs?

1. It's very relaxing, therapeutic and medicinal.
2. It cleanses your skin and your soul.

- (h) Do you know the story how a man lame for 38 years was healed at a spring even though he didn't enter the water (Jerusalem 30AD)? (**blind, lame, paralyzed, mat sin**).



# 98. Give me a Break

## Dealing with Stress

- (a) Choose one thing from the box of things (buttons, toys etc.) that describes how you feel at the moment. (In pairs).

*I chose this...() because at the moment I feel ...()*

- (b) Maybe you are feeling stressed, What makes you feel stressed? (Discuss in pairs) *I feel stressed when ...()*

1. I am caught in traffic
2. I am doing the daily grind
3. I don't have enough money
4. I have to make a decision
5. I feel out of control
6. I have too much on my plate. (work,etc..)

- (c) Which of these thoughts and actions are helpful (H) or unhelpful (U) when dealing with stress?

### I tell

1. I tell myself "The best I can do in this situation is.. (H)
2. I have to tell everybody 'I feel stressed'. (U)
3. I just tell one or two people "I feel stressed". (U & H)

### I feel

1. I feel I can't do my best so I get more stressed.
2. I feel I am still in control.
3. I feel helpless and out of control.

### I see

1. I see this event as a challenge and an opportunity to learn.
2. I see this event as a threat.

- (d) Role-play what you should say to a friend who often says "I feel stressed".

*Mr Stress: I feel stressed! I feel stressed! I feel stressed!*

*Cool guy: Saying I feel stressed all the time is not going to help. You could think and say...*

1. *the best I can do in this situation is to do the little things I can do well today. For example, clean the house, write an email, cook dinner etc*
2. *I have to think and say I am still in control. The situation is not hopeless. I can still make decisions.*
3. *I have to see this event as a challenge and an opportunity to learn.*

*Mr. Stress: Thanks for the advice, I have to think and say*

1. *I am still in control. I can still make decisions*
2. *I have some jobs to do today. I have to do them well.*
3. *This is a challenge and an opportunity to learn.*

- (e) These are good questions to ask when you feel stressed

1. What are your goals in life?
2. What relationships are you committed to in your life?
3. Which things in life can you control and can't control?

- (f) Do you visit hot springs or spas which can help relieve stress?

Show on a map where the most famous hot springs are located in your country and discuss the **rules** for bathing. Share also what you know about Yang Guifei (719-756 AD) who used to frequent Huaqing Hot Spring.

plump husband to please her  
enlarged lounged around bathing

- (g) Why else do people visit hot springs?

1. It's very relaxing, therapeutic and medicinal.
2. It cleanses your skin and your soul.

- (h) Do you know the story how a man lame for 38 years was healed at a spring even though he didn't enter the water (Jerusalem 30AD)? (**blind, lame, paralyzed, mat sin**).



# 99. It's the Law

## Cars and Driving

- (a) Give out some toy **cars** and have people describe them.
1. Speedy and **fast**
  2. **Cheap**, cute and **comfortable**
  3. Spacious, luxurious, sporty, eye catching, flash
  4. **Easy to drive**, easy to park, very practical, 4WD.
  5. Economical on fuel, **safe** and reliable
- (b) Describe what kind of car, **motorcycle** or **bicycle** you have and what is your dream car?
- (c) Demonstrate your driving style with your toy car.
1. **Slow** and steady (Careful)
  2. Assertive
  3. Reckless and **dangerous**
  4. Fast (speedy)
- (d) Which of these answers to the following questions are correct? (Note: Kim doesn't have a driver's licence)
1. Kim, do you have a driver's licence?
  2. Kim, you do have a driver's license, don't you?
  3. Kim, you don't have a driver's licence, do you?

### Possible Answers

- a. Yes I have
- b. No I am not
- c. Yes I am
- d. Yes
- e. No
- f. Yes I (sure) do
- g. No I don't
- h. That's correct



- (e) Match these wrong doings with the possible penalty.

### Wrongdoing

1. traffic infringement
2. over due library book
3. illegal tackle (football)
4. robbery
5. no visa
6. 2 yellow cards (football)
7. swearing at school
8. murder
9. something wrong at work

### Penalty

- a. imprisonment
- b. detention
- c. penalty
- d. deported
- e. late fine
- f. suspension
- g. capital punishment
- h. reprimand (warning)
- i. fine or penalty

- (f) What are the rules for wearing seatbelts in your country?
1. It's compulsory (It's the law) or its optional
  2. Front seat, back seat or both
  3. Child seat or lap belt
- (g) Which side of the road do you drive on in your country?
1. The steering wheel is on the left/right
  2. We drive on the right/left side of the road. The same as...
- (h) In your country ...
1. are you licensed to drive an automatic or manual car?
  2. what are the speed limits?
  3. what do you do if you have an accident?
  4. what is the legal blood alcohol limit for driving?
  5. are there any crazy rules or unusual laws that foreigners should be aware of? What about in other countries?

**Japan:** Used cars: Strict rules that later promote business

- (i) Do you know the story of a woman caught in adultery who was sentenced to be stoned to death but she was miraculously set free. (In the temple courts at the Base of Mount Olive at dawn 30-33AD)? (**teach, this woman, who hasn't, sin, first, leave**)

# 99. It's the Law

## Cars and Driving

- (a) Give out some toy **cars** and have people describe them.
1. Speedy and **fast**
  2. **Cheap**, cute and **comfortable**
  3. Spacious, luxurious, sporty, eye catching, flash
  4. **Easy to drive**, easy to park, very practical, 4WD.
  5. Economical on fuel, **safe** and reliable
- (b) Describe what kind of car, **motorcycle** or **bicycle** you have and what is your dream car?
- (c) Demonstrate your driving style with your toy car.
1. **Slow** and steady (Careful)
  2. Assertive
  3. Reckless and **dangerous**
  4. Fast (speedy)
- (d) Which of these answers to the following questions are correct? (Note: Kim doesn't have a driver's licence)
1. Kim, do you have a driver's licence?
  2. Kim, you do have a driver's license, don't you?
  3. Kim, you don't have a driver's licence, do you?

### Possible Answers

- a. Yes I have
- b. No I am not
- c. Yes I am
- d. Yes
- e. No
- f. Yes I (sure) do
- g. No I don't
- h. That's correct



- (e) Match these wrong doings with the possible penalty.

### Wrongdoing

1. traffic infringement
2. over due library book
3. illegal tackle (football)
4. robbery
5. no visa
6. 2 yellow cards (football)
7. swearing at school
8. murder
9. something wrong at work

### Penalty

- a. imprisonment
- b. detention
- c. penalty
- d. deported
- e. late fine
- f. suspension
- g. capital punishment
- h. reprimand (warning)
- i. fine or penalty

- (f) What are the rules for wearing seatbelts in your country?
1. It's compulsory (It's the law) or its optional
  2. Front seat, back seat or both
  3. Child seat or lap belt
- (g) Which side of the road do you drive on in your country?
1. The steering wheel is on the left/right
  2. We drive on the right/left side of the road. The same as...
- (h) In your country ...
1. are you licensed to drive an automatic or manual car?
  2. what are the speed limits?
  3. what do you do if you have an accident?
  4. what is the legal blood alcohol limit for driving?
  5. are there any crazy rules or unusual laws that foreigners should be aware of? What about in other countries?

**Japan:** Used cars: Strict rules that later promote business

- (i) Do you know the story of a woman caught in adultery who was sentenced to be stoned to death but she was miraculously set free. (In the temple courts at the Base of Mount Olive at dawn 30-33AD)? (**teach, this woman, who hasn't, sin, first, leave**)

# 100. All I know is



## Routine at work

- (a) Name 3 famous people in the world.
- (b) Put the name of a famous person on each persons back. Everybody has to stand up and ask Yes/No questions to different people to find out who the person is on their back. For example:

*Am I male?* Yes/No.      *Am I a singer?* Yes/No  
*Am I alive?* Yes/No      *Am I Asian?* Yes/No

- (c) Mimic and introduce yourself to each other as the famous person on your back.
- (d) The students are going to listen to the reading below 3 times. The first time they just listen. The second time they write down the verbs down the middle of a blank page. The third time they listen and complete all the sentences. For example:

Reading 1: (just listen)  
Reading 2: (Write verbs)      **eats**  
Reading 3 (Who eats)      eats (what does **he/she** eat)

## The Reading

The prime minister **eats** breakfast at **6:30**. He/she prays at 7:30. He/she **reads** the **newspaper** at **9:00**. He practices his speech at 9:30 and He/she **meets** special visitors at **10:00**

- (e) Ask the students what was the prime minister doing at the following times? For example:

*At 6:35, the prime minister was eating his breakfast (Answer is in past continuous form)*

1. 7:35am (At 7: 35, the prime minister was...)
2. 9:05am
3. 9:35am
4. 10:05am

- (f) Police officers ask questions like *What were you doing at ..?* to help discover the truth. Role play being a police officer asking the following questions to your partner.

*Police officer: What were you doing ...(.,.)? (choose two)*

1. at 7:00 (7am) **yesterday morning**
2. at 2:00 (2 pm) **yesterday afternoon.**
3. at 6:00 (6pm) **yesterday evening**
4. at 8:00 (8pm) **last night**
5. **this time yesterday**

*Person One: At 7:00 yesterday morning, I was sleeping*

- (g) No one is perfect. Do you know any prime ministers, presidents, television and sporting celebrities from your country have been in trouble for doing something wrong?

- (h) Religious figures are seen as very honest people
1. Who are most famous priests, rabbis, sisters, nuns clerics, teachers, monks from your country?
  2. What duties do they or did they perform?
  3. Are their any religious figures who have become celebrities?
  4. Did any of these celebrities ever lose their popularity for some reason?



- (i) Do you know the story of one popular religious figure, who some religious people were jealous of because this person once healed a man born blind and was becoming more and more popular. (Israel 33AD)? The blind man said *"Whether he is a sinner or not, I don't know. One thing I do know. I was blind but now I see!" (mud, eyes, know, who, listen, believe)*

# 100. All I know is



## Routine at work

- (a) Name 3 famous people in the world.
- (b) Put the name of a famous person on each persons back. Everybody has to stand up and ask Yes/No questions to different people to find out who the person is on their back. For example:

*Am I male?* Yes/No.      *Am I a singer?* Yes/No  
*Am I alive?* Yes/No      *Am I Asian?* Yes/No

- (c) Mimic and introduce yourself to each other as the famous person on your back.
- (d) The students are going to listen to the reading below 3 times. The first time they just listen. The second time they write down the verbs down the middle of a blank page. The third time they listen and complete all the sentences. For example:

Reading 1: (just listen)  
Reading 2: (Write verbs)      **eats**  
Reading 3 (Who eats)      eats (what does **he/she** eat)

## The Reading

The prime minister **eats** breakfast at **6:30**. He/she prays at 7:30. He/she **reads** the **newspaper** at **9:00**. He practices his speech at 9:30 and He/she **meets** special visitors at **10:00**

- (e) Ask the students what was the prime minister doing at the following times? For example:

*At 6:35, the prime minister was eating his breakfast (Answer is in past continuous form)*

1. 7:35am (At 7: 35, the prime minister was...)
2. 9:05am
3. 9:35am
4. 10:05am

- (f) Police officers ask questions like *What were you doing at ..?* to help discover the truth. Role play being a police officer asking the following questions to your partner.

*Police officer: What were you doing ...(.,.)? (choose two)*

1. at 7:00 (7am) **yesterday morning**
2. at 2:00 (2 pm) **yesterday afternoon.**
3. at 6:00 (6pm) **yesterday evening**
4. at 8:00 (8pm) **last night**
5. **this time yesterday**

*Person One: At 7:00 yesterday morning, I was sleeping*

- (g) No one is perfect. Do you know any prime ministers, presidents, television and sporting celebrities from your country have been in trouble for doing something wrong?

- (h) Religious figures are seen as very honest people
1. Who are most famous priests, rabbis, sisters, nuns clerics, teachers, monks from your country?
  2. What duties do they or did they perform?
  3. Are their any religious figures who have become celebrities?
  4. Did any of these celebrities ever lose their popularity for some reason?



- (i) Do you know the story of one popular religious figure, who some religious people were jealous of because this person once healed a man born blind and was becoming more and more popular. (Israel 33AD)? The blind man said *"Whether he is a sinner or not, I don't know. One thing I do know. I was blind but now I see!" (mud, eyes, know, who, listen, believe)*

# 101. He's Cute

## Persuasion

- (a) What animal would you love to see?
- (b) Draw a 20 per cent outline of an **animal** on the whiteboard and ask the class. *Can you guess what animal this is?*
- (c) How would you describe a panda? Pandas are ... ( )
- beautiful, cuddly**, affectionate (**loving**) and **playful**
  - aggressive or stubborn
- (d) docile, **sleepy** or bizarre! In small teams, answer these questions.
- Where can you find pandas in China?
  - What do Pandas eat?
  - How old can Pandas live to?
  - How much can a panda weigh?
  - How many pandas are alive today?



- (e) You want to encourage a reluctant person to come and see some animals. Role-play this situation in fours. For example:

Wang: Song, you should come with us to Sichuan to see the Pandas.

Song: Pandas don't really interest me.

Narrator: **1 Make it attractive**

Vicki: Pandas are cute (adjective). They are really friendly and unique (adjectives).

Narrator: **2. Make it personal**

Wang: I honestly believe you would have a good time in Sichuan.

Vicki: Song I think you would really love seeing Pandas.

Song: Really!

Narrator: **3. Repeat main points**

Wang: Let me tell you about Pandas again. Pandas are extremely cute

Vicki: It's up to you, but I think you should come with us.

Wang: What do you think?

Song: Do you really think so?

- (f) Try to persuade one person in your group to do something they are not initially keen on doing.

Person 1: You should... ( ) They are/ It is .. ( )

Person 3: I'm not interested

Person 2: I honestly believe... ( )

Person 1: I think you would ... ( )

Person 2: It's up to you, but I think you should. What do you think?

- (g) Explain and practice the following transport terms used today for cars that originated from language used with horses.

- pick me up
- give me a lift
- hop in

- (h) What is significant about the horse pictured?



- (i) Would you rather be a **panda, horse, monkey** or **sheep**? Why? How would you describe the personality of a sheep? (Have you ever tried to put sheep through a **gate**?).

- (j) Do you know any stories where people are described as sheep? (**voice, name, lays down his life, cares, carries, 100, run astray**)

# 101. He's Cute

## Persuasion

- (a) What animal would you love to see?
- (b) Draw a 20 per cent outline of an **animal** on the whiteboard and ask the class. *Can you guess what animal this is?*
- (c) How would you describe a panda? Pandas are ... ( )
- beautiful, cuddly**, affectionate (**loving**) and **playful**
  - aggressive or stubborn
- (d) docile, **sleepy** or bizarre! In small teams, answer these questions.
- Where can you find pandas in China?
  - What do Pandas eat?
  - How old can Pandas live to?
  - How much can a panda weigh?
  - How many pandas are alive today?



- (e) You want to encourage a reluctant person to come and see some animals. Role-play this situation in fours. For example:

Wang: Song, you should come with us to Sichuan to see the Pandas.

Song: Pandas don't really interest me.

Narrator: **1 Make it attractive**

Vicki: Pandas are cute (adjective). They are really friendly and unique (adjectives).

Narrator: **2. Make it personal**

Wang: I honestly believe you would have a good time in Sichuan.

Vicki: Song I think you would really love seeing Pandas.

Song: Really!

Narrator: **3. Repeat main points**

Wang: Let me tell you about Pandas again. Pandas are extremely cute

Vicki: It's up to you, but I think you should come with us.

Wang: What do you think?

Song: Do you really think so?

- (f) Try to persuade one person in your group to do something they are not initially keen on doing.

Person 1: You should... ( ) They are/ It is .. ( )

Person 3: I'm not interested

Person 2: I honestly believe... ( )

Person 1: I think you would ... ( )

Person 2: It's up to you, but I think you should. What do you think?

- (g) Explain and practice the following transport terms used today for cars that originated from language used with horses.

- pick me up
- give me a lift
- hop in

- (h) What is significant about the horse pictured?



- (i) Would you rather be a **panda, horse, monkey** or **sheep**? Why? How would you describe the personality of a sheep? (Have you ever tried to put sheep through a **gate**?).

- (j) Do you know any stories where people are described as sheep? (**voice, name, lays down his life, cares, carries, 100, run astray**)

# 102. No Fear

## Fear of Public Speaking

(a) Discuss in pairs

Person 1: What are you afraid of? (**spiders, snakes ghosts..**)

Person 2: I'm afraid of ... ( ) (**dark nights, evil spirits**)

(b) Put your hand into a black feely bag and describe what you felt and how you felt whilst feeling the object in the bag.

1. **Shocked, surprised** of **scared**
2. **Interested** or **excited**
3. Nervous, anxious or tense
4. Inquisitive or intrigued

(c) Which of the following situations are you afraid of? (rate a score out of 10 with 0 - not being afraid and 10 – petrified).

1. Not getting a good job. e.g. (6)
2. Not being successful. e.g. (8)
3. Never getting married.
4. Letting my parents down.
5. Not reaching my potential.
6. Speaking in public.
7. Getting a low language score.
8. Coming second.

(d) To reduce your fear of public speaking, read as a class through this standard example of introducing a presentation.

1. Good morning ladies and gentlemen.
2. My name is...
3. Today I'm going to talk about myself.
4. I've divided my talk into (three) parts.
5. In the first part I will talk about **my background**.
6. In the second part I will talk about **my achievements**.
7. Finally, I will talk about **my fears**.
8. My talk will go for about ten minutes. (Choose a or b)
  - a. After my talk, there'll be time for a discussion and any questions. Please hold your questions until then. Thank you. **OR**
  - b. Feel free to ask any questions during my talk. Just raise your hand, thank you.
9. That concludes my introduction, so let's move on to the first part of my talk.



(e) Give a brief presentation about a presentation about yourself.

## Fear of Death

(f) Give a presentation on a famous person sharing their achievements, titles and their well known encounter with death. For example:

**China:** Emperor Qin Shi Huang and the terracotta tomb of warriors (221BC to 210 BC).

1. First emperor of China
2. Unified many things
3. The Great Wall of China
4. Not wanting death to be the end. (The warriors)



(g) In sport, when a team comes back from the dead (losing badly) and wins a game, they are reported to have done a *Lazarus*. Do you know examples of a team in your country that did a *Lazarus*?

(h) Do you know the story behind the *Lazarus* term that would encourage anybody seeking the answers to life and death. Bethany 33AD? (**3 people, knew, love, far away, heard, surprise, stay, cried, moved, where, tomb, move, come, wrap, believe, kill**)

# 102. No Fear

## Fear of Public Speaking

(a) Discuss in pairs

Person 1: What are you afraid of? (**spiders, snakes ghosts..**)

Person 2: I'm afraid of ... ( ) (**dark nights, evil spirits**)

(b) Put your hand into a black feely bag and describe what you felt and how you felt whilst feeling the object in the bag.

1. **Shocked, surprised** of **scared**
2. **Interested** or **excited**
3. Nervous, anxious or tense
4. Inquisitive or intrigued

(c) Which of the following situations are you afraid of? (rate a score out of 10 with 0 - not being afraid and 10 – petrified).

1. Not getting a good job. e.g. (6)
2. Not being successful. e.g. (8)
3. Never getting married.
4. Letting my parents down.
5. Not reaching my potential.
6. Speaking in public.
7. Getting a low language score.
8. Coming second.

(d) To reduce your fear of public speaking, read as a class through this standard example of introducing a presentation.

1. Good morning ladies and gentlemen.
2. My name is...
3. Today I'm going to talk about myself.
4. I've divided my talk into (three) parts.
5. In the first part I will talk about **my background**.
6. In the second part I will talk about **my achievements**.
7. Finally, I will talk about **my fears**.
8. My talk will go for about ten minutes. (Choose a or b)
  - a. After my talk, there'll be time for a discussion and any questions. Please hold your questions until then. Thank you. **OR**
  - b. Feel free to ask any questions during my talk. Just raise your hand, thank you.
9. That concludes my introduction, so let's move on to the first part of my talk.



(e) Give a brief presentation about a presentation about yourself.

## Fear of Death

(f) Give a presentation on a famous person sharing their achievements, titles and their well known encounter with death. For example:

**China:** Emperor Qin Shi Huang and the terracotta tomb of warriors (221BC to 210 BC).

1. First emperor of China
2. Unified many things
3. The Great Wall of China
4. Not wanting death to be the end. (The warriors)



(g) In sport, when a team comes back from the dead (losing badly) and wins a game, they are reported to have done a *Lazarus*. Do you know examples of a team in your country that did a *Lazarus*?

(h) Do you know the story behind the *Lazarus* term that would encourage anybody seeking the answers to life and death. Bethany 33AD? (**3 people, knew, love, far away, heard, surprise, stay, cried, moved, where, tomb, move, come, wrap, believe, kill**)

# 103. Follow the Leader

## Job Responsibilities

- (a) One person is standing in the middle. Everybody else is sitting in a circle around this person who reads a statement (Change places if ..) If you answer is 'yes' change places. The person left standing in the middle then chooses another sentence to read out

*Change places if you ..*

1. **sell** things
2. **clean** things
3. do accounts
4. **handle** money
5. handle complaints
6. **manage** staff
7. give advice
8. **stack** shelves
9. **serve** customers
10. handle enquires
11. encourage my workmates
12. help motivate staff
13. **organize** staff
14. negotiate with people and businesses
15. **write** reports
16. make up budgets and give future predictions.



- (b) Write out your daily routine at work  
(c) Choose which of the following sentences sound more positive

1. I work in an office
2. I work in administration (more positive)
  1. I am a salesperson
  2. I work in sales (customer service)
  3. I work in retail (clothes)
1. I answer telephone calls
2. I am a customer service officer
  1. I am in between jobs
  2. I am unemployed
  3. I am seeking a more challenging position
  4. I am looking for new challenge

- (d) In pairs, share about your position at work.

1. I work with....
2. I report to
3. My duties include ..
4. I am responsible to/for ..
5. My mentor is ..
6. I meet (up) with .. once a week

- (e) How would you describe your boss or supervisor?

- (f) Being a boss or a politician is a difficult job.

1. Who is the leader of your county?
2. How many political parties are there in your country?
3. How often do you have elections in your country? What age are you eligible to vote? Is it compulsory to vote?
4. What policy would you introduce if you were the leader of your country?
5. Do you have any celebrities who have become politicians?

**Thailand:** Nuranun (Sam)  
**USA:** Arnold Schwarzenegger  
**Pakistan:** Imran Khan

- (g) What is surprising or unusual about the interests or actions of your current or past leaders?

- (h) Once there was a leader who surprised many people when he washed the feet of his close followers (Jerusalem 33AD). Do you know about this well known incident? (**from, going, got up, wrap, pour, wash, clean, but one, serve**)

# 103. Follow the Leader

## Job Responsibilities

- (a) One person is standing in the middle. Everybody else is sitting in a circle around this person who reads a statement (Change places if ..) If you answer is 'yes' change places. The person left standing in the middle then chooses another sentence to read out

*Change places if you ..*

1. **sell** things
2. **clean** things
3. do accounts
4. **handle** money
5. handle complaints
6. **manage** staff
7. give advice
8. **stack** shelves
9. **serve** customers
10. handle enquires
11. encourage my workmates
12. help motivate staff
13. **organize** staff
14. negotiate with people and businesses
15. **write** reports
16. make up budgets and give future predictions.



- (b) Write out your daily routine at work  
(c) Choose which of the following sentences sound more positive

1. I work in an office
2. I work in administration (more positive)
  1. I am a salesperson
  2. I work in sales (customer service)
  3. I work in retail (clothes)
1. I answer telephone calls
2. I am a customer service officer
  1. I am in between jobs
  2. I am unemployed
  3. I am seeking a more challenging position
  4. I am looking for new challenge

- (d) In pairs, share about your position at work.

1. I work with....
2. I report to
3. My duties include ..
4. I am responsible to/for ..
5. My mentor is ..
6. I meet (up) with .. once a week

- (e) How would you describe your boss or supervisor?

- (f) Being a boss or a politician is a difficult job.

1. Who is the leader of your county?
2. How many political parties are there in your country?
3. How often do you have elections in your country? What age are you eligible to vote? Is it compulsory to vote?
4. What policy would you introduce if you were the leader of your country?
5. Do you have any celebrities who have become politicians?

**Thailand:** Nuranun (Sam)  
**USA:** Arnold Schwarzenegger  
**Pakistan:** Imran Khan

- (g) What is surprising or unusual about the interests or actions of your current or past leaders?

- (h) Once there was a leader who surprised many people when he washed the feet of his close followers (Jerusalem 33AD). Do you know about this well known incident? (**from, going, got up, wrap, pour, wash, clean, but one, serve**)

# 104. The King's Speech

## Announcement



- (a) Share 2 surprising things about yourself.
- (b) Read around the group the following announcements

Person 1: Excuse me everybody, **sorry** to interrupt.  
I have an announcement to make  
I have something important to say/tell you

Person 1: I am getting married.

Person 2: It's Jack's **birthday**

Person 3: Everybody is going to get a bonus.

Person 4: I am leaving my job.

Person 5: Somebody has left their car **lights** on.

Person 6: I would like to propose a **toast** to the bride

Person 7: My wife has had a baby. **Drinks** are on the house

Person 8: A typhoon is coming.

Person 9: **Chicken** will be served first followed by the **fish**.

Person 10: We are celebrating our win at a cafe next Friday  
Its alfresco dining, BYO alcohol. RSVP Monday.

- (c) Often we can respond to an announcement by saying

1. Really! Wow! That's great! Congratulations
2. I don't believe it or Oh no!

Practice saying more announcements and some responses

- (d) An announcement is like a short speech. Can you remember any famous announcements or short speeches? For e.g.

*We are at war. The War is over! They are alive!*

- (e) Write down and share a short quote of less than five words that you would like to share with the world. For example:

*Eat more apples. Love your enemies. The winner is ...etc*

- (f) Match the following famous people with the following quotes

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. Confucius       | a. A light heart lives long  |
| 2. Shakespeare     | b. Am I not destroying my enemies when I make friends of them?               |
| 3. Abraham Lincoln | c. Choose a job you love, and you will never have to work a day in your life |

- (g) Share a famous speech, quote or announcement. For e.g.

**China:** Chairman Mao Oct 1 1949. (Pictured) *"The Chinese people have stood up"*

**Korea:** Jin Kwon (Yi Sun Shin) by conquering the enemy within" Teamwork. *Many logs make a bigger fire*

**Japan:** Hirohito's speech 1945: *For the prosperity and happiness of all nations.*

**Thailand:** Māgha Pūjā day 'Heart of Buddhism'  
*Cease from all evil, do what is good, to cleanse one's mind.*

**USA:** Martin Luther King: August 28.1963.  
*"I have a dream" When all of God's children, black men and white men, sing "Free at last, free at last. Thank God Almighty, we are free at last."*



- (h) What was Martin Luther King saying we can be free from? How can we be free from this problem?

- (i) Do you know in history (Jerusalem 33AD) when an expected king said some surprising things to his close followers about what he was going to do so they could be free ...*"I am leaving you. You can't follow me. I will prepare a room for you. I will send you a counsellor". (go, father's house, where, believe, alone, work, soon, now)*

# 104. The King's Speech

## Announcement



- (a) Share 2 surprising things about yourself.
- (b) Read around the group the following announcements

Person 1: Excuse me everybody, **sorry** to interrupt.  
I have an announcement to make  
I have something important to say/tell you

Person 1: I am getting married.

Person 2: It's Jack's **birthday**

Person 3: Everybody is going to get a bonus.

Person 4: I am leaving my job.

Person 5: Somebody has left their car **lights** on.

Person 6: I would like to propose a **toast** to the bride

Person 7: My wife has had a baby. **Drinks** are on the house

Person 8: A typhoon is coming.

Person 9: **Chicken** will be served first followed by the **fish**.

Person 10: We are celebrating our win at a cafe next Friday  
Its alfresco dining, BYO alcohol. RSVP Monday.

- (c) Often we can respond to an announcement by saying

1. Really! Wow! That's great! Congratulations
2. I don't believe it or Oh no!

Practice saying more announcements and some responses

- (d) An announcement is like a short speech. Can you remember any famous announcements or short speeches? For e.g.

*We are at war. The War is over! They are alive!*

- (e) Write down and share a short quote of less than five words that you would like to share with the world. For example:

*Eat more apples. Love your enemies. The winner is ...etc*

- (f) Match the following famous people with the following quotes

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. Confucius       | a. A light heart lives long  |
| 2. Shakespeare     | b. Am I not destroying my enemies when I make friends of them?               |
| 3. Abraham Lincoln | c. Choose a job you love, and you will never have to work a day in your life |

- (g) Share a famous speech, quote or announcement. For e.g.

**China:** Chairman Mao Oct 1 1949. (Pictured) *"The Chinese people have stood up"*

**Korea:** Jin Kwon (Yi Sun Shin) by conquering the enemy within" Teamwork. *Many logs make a bigger fire*

**Japan:** Hirohito's speech 1945: *For the prosperity and happiness of all nations.*

**Thailand:** Māgha Pūjā day 'Heart of Buddhism'  
*Cease from all evil, do what is good, to cleanse one's mind.*

**USA:** Martin Luther King: August 28.1963.  
*"I have a dream" When all of God's children, black men and white men, sing "Free at last, free at last. Thank God Almighty, we are free at last."*



- (h) What was Martin Luther King saying we can be free from? How can we be free from this problem?

- (i) Do you know in history (Jerusalem 33AD) when an expected king said some surprising things to his close followers about what he was going to do so they could be free ...*"I am leaving you. You can't follow me. I will prepare a room for you. I will send you a counsellor". (go, father's house, where, believe, alone, work, soon, now)*

# 105. To Be or Not to Be

## Fashion

- (a) Stand back to back and describe what your partner is wearing.

*Today you are wearing **blue jeans, white top...***

- (b) (Teacher has pre-arranged this drama) Describe to the policeman what the 'dressed up' robber was wearing when he/she came into the room and stole the teacher's bag.

- (c) Change partners and describe your partners dress style.

Person 1: *Wow! You look... ( ) (Choose one)*

1. **great, wonderful, beautiful**
2. *very fashionable, very suave*
3. *very trendy or very chic*
4. *sporty, stunning, cool or casual*

- (d) What's your favourite colour and material for clothes?

*I like wearing ... ( ) (Discuss in pairs) For example*

1. *denim*
2. *silk*
3. *bright colours or winter colours*
4. *anything light*
5. *100 per cent cotton*

- (e) Give some compliments to your partner.

1. *I love your ... (shirt, jewelry, earrings)*
2. *I really like your (top, lipstick, make up)*
3. **Those** ... (colours) *really suit you.*
4. **That** ... (jumper) *looks good on you*
5. *You look great in ... (denim)*



- (f) Do you sometimes wear..?

1. a school or work uniform
2. a sports outfit
3. traditional clothes
4. clothes or a mask for cultural performances

## Roles in Cultural Performances

- (g) Share about the costumes, make up and masks used in cultural performances and arts in your country. For example:

**China:** Chinese Opera: Different coloured masks.  
 1. red: loyal, upright and courageous  
 2. gold/silver: gods and ghosts  
 3. white: sinister and cunning  
 Chou - (clown role) Dan (female role)  
 Jing also called 'Hualian' Sheng (male role)

## Roles in Life

- (h) What is your view on people's role in life?

1. Just try your best.
2. Just let things be.
3. Life is a recycling process.
4. Belief in a higher being.

- (i) Draw a timeline and mark in times of change in your life. You can describe turning points and changes in your life by referring to different colour masks, make up, costumes etc

- (j) Do you know how the lives and roles of the followers of a King dramatically changed after He was resurrected from the dead (Mount of Olives near Jerusalem 33AD)? **(40 days, alive, leave, wait, water, spirit, few days, eyes, why, come back)**

# 105. To Be or Not to Be

## Fashion

- (a) Stand back to back and describe what your partner is wearing.

*Today you are wearing **blue jeans, white top...***

- (b) (Teacher has pre-arranged this drama) Describe to the policeman what the 'dressed up' robber was wearing when he/she came into the room and stole the teacher's bag.

- (c) Change partners and describe your partners dress style.

Person 1: *Wow! You look... ( ) (Choose one)*

1. **great, wonderful, beautiful**
2. *very fashionable, very suave*
3. *very trendy or very chic*
4. *sporty, stunning, cool or casual*

- (d) What's your favourite colour and material for clothes?

*I like wearing ... ( ) (Discuss in pairs) For example*

1. *denim*
2. *silk*
3. *bright colours or winter colours*
4. *anything light*
5. *100 per cent cotton*

- (e) Give some compliments to your partner.

1. *I love your ... (shirt, jewelry, earrings)*
2. *I really like your (top, lipstick, make up)*
3. **Those** ... (colours) *really suit you.*
4. **That** ... (jumper) *looks good on you*
5. *You look great in ... (denim)*



- (f) Do you sometimes wear..?

1. a school or work uniform
2. a sports outfit
3. traditional clothes
4. clothes or a mask for cultural performances

## Roles in Cultural Performances

- (g) Share about the costumes, make up and masks used in cultural performances and arts in your country. For example:

**China:** Chinese Opera: Different coloured masks.  
 1. red: loyal, upright and courageous  
 2. gold/silver: gods and ghosts  
 3. white: sinister and cunning  
 Chou - (clown role) Dan (female role)  
 Jing also called 'Hualian' Sheng (male role)

## Roles in Life

- (h) What is your view on people's role in life?

1. Just try your best.
2. Just let things be.
3. Life is a recycling process.
4. Belief in a higher being.

- (i) Draw a timeline and mark in times of change in your life. You can describe turning points and changes in your life by referring to different colour masks, make up, costumes etc

- (j) Do you know how the lives and roles of the followers of a King dramatically changed after He was resurrected from the dead (Mount of Olives near Jerusalem 33AD)? **(40 days, alive, leave, wait, water, spirit, few days, eyes, why, come back)**

# 106. Bumper Harvest

## Adverbs and Festivals

- (a) In pairs, complete and share these phrases about yourself.
1. I **always** ... (on a red strip of paper)
  2. I **never** ... (on a yellow strip of paper)
  3. **Sometimes** I ... (on a green strip of paper)
  4. I **nearly always** ... (on a white strip of paper)

- (b) Place the colour strips in separate piles. Take a red strip and find whose it is and then do the same for the other strips.

Person 1: Do you always **eat noodles** for **breakfast**?

Person 2: Yes I do or No I don't.

Person 1: Did you write this sentence?

- (c) Sometimes people say "never" or "always" but maybe it's not exactly true, so they need to be corrected by tone. Read through the following role-play in different pairs.

Person 1: You **always** eat my moon cakes.

Person 2: **Always** (inquisitive tone)?

Person 1: Ok. **Sometimes**.

Person 2: You **never** clean up!

Person 1: **Never**?

- (d) Which of the following phrases are correct?

1. **most** people
2. most of all people
3. nearly people
4. nearly all people
5. most of people
6. all people
7. all of people
8. every person in ...
9. every people



- (e) Discuss what people do during Mid Autumn Harvest festival using the words from (d). For e.g. All people in China like eating Moon cakes

- (f) Harvest festivals are also sometimes known as a time/festival of Reunion. Moon cakes symbolizes reunion. Who do you see and what else do you do during this festival?

- (g) Harvest festivals express a wish for a more prosperous year. Discuss how people try to increase or foretell their future prosperity. For example

**China:** Tortoise shells helped foretell the future.

- (h) What would be good fortune or news for you in your future? What's the worst thing that can happen to you in the future?

- (i) Do you know the future reunion and harvest as described in the ancient story of the ten young ladies who all had lamps? Some of these ladies had a very prosperous future. (**foolish, wise, midnight, here, oil, give me some, enough, go, eat, door, don't know**)

# 106. Bumper Harvest

## Adverbs and Festivals

- (a) In pairs, complete and share these phrases about yourself.
1. I **always** ... (on a red strip of paper)
  2. I **never** ... (on a yellow strip of paper)
  3. **Sometimes** I ... (on a green strip of paper)
  4. I **nearly always** ... (on a white strip of paper)

- (b) Place the colour strips in separate piles. Take a red strip and find whose it is and then do the same for the other strips.

Person 1: Do you always **eat noodles** for **breakfast**?

Person 2: Yes I do or No I don't.

Person 1: Did you write this sentence?

- (c) Sometimes people say "never" or "always" but maybe it's not exactly true, so they need to be corrected by tone. Read through the following role-play in different pairs.

Person 1: You **always** eat my moon cakes.

Person 2: **Always** (inquisitive tone)?

Person 1: Ok. **Sometimes**.

Person 2: You **never** clean up!

Person 1: **Never**?

- (d) Which of the following phrases are correct?

1. **most** people
2. most of all people
3. nearly people
4. nearly all people
5. most of people
6. all people
7. all of people
8. every person in ...
9. every people



- (e) Discuss what people do during Mid Autumn Harvest festival using the words from (d). For e.g. All people in China like eating Moon cakes

- (f) Harvest festivals are also sometimes known as a time/festival of Reunion. Moon cakes symbolizes reunion. Who do you see and what else do you do during this festival?

- (g) Harvest festivals express a wish for a more prosperous year. Discuss how people try to increase or foretell their future prosperity. For example

**China:** Tortoise shells helped foretell the future.

- (h) What would be good fortune or news for you in your future? What's the worst thing that can happen to you in the future?

- (i) Do you know the future reunion and harvest as described in the ancient story of the ten young ladies who all had lamps? Some of these ladies had a very prosperous future. (**foolish, wise, midnight, here, oil, give me some, enough, go, eat, door, don't know**)

# 107. Winds of Fortune

## Refreshing time

- (a) Do you prefer travelling on a train, taxi, bus, car or plane etc?  
I prefer travelling in/on a ....(**bus/taxi/plane**) **because** it is ....()
1. **quicker, quieter, cheaper** or **cooler**
  2. **more comfortable** or **more convenient**
  3. **more reliable** or **more relaxing** or **refreshing wind (breeze)**
  4. **less crowded**
- (b) Make and describe a paper plane than line up and see which plane flies the furthest. For example: *My plane is ...()*.
1. *attractive looking*
  2. *lightweight and aerodynamic*
  3. *a simple design and easy to fly*
  4. *very sophisticated*
- (c) Describe the wind conditions for today's test flight?
1. Gentle, slight or nice breeze
  2. Strong, gusty or violent wind
- (d) If your plane accidentally hit somebody, you could say "I'm terribly sorry". Role-play 'carefully' this situation in pairs.
- (e) What's the best thing to say to yourself if you or somebody make a simple mistake such as overflowing a cup of tea. Role play in pairs.
1. *Oops a daisy.*
  2. *I am such a fool.*
- (f) What's the best answer to say to someone who has made a mistake? For example "I forgot my wallet?" Role play in pairs
1. *You idiot. You are hopeless.*
  2. *Not again.*
  3. *You silly billy.*
  4. *Oh well, never mind*
- (g) What's the best response if someone tells you something they need to do (call their mum) but they haven't done it yet?
1. *Don't tell me, just do it.*
  2. *Stop procrastinating.*
  3. *Well you know what to do.*
- (h) We know our life is not perfect. What good fortune or change do you desire in your life?
- (i) Some people use prayer flags to help bring them good fortune. In which countries do people use prayer flags?
- (j) Match the following colours of prayer flags to their meanings.
- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. blue   | a. fire      |
| 2. white  | b. water     |
| 3. red    | c. sky/space |
| 4. green  | d. air/wind  |
| 5. yellow | e. earth     |
- 
- (k) What else do you know about prayer flags?
1. Strong horse (Ta)
  2. Dragon, garuda, tiger and snow lion
  3. Flaming jewels
  4. Spread goodwill
  5. Wind horse
  6. Fade
- (l) Do you know the divine wind that enabled a room full of people to speak different languages and be a blessing to many (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**one place, sitting, fire, crowd, amazed, how come, perplexed, predicted, pour, call, saved**)

# 107. Winds of Fortune

## Refreshing time

- (a) Do you prefer travelling on a train, taxi, bus, car or plane etc?  
I prefer travelling in/on a ....(**bus/taxi/plane**) **because** it is ....()
1. **quicker, quieter, cheaper** or **cooler**
  2. **more comfortable** or **more convenient**
  3. **more reliable** or **more relaxing** or **refreshing wind (breeze)**
  4. **less crowded**
- (b) Make and describe a paper plane than line up and see which plane flies the furthest. For example: *My plane is ...()*.
1. *attractive looking*
  2. *lightweight and aerodynamic*
  3. *a simple design and easy to fly*
  4. *very sophisticated*
- (c) Describe the wind conditions for today's test flight?
1. Gentle, slight or nice breeze
  2. Strong, gusty or violent wind
- (d) If your plane accidentally hit somebody, you could say "I'm terribly sorry". Role-play 'carefully' this situation in pairs.
- (e) What's the best thing to say to yourself if you or somebody make a simple mistake such as overflowing a cup of tea. Role play in pairs.
1. *Oops a daisy.*
  2. *I am such a fool.*
- (f) What's the best answer to say to someone who has made a mistake? For example "I forgot my wallet?" Role play in pairs
1. *You idiot. You are hopeless.*
  2. *Not again.*
  3. *You silly billy.*
  4. *Oh well, never mind*
- (g) What's the best response if someone tells you something they need to do (call their mum) but they haven't done it yet?
1. *Don't tell me, just do it.*
  2. *Stop procrastinating.*
  3. *Well you know what to do.*
- (h) We know our life is not perfect. What good fortune or change do you desire in your life?
- (i) Some people use prayer flags to help bring them good fortune. In which countries do people use prayer flags?
- (j) Match the following colours of prayer flags to their meanings.
- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. blue   | a. fire      |
| 2. white  | b. water     |
| 3. red    | c. sky/space |
| 4. green  | d. air/wind  |
| 5. yellow | e. earth     |
- 
- (k) What else do you know about prayer flags?
1. Strong horse (Ta)
  2. Dragon, garuda, tiger and snow lion
  3. Flaming jewels
  4. Spread goodwill
  5. Wind horse
  6. Fade
- (l) Do you know the divine wind that enabled a room full of people to speak different languages and be a blessing to many (Jerusalem 33AD)? (**one place, sitting, fire, crowd, amazed, how come, perplexed, predicted, pour, call, saved**)

# 108. Come Change the World

## Brainstorming

- (a) Discuss in pairs about your city. For example:  
*Person 1: Describe your city?*  
*Person 2: It is **big, busy**, alive, entertaining, historical etc...*  
*Person 1: What do you like about your city?*  
*Person 2: In our city we have **lots of parks***  
*The shopping is **great, many shopping centres***
- (b) Answer yes or no. Does your city have enough.....?  
1. parks and gardens. (Yes/No)  
2. public transport  
3. low income housing.  
4. facilities for the disabled.  
5. public **libraries**.
- (c) Make up three sentences using the following verbs in how you can improve your city/country. For example:  
*We have to/need to/should **build** a new library.*  
1. **build**, purchase or provide more  
2. upgrade, update, improve or modernise  
3. clean, provide better/more, plan for
- (d) Use the following ways to make three suggestions on how to improve your city/country.
- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I think we should ...    | build a new library    |
| 2. What about ...           | building a new library |
| 3. What about we ...        | build ...()            |
| 4. Have we considered ...   | building...()          |
| 5. Maybe we should ...      | build ..()             |
| 6. It would be great to ... | build ...()            |
- (e) In a brainstorming session, no suggestions are criticised. Role-play the following brainstorming session in groups of five.  
*Facilitator: The purpose of this meeting is to discuss how we can improve our city. I expect this session will last about 5 minutes. I encourage everybody to give an idea.*  
*Facilitator: Fumiko, let's start with you.*  
*Fumiko: I think we should...( )*  
*All: Great idea/Wow!*  
*Facilitator: Pla, do you have any ideas?*  
*Pla: What about...( )*  
*Facilitator: Hmmm! Interesting. What do you think Jin?*  
*Jin: Have we considered ...()*  
*Facilitator: Never thought of that. What about you Alice, Jose, anybody else?*  
*Jose: We could ...()*  
*Facilitator: Thank you Jose. Thank you everybody for your ideas. I think this time has been very profitable.*
- (f) Share the achievements/struggles of famous people who have tried to improve their country. For example:   
**Ireland:** Saint Patrick and the shamrock  
**China:** Sun Yet-Sun, Chiang Kai-shek or Mao Zedong
- (g) One of Mao Zedong's posters said:   
*Smash the old world/establish a new world.*  
What do you think we need to smash or get rid of to improve our world or ourselves?
- (h) If everybody shared everything they had, the world would be a better place. Do you know the story when a group of people in Jerusalem 33-37AD, **sold everything** they had and then shared everything including **food** and a life giving **message**? (in common, in awe)

# 108. Come Change the World

## Brainstorming

- (a) Discuss in pairs about your city. For example:  
*Person 1: Describe your city?*  
*Person 2: It is **big, busy**, alive, entertaining, historical etc...*  
*Person 1: What do you like about your city?*  
*Person 2: In our city we have **lots of parks***  
*The shopping is **great, many shopping centres***
- (b) Answer yes or no. Does your city have enough.....?  
1. parks and gardens. (Yes/No)  
2. public transport  
3. low income housing.  
4. facilities for the disabled.  
5. public **libraries**.
- (c) Make up three sentences using the following verbs in how you can improve your city/country. For example:  
*We have to/need to/should **build** a new library.*  
1. **build**, purchase or provide more  
2. upgrade, update, improve or modernise  
3. clean, provide better/more, plan for
- (d) Use the following ways to make three suggestions on how to improve your city/country.
- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I think we should ...    | build a new library    |
| 2. What about ...           | building a new library |
| 3. What about we ...        | build ...()            |
| 4. Have we considered ...   | building...()          |
| 5. Maybe we should ...      | build ..()             |
| 6. It would be great to ... | build ...()            |
- (e) In a brainstorming session, no suggestions are criticised. Role-play the following brainstorming session in groups of five.  
*Facilitator: The purpose of this meeting is to discuss how we can improve our city. I expect this session will last about 5 minutes. I encourage everybody to give an idea.*  
*Facilitator: Fumiko, let's start with you.*  
*Fumiko: I think we should...( )*  
*All: Great idea/Wow!*  
*Facilitator: Pla, do you have any ideas?*  
*Pla: What about...( )*  
*Facilitator: Hmmm! Interesting. What do you think Jin?*  
*Jin: Have we considered ...()*  
*Facilitator: Never thought of that. What about you Alice, Jose, anybody else?*  
*Jose: We could ...()*  
*Facilitator: Thank you Jose. Thank you everybody for your ideas. I think this time has been very profitable.*
- (f) Share the achievements/struggles of famous people who have tried to improve their country. For example:   
**Ireland:** Saint Patrick and the shamrock  
**China:** Sun Yet-Sun, Chiang Kai-shek or Mao Zedong
- (g) One of Mao Zedong's posters said:   
*Smash the old world/establish a new world.*  
What do you think we need to smash or get rid of to improve our world or ourselves?
- (h) If everybody shared everything they had, the world would be a better place. Do you know the story when a group of people in Jerusalem 33-37AD, **sold everything** they had and then shared everything including **food** and a life giving **message**? (in common, in awe)

# 109. Power Aid

## Describing Products



- (a) Role play the teacher incorrectly naming different gadget or objects

Teacher: This is a **mobile phone**

Class: No it's not, it's a .....

Teacher: This is an **electronic calculator**

Class: No it's not, it's a watch

- (b) What is a gadget? A gadget is usually ...()

1. **big** or **small**, mobile and attractive (**looks good**)
2. **easy to use** and **carry** or cumbersome
3. electrical or non electrical
4. something with standard or latest technology

- (c) What gadgets do you use around your house? What is the most amazing gadget you have seen?

- (d) In groups of three. think, make and explain a gadget (Teacher provides some materials (For e.g. wire) to make a gadget

1. You have 5 minutes to make a gadget from these materials
2. You have to give the gadget a name
3. You have to explain what it is used for
4. You have to think 5 adjectives to describe your gadget
5. You have to try to promote this gadget. For example:

- a. Good afternoon everybody. This is called .....
- b. This gadget is used for....(cutting) or it's used to... (cut)
- c. It can .....
- d. It's made out of...
- e. It's (adjectives) lightweight, portable, compact etc.....
- f. It has the latest technology. It is easy to use
- g. It is cheaper than ..., easier to use than.. more high tech
- h. You should buy this .... I think you would love it.
- i. Today's special price is ....

- (e) What is one gadget you think will be invented in the future?

- (f) If you could invent a gadget that could do anything, what would it do?

1. Make money
2. Transport you to another place
3. Time travel
4. Cleanse your heart
5. Instant good health
6. Give you muscles
7. Give you a good singing voice
8. Defeat death (Give you eternal live)
9. Freedom from evil spirits

- (g) What gadget, devices or things do you use or cultural traditions do you do to try and reduce or appease the effects of evil spirits in your country?

- (h) Describe the evil spirits in your country. What are they known as?

- (i) Do you believe in the spiritual world?

- (j) In each sentence, who do you think is the most powerful?

- |   |    |              |
|---|----|--------------|
| 1. People                               | or | Animals      |
| 2. People                               | or | Evil Spirits |
| 3. Priests or monks                     | or | Evil Spirits |
| 4. Animals, plants, mountains (weather) | or | God          |
| 5. Priests                              | or | God          |
| 6. People full of the Holy Spirit       | or | Evil Spirits |

- (k) Do you know the story in history (33-36 AD Solomon's Colonnade Jerusalem) how some people had power over evil spirits because of the Holy Spirit inside of them? (**hope, sick, heal, shadow, tormented, all**)

# 109. Power Aid

## Describing Products



- (a) Role play the teacher incorrectly naming different gadget or objects

Teacher: This is a **mobile phone**

Class: No it's not, it's a .....

Teacher: This is an **electronic calculator**

Class: No it's not, it's a watch

- (b) What is a gadget? A gadget is usually ...()

1. **big** or **small**, mobile and attractive (**looks good**)
2. **easy to use** and **carry** or cumbersome
3. electrical or non electrical
4. something with standard or latest technology

- (c) What gadgets do you use around your house? What is the most amazing gadget you have seen?

- (d) In groups of three. think, make and explain a gadget (Teacher provides some materials (For e.g. wire) to make a gadget

1. You have 5 minutes to make a gadget from these materials
2. You have to give the gadget a name
3. You have to explain what it is used for
4. You have to think 5 adjectives to describe your gadget
5. You have to try to promote this gadget. For example:

- a. Good afternoon everybody. This is called .....
- b. This gadget is used for....(cutting) or it's used to... (cut)
- c. It can .....
- d. It's made out of...
- e. It's (adjectives) lightweight, portable, compact etc.....
- f. It has the latest technology. It is easy to use
- g. It is cheaper than ..., easier to use than.. more high tech
- h. You should buy this .... I think you would love it.
- i. Today's special price is ....

- (e) What is one gadget you think will be invented in the future?

- (f) If you could invent a gadget that could do anything, what would it do?

1. Make money
2. Transport you to another place
3. Time travel
4. Cleanse your heart
5. Instant good health
6. Give you muscles
7. Give you a good singing voice
8. Defeat death (Give you eternal live)
9. Freedom from evil spirits

- (g) What gadget, devices or things do you use or cultural traditions do you do to try and reduce or appease the effects of evil spirits in your country?

- (h) Describe the evil spirits in your country. What are they known as?

- (i) Do you believe in the spiritual world?

- (j) In each sentence, who do you think is the most powerful?

- |   |    |              |
|---|----|--------------|
| 1. People                               | or | Animals      |
| 2. People                               | or | Evil Spirits |
| 3. Priests or monks                     | or | Evil Spirits |
| 4. Animals, plants, mountains (weather) | or | God          |
| 5. Priests                              | or | God          |
| 6. People full of the Holy Spirit       | or | Evil Spirits |

- (k) Do you know the story in history (33-36 AD Solomon's Colonnade Jerusalem) how some people had power over evil spirits because of the Holy Spirit inside of them? (**hope, sick, heal, shadow, tormented, all**)

# 110. Born to be Bad

## We are made special

- (a) What **elementary, high school, university** did you go to?
- (b) When you were at school, were you ... ?
1. the **teacher's** pet, sometimes sit at **teacher's desk**.
  2. just a normal kid, who sat in the front/back of the **classroom**
  3. a spoilt brat
  4. a little bit mischievous, **often** went to the **Principals office**
  5. **very naughty**, often made to **sit in the corner**
  6. kind, polite and very likeable **student**
- (c) What is the best way to describe someone who misbehaves?
1. He is a naughty boy, not **kind**, not **friendly**
  2. He is an idiot.
  3. He sometimes does naughty things.
- (d) It is important to separate the person from the action. You can change your action but you can't change a person. Choose which of following actions refer to the person or action.
- Person 1: Your son is very naughty! He is a naughty boy.*  
*Person 2: Your son is a nice boy but sometimes he is naughty.*  
*Person 3: Your son did a naughty thing when he broke the vase.*
- (e) Respond to an adult who calls your daughter a naughty girl.
- Adult: Did you spill this food on the floor, you are a very naughty girl.*  
*You: Excuse me, you shouldn't call somebody naughty, it is better to say they have a done the wrong thing.*
- (f) Reword this example when your son accidentally breaks a vase!
- Mum: Who broke the vase?*  
*Child: I did.*  
*Mum: You are a very naughty boy.*
- (g) It is not effective if you are called naughty, hopeless, idiot or stupid. It is generally not effective when someone yells at you. Role play the best way to respond to someone yelling at you.
- Person 1: (Yelling) You have to clean up! Clean it up now!*  
*Person 2: I'm not going to listen to you while you yell.*  
*Person 1: (Yelling) You are so lazy, you never clean up! What a mess.! Clean up this mess now!*  
*Person 3: Excuse me, there is no need to yell.*
- (h) Do you know any people from your culture who experienced a change of loyalty for the better? For example:

**China:** A man who experienced change: The story of General Yueh Fei who learned from his mistakes by his mother



### Vocabulary

1. Song Dynasty
2. Field marshal
3. Disgusted and lectured
4. First duty
5. Tattoo.

*Jin zhōng bào guó - "serve the country with the utmost loyalty" Return my territory Return my rivers and mountains.*

- (i) What would you most like to change about yourself?
- (j) In your life, who has had the biggest influence on your life?
- (k) Do you know the story how a very loyal and dedicated man experienced great change in his life on the road to Damascus

# 110. Born to be Bad

## We are made special

- (a) What **elementary, high school, university** did you go to?
- (b) When you were at school, were you ... ?
1. the **teacher's** pet, sometimes sit at **teacher's desk**.
  2. just a normal kid, who sat in the front/back of the **classroom**
  3. a spoilt brat
  4. a little bit mischievous, **often** went to the **Principals office**
  5. **very naughty**, often made to **sit in the corner**
  6. kind, polite and very likeable **student**
- (c) What is the best way to describe someone who misbehaves?
1. He is a naughty boy, not **kind**, not **friendly**
  2. He is an idiot.
  3. He sometimes does naughty things.
- (d) It is important to separate the person from the action. You can change your action but you can't change a person. Choose which of following actions refer to the person or action.
- Person 1: Your son is very naughty! He is a naughty boy.*  
*Person 2: Your son is a nice boy but sometimes he is naughty.*  
*Person 3: Your son did a naughty thing when he broke the vase.*
- (e) Respond to an adult who calls your daughter a naughty girl.
- Adult: Did you spill this food on the floor, you are a very naughty girl.*  
*You: Excuse me, you shouldn't call somebody naughty, it is better to say they have a done the wrong thing.*
- (f) Reword this example when your son accidentally breaks a vase!
- Mum: Who broke the vase?*  
*Child: I did.*  
*Mum: You are a very naughty boy.*
- (g) It is not effective if you are called naughty, hopeless, idiot or stupid. It is generally not effective when someone yells at you. Role play the best way to respond to someone yelling at you.
- Person 1: (Yelling) You have to clean up! Clean it up now!*  
*Person 2: I'm not going to listen to you while you yell.*  
*Person 1: (Yelling) You are so lazy, you never clean up! What a mess.! Clean up this mess now!*  
*Person 3: Excuse me, there is no need to yell.*
- (h) Do you know any people from your culture who experienced a change of loyalty for the better? For example:

**China:** A man who experienced change: The story of General Yueh Fei who learned from his mistakes by his mother



### Vocabulary

1. Song Dynasty
2. Field marshal
3. Disgusted and lectured
4. First duty
5. Tattoo.

*Jin zhōng bào guó - "serve the country with the utmost loyalty" Return my territory Return my rivers and mountains.*

- (i) What would you most like to change about yourself?
- (j) In your life, who has had the biggest influence on your life?
- (k) Do you know the story how a very loyal and dedicated man experienced great change in his life on the road to Damascus

# 111. The Road to Heaven

## Travel: Silk Road



- (a) Have you ever been backpacking or hitchhiking? Role play a driver picking up a hitchhiker in front of the class

Driver: (**Stops his car** and winds down the window)  
Where are you going?

Hitchhiker: I am going to ... ( ) (place)

Driver: Hop in

Driver: Why are you going there?

Hitchhiker: I am going to ... ( ) (reason) (to see my sister)  
(Driver **starts** driving)

Driver: There's a café, **I need** to get a drink (make an excuse to stop the car) ... (Go to the toilet)

(Change roles): The Hitchhiker becomes the new driver and a new person is the hitchhiker.

- (b) Share in pairs the longest journey you have been on.

Person 1: **Last year** I travelled from Bangkok to Kunming

Person 2: How were the road conditions? (rough, dusty)  
How was the flight? (bumpy, comfortable, quick)  
How was the accommodation? (cozy, luxurious)  
How were the people? (very welcoming)  
How was the scenery? (picturesque, barren)

- (c) What's the best and worst thing that has happened to you while travelling?

- (d) Role play a traveller getting some help from a local person.

Local: Excuse me, are you ok?

Traveler: I'm feeling a little confused. I can't understand this bus timetable. I'm trying to get to Chengdu. Could you help me.

Local: Sure, show me your timetable

**Bus Timetable: Xian to Chengdu**

Departs Sunday 11AM Xian Town Hall. Cost CNY 400

Traveler: When does it leave? Can you tell me when it leaves?

Local: The bus leaves on Sunday.

Traveler: What time does it leave. Can you tell me what ... ( )?

Local: It leaves at 11 in the morning

Traveler: Where does it leave from? Can you tell me ... ( )?

Local: It leaves from Xian Town Hall

Traveler: How much does it cost? Can you ... ( )?

Local: It will cost you CNY 400

- (e) One of the most amazing journeys in Asia is called 'The Silk Road'. Share as a class what you know about this road.

- (f) Share about the influence these people had on trade on Silk Road and how trade on Silk Road influenced many countries.

**China:** Zhang Qian. He was wise and contextualised. Two ventures along silk road

1st venture: 138 BC; (100 men) Captured

2nd venture: 119 BC; (300 men) Negotiation and trade (Alfalfa seeds)

- (g) "The Silk Road" was sometimes called 'The Road to Heaven' due to items of trade (gold) and the different nationalities people met. What do you think heaven would be like and what do you think is the road to heaven?



- (h) Do you know the story of the Ethiopian man (40AD) who found his road to heaven, not in a temple but while travelling on a desert road to Gaza? (**One man heard, listened, went, ... asked, explained, now, nothing**)

# 111. The Road to Heaven

## Travel: Silk Road



- (a) Have you ever been backpacking or hitchhiking? Role play a driver picking up a hitchhiker in front of the class

Driver: (**Stops his car** and winds down the window)  
Where are you going?

Hitchhiker: I am going to ... ( ) (place)

Driver: Hop in

Driver: Why are you going there?

Hitchhiker: I am going to ... ( ) (reason) (to see my sister)  
(Driver **starts** driving)

Driver: There's a café, **I need** to get a drink (make an excuse to stop the car) ... (Go to the toilet)

(Change roles): The Hitchhiker becomes the new driver and a new person is the hitchhiker.

- (b) Share in pairs the longest journey you have been on.

Person 1: **Last year** I travelled from Bangkok to Kunming

Person 2: How were the road conditions? (rough, dusty)  
How was the flight? (bumpy, comfortable, quick)  
How was the accommodation? (cozy, luxurious)  
How were the people? (very welcoming)  
How was the scenery? (picturesque, barren)

- (c) What's the best and worst thing that has happened to you while travelling?

- (d) Role play a traveller getting some help from a local person.

Local: Excuse me, are you ok?

Traveler: I'm feeling a little confused. I can't understand this bus timetable. I'm trying to get to Chengdu. Could you help me.

Local: Sure, show me your timetable

**Bus Timetable: Xian to Chengdu**

Departs Sunday 11AM Xian Town Hall. Cost CNY 400

Traveler: When does it leave? Can you tell me when it leaves?

Local: The bus leaves on Sunday.

Traveler: What time does it leave. Can you tell me what ... ( )?

Local: It leaves at 11 in the morning

Traveler: Where does it leave from? Can you tell me ... ( )?

Local: It leaves from Xian Town Hall

Traveler: How much does it cost? Can you ... ( )?

Local: It will cost you CNY 400

- (e) One of the most amazing journeys in Asia is called 'The Silk Road'. Share as a class what you know about this road.

- (f) Share about the influence these people had on trade on Silk Road and how trade on Silk Road influenced many countries.

**China:** Zhang Qian. He was wise and contextualised. Two ventures along silk road

1st venture: 138 BC; (100 men) Captured

2nd venture: 119 BC; (300 men) Negotiation and trade (Alfalfa seeds)

- (g) "The Silk Road" was sometimes called 'The Road to Heaven' due to items of trade (gold) and the different nationalities people met. What do you think heaven would be like and what do you think is the road to heaven?



- (h) Do you know the story of the Ethiopian man (40AD) who found his road to heaven, not in a temple but while travelling on a desert road to Gaza? (**One man heard, listened, went, ... asked, explained, now, nothing**)

# 112. We are One!

## Group Work

- (a) Describe the **bridges** that are in these pictures.  
(**long, high**, multi level, unique, span, **many lanes**. from..to.)
- (b) In groups of three, you have six minutes to **make** a bridge using drinking **straws, scissors** and some **tape**.
- (c) How did you get along as a group making the bridges?  
1. We got along really well. Everyone was very helpful  
2. Not so good. We had some conflict.  
3. There was a lot of friction  
4. We gelled well together
- (d) Name two advantages/disadvantages working in a group and share about a time you were in one of these groups.  
1. **Work, study, holiday** (tour) or religious group  
2. Shared accomdation, sports team or recreation group
- (e) Share with a partner which of the following are true for you.  
1. **I enjoy** being my own boss **or** I prefer working for someone  
2. **I like** working by myself **or** I prefer working in a team
- (f) Read through the following four stages of group dynamics.

Person 1: **1. Forming** – when you first move in or join a new group “The honeymoon stage”. Everyone is nice to each other and excited about the new group/class.

Person 2: **2. Storming** – the honeymoon is over and people begin to notice annoying habits or personality differences.

Person 3: **3. Norming** – if people have not left during the storming period, they may just ignore or “put up with” others, but they don’t get too close to them.

Person 4: **4. Performing** – if people learn to accept each other’s differences and appreciate others, then the group becomes close and lifelong friendships are formed.

- (g) Read the above passage again, cover your work, think about and discuss what are the stages of group dynamics. Have your experienced these group dynamics?
- (h) In pairs, role-play a group not performing so well.

Harry: How’s your new team going?

Dorothy: It started well but now people are getting angry and bickering with each other.

Harry: Don’t worry, that’s normal when working in a group. Have you heard of the four stages of group dynamics. First there’s the honeymoon stage, it’s called forming. Everybody gets along well but after a while people start to notice differences

- (i) How can groups get along better? Do you know any stories of group dynamics that improved by groups recognizing what they had in common? For example:

**China:** Cao Zhi and his Seven Steps  
Poem: 220 AD *How could we be enemies if we are from the same root.* Share what you know about the Cao Cao’s sons (Cao Pi who drank and swore and detained the enemy and Cao Zhi) and how they moved from storming to performing.



**World:** A man named Peter discovered that Jews and Italians (Cornelius) had more in common then he could have ever imagined (Caesarea and Joppa 33-40AD). (**fear (big), kind, prayer, vision, saw, heard, hungry, man, Spirit, baptize, surprise**)

# 112. We are One!

## Group Work

- (a) Describe the **bridges** that are in these pictures.  
(**long, high**, multi level, unique, span, **many lanes**. from..to.)
- (b) In groups of three, you have six minutes to **make** a bridge using drinking **straws, scissors** and some **tape**.
- (c) How did you get along as a group making the bridges?  
1. We got along really well. Everyone was very helpful  
2. Not so good. We had some conflict.  
3. There was a lot of friction  
4. We gelled well together
- (d) Name two advantages/disadvantages working in a group and share about a time you were in one of these groups.  
1. **Work, study, holiday** (tour) or religious group  
2. Shared accomdation, sports team or recreation group
- (e) Share with a partner which of the following are true for you.  
1. **I enjoy** being my own boss **or** I prefer working for someone  
2. **I like** working by myself **or** I prefer working in a team
- (f) Read through the following four stages of group dynamics.

Person 1: **1. Forming** – when you first move in or join a new group “The honeymoon stage”. Everyone is nice to each other and excited about the new group/class.

Person 2: **2. Storming** – the honeymoon is over and people begin to notice annoying habits or personality differences.

Person 3: **3. Norming** – if people have not left during the storming period, they may just ignore or “put up with” others, but they don’t get too close to them.

Person 4: **4. Performing** – if people learn to accept each other’s differences and appreciate others, then the group becomes close and lifelong friendships are formed.

- (g) Read the above passage again, cover your work, think about and discuss what are the stages of group dynamics. Have your experienced these group dynamics?
- (h) In pairs, role-play a group not performing so well.

Harry: How’s your new team going?

Dorothy: It started well but now people are getting angry and bickering with each other.

Harry: Don’t worry, that’s normal when working in a group. Have you heard of the four stages of group dynamics. First there’s the honeymoon stage, it’s called forming. Everybody gets along well but after a while people start to notice differences

- (i) How can groups get along better? Do you know any stories of group dynamics that improved by groups recognizing what they had in common? For example:

**China:** Cao Zhi and his Seven Steps  
Poem: 220 AD *How could we be enemies if we are from the same root.* Share what you know about the Cao Cao’s sons (Cao Pi who drank and swore and detained the enemy and Cao Zhi) and how they moved from storming to performing.



**World:** A man named Peter discovered that Jews and Italians (Cornelius) had more in common then he could have ever imagined (Caesarea and Joppa 33-40AD). (**fear (big), kind, prayer, vision, saw, heard, hungry, man, Spirit, baptize, surprise**)

# 113. What Now?

## Coach Talk

- (a) Play charades for different **team sports** and take turns guessing.
- (b) What sports do you like to watch or play? Have you ever been a **supporter, player, coach, captain, manager** or **referee**? Was your team **successful** (win/lose)?
- (c) What do you like to drink to give you energy? Look at half a glass of water and describe what you see. Which of the following best describes you?
1. I am a **half glass full** person (an optimist).
  2. I am a half glass **empty** person (a pessimist).
- (d) 90 per cent of a message is non-verbal. The teacher models all the non verbal cues below then calls out one cue (positive or negative) and everybody must demonstrate this cue
1. Stance
  2. Walking style
  3. Posture
  4. Use of personal space
  5. Facial expressions
  6. Gestures
  7. Tone of voice
  8. Eye contact
- 
- (e) Which of the following words/sentences are uplifting (U) for a team who look dejected during a game.
1. Come on, don't give up, stand tall, keep up the chat,. (U)
  2. Give it away, give up, it's hopeless, you're pathetic (Not U)
  3. Stay calm, stay focused, let's aim to kick the next goal
  4. No need to panic, walk tall, shoulders back, talk it up
  5. We can't win, it's all over.
  6. Hang in there, keep your head up, keep going
  7. Stay positive, believe in yourself, let's try something different, **keep going, well done.**
- (f) In groups of five, cheer up some of your teammates, who at half time are badly losing a football game.  
*Player 1: Come on, don't give up.*
- (g) Share a time in your life when it was easy/difficult to be positive or negative.
- (h) Do you know any times in your culture when it was difficult for people to be positive or when people responded positively to a negative situation? For example:
- China:** Shenyang, 18 September 1931 (Mukden incident).  
Small deception that instigated a premeditated war
- Choose which of the following pieces of information are true (T) or false (F).
1. The Southern Manchuria Railway (SMR) was sabotaged by the Japanese Army
  2. The Chinese soldiers blew up a bridge (Liǔtiáo) on the Japanese controlled Southern Manchurian Railway.
  3. Japanese soldiers were swimming in a swimming pool when attacked by a bomb.
  4. 500 Chinese soldiers and 2 Japanese soldiers were killed.
- (i) What happened in China after this event? How do people in China remember this day?
- (j) Do you know the story about two innocent men who were stripped, beaten and thrown into a jail by a mob 2000 years ago (50AD Philippi Greece)? The surprising thing in this story is how optimistically these prisoners reacted despite a terrible situation. (**money, name, come, lie, strip, beat, jail, inner, feet, hands, sing, open, here, what, family**)

# 113. What Now?

## Coach Talk

- (a) Play charades for different **team sports** and take turns guessing.
- (b) What sports do you like to watch or play? Have you ever been a **supporter, player, coach, captain, manager** or **referee**? Was your team **successful** (win/lose)?
- (c) What do you like to drink to give you energy? Look at half a glass of water and describe what you see. Which of the following best describes you?
1. I am a **half glass full** person (an optimist).
  2. I am a half glass **empty** person (a pessimist).
- (d) 90 per cent of a message is non-verbal. The teacher models all the non verbal cues below then calls out one cue (positive or negative) and everybody must demonstrate this cue
1. Stance
  2. Walking style
  3. Posture
  4. Use of personal space
  5. Facial expressions
  6. Gestures
  7. Tone of voice
  8. Eye contact
- 
- (e) Which of the following words/sentences are uplifting (U) for a team who look dejected during a game.
1. Come on, don't give up, stand tall, keep up the chat,. (U)
  2. Give it away, give up, it's hopeless, you're pathetic (Not U)
  3. Stay calm, stay focused, let's aim to kick the next goal
  4. No need to panic, walk tall, shoulders back, talk it up
  5. We can't win, it's all over.
  6. Hang in there, keep your head up, keep going
  7. Stay positive, believe in yourself, let's try something different, **keep going, well done.**
- (f) In groups of five, cheer up some of your teammates, who at half time are badly losing a football game.  
*Player 1: Come on, don't give up.*
- (g) Share a time in your life when it was easy/difficult to be positive or negative.
- (h) Do you know any times in your culture when it was difficult for people to be positive or when people responded positively to a negative situation? For example:
- China:** Shenyang, 18 September 1931 (Mukden incident).  
Small deception that instigated a premeditated war
- Choose which of the following pieces of information are true (T) or false (F).
1. The Southern Manchuria Railway (SMR) was sabotaged by the Japanese Army
  2. The Chinese soldiers blew up a bridge (Liǔtiáo) on the Japanese controlled Southern Manchurian Railway.
  3. Japanese soldiers were swimming in a swimming pool when attacked by a bomb.
  4. 500 Chinese soldiers and 2 Japanese soldiers were killed.
- (i) What happened in China after this event? How do people in China remember this day?
- (j) Do you know the story about two innocent men who were stripped, beaten and thrown into a jail by a mob 2000 years ago (50AD Philippi Greece)? The surprising thing in this story is how optimistically these prisoners reacted despite a terrible situation. (**money, name, come, lie, strip, beat, jail, inner, feet, hands, sing, open, here, what, family**)

# 114. Don't Get too Close

# 114. Don't Get too Close

## Physical boundaries

- (a) Do you like standing or sitting close to people?
- (b) Choose a partner and **stand** 3 metres apart. Ask your partner to **walk** towards you and tell him/her to **stop** when you start to feel **uncomfortable** (get the heebie jeebies). Have you ever experienced somebody **sitting** or standing to **close** to you?
- (c) In pairs, share about a time when you got one of the following;
1. goose bumps
  2. the butterflies (nervous)
  3. the warm fuzzy wuzzies
  4. the heebie jeebies
- (d) In pairs, role play some things you could say to someone who comes too close to you. (One person comes to close)
1. Excuse me, could you move back a little bit? Thanks. (gesturing them to move back)
  2. Excuse me, could you step back a little bit? I need my personal space.
  3. Give me some air. (Waving your arm)
  4. Excuse me! (In a loud, unimpressed voice)

## Psychological boundaries

- (e) Change partners and practice saying "no" to a nice request using one of the following responses.
- Wen: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?  
Mario: (Choose One)
1. I'm sorry but I have another engagement. (Only appointment if you are going to the doctor or dentist etc).
  2. I'm tied up/busy this weekend. Maybe another time.

- (f) Role play saying no to an inappropriate request.
- Stranger: (A person asks a stranger) Can you lend me 500 dollars?  
Person 1: Excuse me, I don't think your request is appropriate! **or** Funny guy! or Funny girl!

## Spiritual 'Divine' Boundaries

- (g) Can we cross the boundary between earth and heaven by our own means?
- (h) Do you any stories where divine boundaries have been set or ignored?  
For example:



**China:** The boundaries set by he Jade Emperor for all his daughters in the tale of Double Seven Day.

### Vocabulary

ox herder stole  
bridge of magpies

**World:** A man named Paul visited Athens (50AD) and felt so distraught because people were trying to cross divine boundaries by their own inappropriate or impossible



means. (**wait, saw, many, new, stood up, foreign, world, build, life, breath, gold, divine, rose, near, repent**)

## Physical boundaries

- (a) Do you like standing or sitting close to people?
- (b) Choose a partner and **stand** 3 metres apart. Ask your partner to **walk** towards you and tell him/her to **stop** when you start to feel **uncomfortable** (get the heebie jeebies). Have you ever experienced somebody **sitting** or standing to **close** to you?
- (c) In pairs, share about a time when you got one of the following;
1. goose bumps
  2. the butterflies (nervous)
  3. the warm fuzzy wuzzies
  4. the heebie jeebies
- (d) In pairs, role play some things you could say to someone who comes too close to you. (One person comes to close)
1. Excuse me, could you move back a little bit? Thanks. (gesturing them to move back)
  2. Excuse me, could you step back a little bit? I need my personal space.
  3. Give me some air. (Waving your arm)
  4. Excuse me! (In a loud, unimpressed voice)

## Psychological boundaries

- (e) Change partners and practice saying "no" to a nice request using one of the following responses.
- Wen: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?  
Mario: (Choose One)
1. I'm sorry but I have another engagement. (Only appointment if you are going to the doctor or dentist etc).
  2. I'm tied up/busy this weekend. Maybe another time.

- (f) Role play saying no to an inappropriate request.
- Stranger: (A person asks a stranger) Can you lend me 500 dollars?  
Person 1: Excuse me, I don't think your request is appropriate! **or** Funny guy! or Funny girl!

## Spiritual 'Divine' Boundaries

- (g) Can we cross the boundary between earth and heaven by our own means?
- (h) Do you any stories where divine boundaries have been set or ignored?  
For example:



**China:** The boundaries set by he Jade Emperor for all his daughters in the tale of Double Seven Day.

### Vocabulary

ox herder stole  
bridge of magpies

**World:** A man named Paul visited Athens (50AD) and felt so distraught because people were trying to cross divine boundaries by their own inappropriate or impossible



means. (**wait, saw, many, new, stood up, foreign, world, build, life, breath, gold, divine, rose, near, repent**)

# 115. A Shining Light

## Cleaning Duties

- (a) Have you ever stayed in a **hotel**? Have you ever had any problems staying in a hotel? Dramatise a problem you could find in a hotel room. For e.g.
1. The **bed** was too **hard**.
  2. The **window** didn't **open** or the **television** didn't **work**

- (b) Share a time your experienced one of following situations.
1. You got lost
  2. You had trouble filling out a **form**
  3. You forget to fill up the **radiator**
  4. You had to fill in for your friend at work.
  5. You couldn't remember where you put something,
  6. You forgot to take out the **rubbish**
  7. You nodded off to **sleep** when somebody was speaking.

- (c) Mime an action below and students have to guess what it is
- |                 |                 |                  |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| fill up         | <b>fill</b> out | fill in          | put out        |
| <b>bring</b> In | <b>take</b> out | put in           | take off       |
| <b>turn</b> on  | <b>put</b> on   | <b>clean</b> out | <b>wash</b> up |
| <b>hang</b> out | plug in         | <b>pick</b> up   | put on         |

- (d) In pairs, discuss the differences between line 2 and 3.
1. The rubbish is collected on Thursdays (Can you put out..)
  2. Don't forget to put out the rubbish
  3. (Remember to) Don't forget to put it out

- (e) Give some advice to your friend who is going to look after your house while you are away. For example:

*Homeowner.*      *I have a new computer. (statement)*  
*Don't forget to **turn off** the computer.*  
*Don't forget to **turn it off**.*

- (f) Looking after someone's house is one way you can help a friend. When was the last time you helped a friend?

- (g) A good friend can be an inspiration to you. Who has helped or inspired you in your life?

- (h) Do you have any towers or structures in your country that were built to inspire people? For example:



**China:** The Porcelain Tower of Nanjing: Built to be seen

### Vocabulary

"Bao'ensi"	gratitude	porcelain	15th Cent
constructed	Taiping	Rebellion	1801
struck	lightening	civil war	deny

- (i) What news would inspire you? For example:
1. A compliment from somebody important
  2. Being forgiven or loved by somebody
  3. A true story of overcoming adversity (big problems)
  4. A cure for your sickness had been discovered
- (j) Do you know the story how in one night in Turkey 55AD, many people were listening to inspirational good news until something dramatically happened that inspired them to continue listening for many more hours? (**next day, midnight, meet, young man, sleep, fell out, jumped, broke, sun, up**)

# 115. A Shining Light

## Cleaning Duties

- (a) Have you ever stayed in a **hotel**? Have you ever had any problems staying in a hotel? Dramatise a problem you could find in a hotel room. For e.g.
1. The **bed** was too **hard**.
  2. The **window** didn't **open** or the **television** didn't **work**

- (b) Share a time your experienced one of following situations.
1. You got lost
  2. You had trouble filling out a **form**
  3. You forget to fill up the **radiator**
  4. You had to fill in for your friend at work.
  5. You couldn't remember where you put something,
  6. You forgot to take out the **rubbish**
  7. You nodded off to **sleep** when somebody was speaking.

- (c) Mime an action below and students have to guess what it is
- |                 |                 |                  |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| fill up         | <b>fill</b> out | fill in          | put out        |
| <b>bring</b> In | <b>take</b> out | put in           | take off       |
| <b>turn</b> on  | <b>put</b> on   | <b>clean</b> out | <b>wash</b> up |
| <b>hang</b> out | plug in         | <b>pick</b> up   | put on         |

- (d) In pairs, discuss the differences between line 2 and 3.
1. The rubbish is collected on Thursdays (Can you put out..)
  2. Don't forget to put out the rubbish
  3. (Remember to) Don't forget to put it out

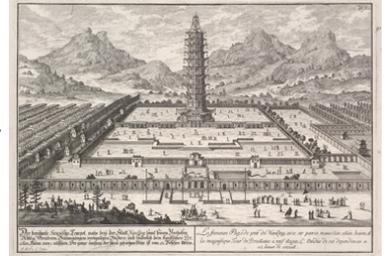
- (e) Give some advice to your friend who is going to look after your house while you are away. For example:

*Homeowner.*      *I have a new computer. (statement)*  
*Don't forget to **turn off** the computer.*  
*Don't forget to **turn it off**.*

- (f) Looking after someone's house is one way you can help a friend. When was the last time you helped a friend?

- (g) A good friend can be an inspiration to you. Who has helped or inspired you in your life?

- (h) Do you have any towers or structures in your country that were built to inspire people? For example:



**China:** The Porcelain Tower of Nanjing: Built to be seen

### Vocabulary

"Bao'ensi"	gratitude	porcelain	15th Cent
constructed	Taiping	Rebellion	1801
struck	lightening	civil war	deny

- (i) What news would inspire you? For example:
1. A compliment from somebody important
  2. Being forgiven or loved by somebody
  3. A true story of overcoming adversity (big problems)
  4. A cure for your sickness had been discovered
- (j) Do you know the story how in one night in Turkey 55AD, many people were listening to inspirational good news until something dramatically happened that inspired them to continue listening for many more hours? (**next day, midnight, meet, young man, sleep, fell out, jumped, broke, sun, up**)

# 116. No Regrets

## Rewording Regrets

- (a) Everybody has to ask each other **How old are you?** and then form a line youngest to oldest.
- (b) Draw a time line of your life and mark and share the following.
- Two most significant things that have happened in your life. (**work/study, meeting, sickness, holiday, listened, saw**)
  - A time you experienced a most difficult challenge.
  - A time you did/didn't do something you sometimes regret.
- (c) Which of the following expressions of regret are the more proactive in dealing with regret?
- I could have gone to Canada but I chose (decided) to go to Australia. It was the right decision at the time.
  - I should have gone to Canada.
  - I wish had gone to Canada
- (d) It's not a good idea to use the word "regret" or 'should have'. Help correct a friend who expresses his/her regret.

Sun: I really regret not accepting the job in Wuhan. I should have taken that job.

Li: Sun, I know it is hard to accept but it's not helpful for you to use 'should have' or 'regret'. It would be better if you said I could have accepted...() but ..()

- (e) Write down and reword the regrets in your life.
- (f) Sometimes we can start something that is quite challenging but after a while we might regret that we had ever started. Can you share about another challenging thing or event you have attempted?



- (g) Mao Zedong swam across the Yangtze river 3 times. Why did Mao Zedong swim across the Yangtze? (Choose the most correct answer)
- To get fit.
  - To prepare for the Olympics.
  - To show he was a superman.
  - To be baptized
  - To show that you don't have to fear big things.

- (h) Do you know what was so significant about his 1966 swim?
- (i) To swim across the Yangtze *requires a lot of* (nouns) courage, determination, energy and perseverance. To swim across the Yangtze, you need to be very ... (adjectives)
- courage or **courageous**
  - energy or energetic
  - persevering or perseverance
  - determined or determination
- (j) Can you share a similar story of someone who attempted an activity that at times they might have regretted? For example:

**World:** A well known story of a man named Paul who advised the captain of a **ship** near Crete (60AD) not to **sail** into possible hurricane force **winds** which he regretfully did. (**sea, late, drive, threw, courage, last night, believe, rocks, 0, 276, eat, swim**)

# 116. No Regrets

## Rewording Regrets

- (a) Everybody has to ask each other **How old are you?** and then form a line youngest to oldest.
- (b) Draw a time line of your life and mark and share the following.
- Two most significant things that have happened in your life. (**work/study, meeting, sickness, holiday, listened, saw**)
  - A time you experienced a most difficult challenge.
  - A time you did/didn't do something you sometimes regret.
- (c) Which of the following expressions of regret are the more proactive in dealing with regret?
- I could have gone to Canada but I chose (decided) to go to Australia. It was the right decision at the time.
  - I should have gone to Canada.
  - I wish had gone to Canada
- (d) It's not a good idea to use the word "regret" or 'should have'. Help correct a friend who expresses his/her regret.

Sun: I really regret not accepting the job in Wuhan. I should have taken that job.

Li: Sun, I know it is hard to accept but it's not helpful for you to use 'should have' or 'regret'. It would be better if you said I could have accepted...() but ..()

- (e) Write down and reword the regrets in your life.
- (f) Sometimes we can start something that is quite challenging but after a while we might regret that we had ever started. Can you share about another challenging thing or event you have attempted?



- (g) Mao Zedong swam across the Yangtze river 3 times. Why did Mao Zedong swim across the Yangtze? (Choose the most correct answer)
- To get fit.
  - To prepare for the Olympics.
  - To show he was a superman.
  - To be baptized
  - To show that you don't have to fear big things.

- (h) Do you know what was so significant about his 1966 swim?
- (i) To swim across the Yangtze *requires a lot of* (nouns) courage, determination, energy and perseverance. To swim across the Yangtze, you need to be very ... (adjectives)
- courage or **courageous**
  - energy or energetic
  - persevering or perseverance
  - determined or determination
- (j) Can you share a similar story of someone who attempted an activity that at times they might have regretted? For example:

**World:** A well known story of a man named Paul who advised the captain of a **ship** near Crete (60AD) not to **sail** into possible hurricane force **winds** which he regretfully did. (**sea, late, drive, threw, courage, last night, believe, rocks, 0, 276, eat, swim**)

# 117. Love is in the Air

## Unconditional Love

- (a) Everybody takes a daisy like flower and then proceeds to take one petal off the daisy at a time while saying these sayings.

*She loves me  
She loves me not  
She loves me a little.  
She loves me a lot*

- (b) Love has many meanings. Share with a partner the following.

1. I love eating ... (food/dish)
2. I love ... (pet, hobby)

- (c) What do you love about your country? For example:

*In China I love ...*

1. the history
2. the **mountain** ranges
3. the friendliness of the **people**
4. The cities



- (d) What do you love about other countries?

1. In Australia, I love the relaxed lifestyle
2. In Canada I love the blue skies
3. In Italy I love the romantic *al fresco* restaurants

- (e) How do you show your love to your friends and family?

1. I give them **chocolate** or a **gift** (True or not true)
2. I give them a hug, **high five** or pat on the back (physical touch)
3. I **cook** them dinner (action)
4. I **call** them or keep in contact with them
5. I tell them I love them.
6. I **give** them a compliment (Practice in pairs)
  - a. You look amazing!
  - b. I'm so glad you are my...(wife)
  - c. You are so kind
  - d. Thanks for helping me

- (f) Change partners and share the following information.

1. I am very passionate about ...()
2. My friend is romantic because he/she ...()
3. I am committed to a relationship with my ...()
4. Some peoples say I am very ...() (Choose one)  
*gentle kind hearted affectionate kind and loving*

- (g) Share any famous love stories from your country? For e.g

**China:** Double seven day  
**China:** Liu Guljiang and Xu Calquing.

- (h) Read what many people around the world read at weddings to express their unconditional commitment in marriage.

- 1: **Love is kind and patient, never jealous, boastful, proud or rude.**
- 2: **Love isn't selfish or quick tempered.**
- 3: **Love doesn't keep a record of wrongs that others do.**
- 4: **Love rejoices in the truth, but not in evil.**
- 5: **Love is always supportive, loyal, hopeful, and trusting.**
- 6: **Love never fails!**

- (i) Replace the word **love** with your **name** and reread the text.

1. Do you think this type of love is possible?
2. What are the steps for being able to love as written above?

# 117. Love is in the Air

## Unconditional Love

- (a) Everybody takes a daisy like flower and then proceeds to take one petal off the daisy at a time while saying these sayings.

*She loves me  
She loves me not  
She loves me a little.  
She loves me a lot*

- (b) Love has many meanings. Share with a partner the following.

1. I love eating ... (food/dish)
2. I love ... (pet, hobby)

- (c) What do you love about your country? For example:

*In China I love ...*

1. the history
2. the **mountain** ranges
3. the friendliness of the **people**
4. The cities



- (d) What do you love about other countries?

1. In Australia, I love the relaxed lifestyle
2. In Canada I love the blue skies
3. In Italy I love the romantic *al fresco* restaurants

- (e) How do you show your love to your friends and family?

1. I give them **chocolate** or a **gift** (True or not true)
2. I give them a hug, **high five** or pat on the back (physical touch)
3. I **cook** them dinner (action)
4. I **call** them or keep in contact with them
5. I tell them I love them.
6. I **give** them a compliment (Practice in pairs)
  - a. You look amazing!
  - b. I'm so glad you are my...(wife)
  - c. You are so kind
  - d. Thanks for helping me

- (f) Change partners and share the following information.

1. I am very passionate about ...()
2. My friend is romantic because he/she ...()
3. I am committed to a relationship with my ...()
4. Some peoples say I am very ...() (Choose one)  
*gentle kind hearted affectionate kind and loving*

- (g) Share any famous love stories from your country? For e.g

**China:** Double seven day  
**China:** Liu Guljiang and Xu Calquing.

- (h) Read what many people around the world read at weddings to express their unconditional commitment in marriage.

- 1: **Love is kind and patient, never jealous, boastful, proud or rude.**
- 2: **Love isn't selfish or quick tempered.**
- 3: **Love doesn't keep a record of wrongs that others do.**
- 4: **Love rejoices in the truth, but not in evil.**
- 5: **Love is always supportive, loyal, hopeful, and trusting.**
- 6: **Love never fails!**

- (i) Replace the word **love** with your **name** and reread the text.

1. Do you think this type of love is possible?
2. What are the steps for being able to love as written above?

# 118. Armour Oil

## Verb Tense / Battles

- (a) Draw 3 things you did yesterday and your partner has to guess what they are.
- (b) In groups of four, complete the following story that uses the following verbs: **drive, saw, yell, stop, run, tell, buy**....
1. Yesterday, Jack **was driving** his car when he **saw** ...
  2. He yelled ...()
  3. He stopped his car and ran ...()
  4. He told ...()
  5. Later he bought ...()
- (c) In the same small groups, choose one person to pretend to be a typist and tell the story as the other people act out the story. (You can change and add more verbs if you want.)
- (d) Here are some verbs in different tenses, divide your class into six groups, each group has to choose one set of verbs and they have to think of 4 sentences to share.

For example. verb– wear, wearing, wore, have worn, never have worn, will wear,

1. Today I am **wearing** a brown top
2. Yesterday I **wore** denim jeans
3. Tomorrow I **will wear** light clothes
4. I have never **worn** a dress

- a. walk walked walked
- b. drive drove driven
- c. swim swam swum
- d. ride rode ridden
- e. buy bought bought
- f. fight fought fought
- g. steal stole stolen



- (e) The above words included steal, stole and stolen. Have you ever had anything stolen from you or stolen something yourself? Have there been any great robberies/theft stories from your country? (This may include discussing what are the most precious items in your country)
- (f) With the words fight, fought and fought, have you ever been in a fight? In the past, who were the greatest threats to your country and what have been most famous (monumental) battles in your country's history?
- (g) What armour did soldiers or fighters wear to protect themselves from the enemy?
1. Helmets and masks
  2. Shields, spears and swords
  3. Breast plates and leg guards
- (h) Do you have any enemies, on going battles or potential threats?
- (i) Discuss this historical quote (Rome 62AD) about a battle everybody is involved in and the armour that can be worn.



For our **struggle** is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, **against** the **powers** of this **dark** world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. (NIV).

# 118. Armour Oil

## Verb Tense / Battles

- (a) Draw 3 things you did yesterday and your partner has to guess what they are.
- (b) In groups of four, complete the following story that uses the following verbs: **drive, saw, yell, stop, run, tell, buy**....
1. Yesterday, Jack **was driving** his car when he **saw** ...
  2. He yelled ...()
  3. He stopped his car and ran ...()
  4. He told ...()
  5. Later he bought ...()
- (c) In the same small groups, choose one person to pretend to be a typist and tell the story as the other people act out the story. (You can change and add more verbs if you want.)
- (d) Here are some verbs in different tenses, divide your class into six groups, each group has to choose one set of verbs and they have to think of 4 sentences to share.

For example. verb– wear, wearing, wore, have worn, never have worn, will wear,

1. Today I am **wearing** a brown top
2. Yesterday I **wore** denim jeans
3. Tomorrow I **will wear** light clothes
4. I have never **worn** a dress

- a. walk walked walked
- b. drive drove driven
- c. swim swam swum
- d. ride rode ridden
- e. buy bought bought
- f. fight fought fought
- g. steal stole stolen



- (e) The above words included steal, stole and stolen. Have you ever had anything stolen from you or stolen something yourself? Have there been any great robberies/theft stories from your country? (This may include discussing what are the most precious items in your country)
- (f) With the words fight, fought and fought, have you ever been in a fight? In the past, who were the greatest threats to your country and what have been most famous (monumental) battles in your country's history?
- (g) What armour did soldiers or fighters wear to protect themselves from the enemy?
1. Helmets and masks
  2. Shields, spears and swords
  3. Breast plates and leg guards
- (h) Do you have any enemies, on going battles or potential threats?
- (i) Discuss this historical quote (Rome 62AD) about a battle everybody is involved in and the armour that can be worn.



For our **struggle** is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, **against** the **powers** of this **dark** world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. (NIV).

# 119 Cents of Sense

## Voice Projection

- (a) Role play: *Person A: In your wallet, do you have any coins?*  
*Person B: Yes I do*  
*Person A: Can I have one coin please?*
- (b) People can feel down in the dumps when they don't have enough money. People also **feel sad** when people don't understand them properly. Practice how to project your voice.
- Take a deep breath through your nose and slowly breath out through your mouth.
  - Take another breath, trill your lips, with your voice coming from your stomach, not your throat, when you breath out.
    - low** and **high** like a wave.
    - spiral going **up** and **down**.
    - normal pitch straight line
  - Practice these sayings-breathing out (voice getting higher)
    - ya ya ya ya            wa wa wa wa    be be be be
    - baa baa baa baa    bu bu bu bu    me—ow
  - Throw your voice (like throwing a ball) with a twang.
    - deep sea    you sea    we looked    three fish
    - no one knew    morning time    more money
- (c) Role play asking somebody to help you to speak better.  
*Person 1: Can you teach me how to improve my voice projection? I want to be better at speaking.*

## Money and Contentment

- (d) Sometimes high cost of living makes it difficult to make ends meets. (Feel down in the dumps) What is the cost of living like in your country? (cheap, reasonable or expensive)
- 
- Transportation, food and clothing
  - Electricity, gas and water
  - Housing and accommodation
  - Electrical goods and computer products
- (e) How much do people earn (earnings) in your country?
- Hourly wage/rate for a (waiter) is ...    per hour
  - Weekly wage for a (taxi driver) is...    per week
  - Yearly salary for a (school teacher) is... per annum.
- (f) Do you get paid to work overtime in your country? What is the unemployment rate in your country?
- (g) Have you or do you know anybody who has ....?
- been sacked or lost their job
  - taken early redundancy or been made redundant
  - retired or gone bankrupt
  - taken stress leave or had a break from their job
  - taken unpaid leave or deferred from their studies
- (h) Practice being a concerned friend checking if your friend is ok.  
*Person 1: You have **enough** money, don't you?*  
*Person 2: Yes I do            or            No I don't*  
*Person 1: You are content, aren't you?*  
*Person 2: Yes I am            or            No I'm not)*
- (i) Do you know the parable of the rich fool who tried to be **happy** by being rich?
- (j) Do you know the secret of being content in any situation as expressed by a man named Paul in 70AD?  
*Paul: I have **learned** to be **content** whatever the circumstances. A **peace** which transcends all understanding Whatever is true ....*
- (k) What do you think was true for Paul? What is true for you?

# 119 Cents of Sense

## Voice Projection

- (a) Role play: *Person A: In your wallet, do you have any coins?*  
*Person B: Yes I do*  
*Person A: Can I have one coin please?*
- (b) People can feel down in the dumps when they don't have enough money. People also **feel sad** when people don't understand them properly. Practice how to project your voice.
- Take a deep breath through your nose and slowly breath out through your mouth.
  - Take another breath, trill your lips, with your voice coming from your stomach, not your throat, when you breath out.
    - low** and **high** like a wave.
    - spiral going **up** and **down**.
    - normal pitch straight line
  - Practice these sayings-breathing out (voice getting higher)
    - ya ya ya ya            wa wa wa wa    be be be be
    - baa baa baa baa    bu bu bu bu    me—ow
  - Throw your voice (like throwing a ball) with a twang.
    - deep sea    you sea    we looked    three fish
    - no one knew    morning time    more money
- (c) Role play asking somebody to help you to speak better.  
*Person 1: Can you teach me how to improve my voice projection? I want to be better at speaking.*

## Money and Contentment

- (d) Sometimes high cost of living makes it difficult to make ends meets. (Feel down in the dumps) What is the cost of living like in your country? (cheap, reasonable or expensive)
- 
- Transportation, food and clothing
  - Electricity, gas and water
  - Housing and accommodation
  - Electrical goods and computer products
- (e) How much do people earn (earnings) in your country?
- Hourly wage/rate for a (waiter) is ...    per hour
  - Weekly wage for a (taxi driver) is...    per week
  - Yearly salary for a (school teacher) is... per annum.
- (f) Do you get paid to work overtime in your country? What is the unemployment rate in your country?
- (g) Have you or do you know anybody who has ....?
- been sacked or lost their job
  - taken early redundancy or been made redundant
  - retired or gone bankrupt
  - taken stress leave or had a break from their job
  - taken unpaid leave or deferred from their studies
- (h) Practice being a concerned friend checking if your friend is ok.  
*Person 1: You have **enough** money, don't you?*  
*Person 2: Yes I do            or            No I don't*  
*Person 1: You are content, aren't you?*  
*Person 2: Yes I am            or            No I'm not)*
- (i) Do you know the parable of the rich fool who tried to be **happy** by being rich?
- (j) Do you know the secret of being content in any situation as expressed by a man named Paul in 70AD?  
*Paul: I have **learned** to be **content** whatever the circumstances. A **peace** which transcends all understanding Whatever is true ....*
- (k) What do you think was true for Paul? What is true for you?

# 120. Honesty and Truth

## Humanly True

(a) In pairs, say two things about yourself to your partner. One thing is true and one is not true. Your partner has to guess which one is true or not true.

(b) Change partners and ask your partner to get you a glass of water using one instruction at a time. Remember

- Show hand signals
  - Use encouragement words: (Good job, well done, thankyou etc...)
1. Can you **stand up** please (Good job)
  2. Can you **see** that glass over **there** (That's right)
  3. Can you **go over to that** glass
  4. Can you **pour water** into the glass (Well done)
  5. Can you **bring the glass** to me (Excellent)

(c) What other requests do people ask you to do?

(d) Which of these responses are acceptance or rejection?

Person 1: *Do you mind washing my hair?*  
Person 2: *No I don't or Yes I do*

(e) Role play another *Do you mind* request to do/stop something

Person 1: *Do you mind... ( )*

(f) Have you ever told a white lie? i.e. something that is not exactly true because if you tell the truth, you might hurt someone's feelings. For example.

Person 1: *Love your hair!*  
(*Actually you hate it*)

(g) Role play commenting about somebody but you actually don't know the person very well and you want to be honest.

Slim: *Do you think we can trust him.*  
Winston: *To be honest (better than to be frank), I don't know him very well.*



## Divinely True

(h) In **China** a phoenix on the rooftop represented upmost honesty and loyalty to the empress. Where do you find Phoenixes in your culture? Have you ever been to the place called Phoenix in China?

(i) Have you ever been to the place called Phoenix in China?

(j) The phoenix represented honest, loyalty and power sent from the heavens to the Empress. Is there anything in this world that represents powers sent from heaven For example: Divine documents; i.e. *God breathed scripture*. (**teaching, rebuking, correcting, training**)

# 120. Honesty and Truth

## Humanly True

(a) In pairs, say two things about yourself to your partner. One thing is true and one is not true. Your partner has to guess which one is true or not true.

(b) Change partners and ask your partner to get you a glass of water using one instruction at a time. Remember

- Show hand signals
  - Use encouragement words: (Good job, well done, thankyou etc...)
1. Can you **stand up** please (Good job)
  2. Can you **see** that glass over **there** (That's right)
  3. Can you **go over to that** glass
  4. Can you **pour water** into the glass (Well done)
  5. Can you **bring the glass** to me (Excellent)

(c) What other requests do people ask you to do?

(d) Which of these responses are acceptance or rejection?

Person 1: *Do you mind washing my hair?*  
Person 2: *No I don't or Yes I do*

(e) Role play another *Do you mind* request to do/stop something

Person 1: *Do you mind... ( )*

(f) Have you ever told a white lie? i.e. something that is not exactly true because if you tell the truth, you might hurt someone's feelings. For example.

Person 1: *Love your hair!*  
(*Actually you hate it*)

(g) Role play commenting about somebody but you actually don't know the person very well and you want to be honest.

Slim: *Do you think we can trust him.*  
Winston: *To be honest (better than to be frank), I don't know him very well.*



## Divinely True

(h) In **China** a phoenix on the rooftop represented upmost honesty and loyalty to the empress. Where do you find Phoenixes in your culture? Have you ever been to the place called Phoenix in China?

(i) Have you ever been to the place called Phoenix in China?

(j) The phoenix represented honest, loyalty and power sent from the heavens to the Empress. Is there anything in this world that represents powers sent from heaven For example: Divine documents; i.e. *God breathed scripture*. (**teaching, rebuking, correcting, training**)

# 121. Home Sweet Home

## Farewell Party

- (a) Draw a map and show where you were born and grew up.  
*I was born in ...()*  
*I grew up in ...()* (in the **city/countryside**) **near/far from**.....  
 My hometown was very ...(peaceful, crowded, **beautiful**)  
 Looking outside my bedroom window I could see..() (Illustrate)
- (b) Were there many foreigners where you were growing up?  
 Share about one foreigner you have met in your country.
- (c) Discuss how you can say these sentences more politely.
- She is Chinese.  
 For example: *She is from China.*
  - Japanese are very quiet.  
*People from Japan are generally ...()*
  - There are many foreigners in my city.  
*There are many people from other countries in my city.*
  - I like meeting other country people (International people).  
*I like meeting people from other ...()*
  - Fewer Chinese are celebrating Chong Yang (9 9) festival.  
**The number of people** from China celebrating ...()
- (d) Role play correcting a misconception about another culture.  
**Person 1: Australian people are lazy.**  
 Bluey: *The word is not lazy but laid back. Could you be more careful with your statements please?*  
**Person 1: Chinese people eat too much:**  
 Wang: *I think your statement is an overgeneralisation. Only some people in China eat too much.*
- (e) Do you miss your hometown? Role play in a group of nine, a farewell party for Rico who is leaving his hometown.
- Person 1: *Thanks for being such a great friend.*  
 Person 2: *I can't thank you enough Rico. **Good luck***  
 Person 3: *I'm really going to miss you Rico. I hope we can keep in touch. All the best for the future.*  
 Person 4: *It's not "goodbye" but "see you next time".*  
 Person 5: *Rico, I've only known you for a short time. I wish I had gotten to know you better.*  
 Person 6: *I hope everything works out for you in the future.*  
 Person 7: *I have really appreciated your kindness. God bless*  
 Person 8: *Thank you for everything you have done. We have a small gift for you.*  
 Rico: *Thank you all for your very kind words and this gift. As you know I have mixed emotions but I am excited about my **new** challenge. Thanks for being so supportive (of me) and **kind** to me. This will always be my **home**.*
- Person 1: *Let's give three cheers for Rico. Hip, hip!*  
 All: *Hooray*  
 Person 1: *Hip, hip!*  
 All: *Hooray*  
 Person 1: *Hip, hip (**loud/slow**)*  
 All: *Hooray (Very loud)*
- 
- (f) Share any stories about people remembering or returning to their hometown or country. For example:  
**China:** Double Nine Day ( Longevity. Zhuyu, rice cakes and dogwood leaf). Poem: 'Missing My Shandong Brothers' by Wáng Wéi, Tang Dynasty  
 "As a lonely stranger in the strange land".
- (g) When was the last time you felt like the person in this poem?
- (h) Do you know the story of some famous people, Abraham, Moses etc in Hebrews 11, who longed for their hometown which was not where they came from but a place where they were going? (**by faith, didn't receive, did**)

# 121. Home Sweet Home

## Farewell Party

- (a) Draw a map and show where you were born and grew up.  
*I was born in ...()*  
*I grew up in ...()* (in the **city/countryside**) **near/far from**.....  
 My hometown was very ...(peaceful, crowded, **beautiful**)  
 Looking outside my bedroom window I could see..() (Illustrate)
- (b) Were there many foreigners where you were growing up?  
 Share about one foreigner you have met in your country.
- (c) Discuss how you can say these sentences more politely.
- She is Chinese.  
 For example: *She is from China.*
  - Japanese are very quiet.  
*People from Japan are generally ...()*
  - There are many foreigners in my city.  
*There are many people from other countries in my city.*
  - I like meeting other country people (International people).  
*I like meeting people from other ...()*
  - Fewer Chinese are celebrating Chong Yang (9 9) festival.  
**The number of people** from China celebrating ...()
- (d) Role play correcting a misconception about another culture.  
**Person 1: Australian people are lazy.**  
 Bluey: *The word is not lazy but laid back. Could you be more careful with your statements please?*  
**Person 1: Chinese people eat too much:**  
 Wang: *I think your statement is an overgeneralisation. Only some people in China eat too much.*
- (e) Do you miss your hometown? Role play in a group of nine, a farewell party for Rico who is leaving his hometown.
- Person 1: *Thanks for being such a great friend.*  
 Person 2: *I can't thank you enough Rico. **Good luck***  
 Person 3: *I'm really going to miss you Rico. I hope we can keep in touch. All the best for the future.*  
 Person 4: *It's not "goodbye" but "see you next time".*  
 Person 5: *Rico, I've only known you for a short time. I wish I had gotten to know you better.*  
 Person 6: *I hope everything works out for you in the future.*  
 Person 7: *I have really appreciated your kindness. God bless*  
 Person 8: *Thank you for everything you have done. We have a small gift for you.*  
 Rico: *Thank you all for your very kind words and this gift. As you know I have mixed emotions but I am excited about my **new** challenge. Thanks for being so supportive (of me) and **kind** to me. This will always be my **home**.*
- Person 1: *Let's give three cheers for Rico. Hip, hip!*  
 All: *Hooray*  
 Person 1: *Hip, hip!*  
 All: *Hooray*  
 Person 1: *Hip, hip (**loud/slow**)*  
 All: *Hooray (Very loud)*
- 
- (f) Share any stories about people remembering or returning to their hometown or country. For example:  
**China:** Double Nine Day ( Longevity. Zhuyu, rice cakes and dogwood leaf). Poem: 'Missing My Shandong Brothers' by Wáng Wéi, Tang Dynasty  
 "As a lonely stranger in the strange land".
- (g) When was the last time you felt like the person in this poem?
- (h) Do you know the story of some famous people, Abraham, Moses etc in Hebrews 11, who longed for their hometown which was not where they came from but a place where they were going? (**by faith, didn't receive, did**)